

Pro S TIẾNG ANH

Ngữ pháp tiếng Anh (tập 1)



- ✓ Nội dung bám sát chương trình luyện thi THPTQG.
- ✓ Phân loại kiến thức từ nhận biết tới vận dụng cao.
- ✓ 40 video bài giảng online kèm theo sách miễn phí.
- ✓ 100 đề thi online kèm theo sách.
- ✓ 100% bài tập có giải chi tiết (tra ID).



Pro S

TIẾNG ANH

Ngữ pháp tiếng Anh (tập 1)

- ✓ Nội dung bám sát chương trình luyện thi THPTQG
- ✓ Phân loại kiến thức từ nhận biết tới vận dụng cao.

LỜI NÓI ĐẦU

Các em thân mến!

Từ năm 2017, theo tinh thần đổi mới, đề thi tiếng Anh trở về dạng trắc nghiệm như những năm trước nhưng với số lượng câu hỏi ít hơn (50 câu hỏi). Nội dung đề thi có sự xuất hiện của không ít các câu hỏi nằm trong chương trình SGK, tăng cường độ phân hóa và có các câu hỏi mở. Phần kiểm tra kiến thức cơ bản dùng để xét tốt nghiệp và phần nâng cao để sàng lọc thí sinh trong tuyển sinh vào các trường đại học, cao đẳng. Đề thi đảm bảo cả bốn mức độ: *nhận biết, thông hiểu, vận dụng, vận dụng cao*.

Nhằm giúp các em chuẩn bị kiến thức tốt nhất cho kỳ thi THPTQG, tác giả đã xây dựng khóa học trực tuyến trên website Moon.vn (PRO-S) bao gồm các chủ điểm đặc trưng như: Anh văn 12, ngữ pháp cơ bản, ngữ âm, rèn kỹ năng đọc hiểu, điền từ, chuyên đề từ gần nghĩa trái nghĩa hay tìm lỗi sai. Mỗi đơn vị bài giảng trong khóa học gồm: video bài giảng, bài tập luyện tập và thi Online. Cuốn sách này sẽ bám sát theo khóa học NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH thuộc PRO-S. Riêng phần ngữ pháp gồm 2 cuốn và toàn bộ chương trình PRO-S gồm 4 cuốn:

- Tập 1: Ngữ pháp tiếng Anh (Tập 1)
- Tập 2: Ngữ pháp tiếng Anh (Tập 2)
- Tập 3: Chuyên đề đọc hiểu
- Tập 4: Chuyên đề ngữ âm, từ đồng nghĩa trái nghĩa và tìm lỗi sai

Sách PRO-S sẽ tiết kiệm thời gian chuẩn bị cho buổi học của các em, tránh việc thất thoát tài liệu do in rời quá nhiều tệp tin nhỏ và giúp các em dễ dàng theo dõi tiến độ học tập của mình. Quan trọng hơn, các em có thể mang sách theo mọi lúc, mọi nơi. Người ta nói rằng: *bản chất của thành công trong việc học một ngoại ngữ đó chính là cơ hội được đắm chìm trong ngôn ngữ đó*.

Hàng năm, tác giả luôn cập nhật và làm mới giáo trình, tài liệu, bài giảng. Và chắc chắn rằng, bộ sách PRO-S với những đặc điểm ưu việt sẽ giúp các em học tập dễ dàng hơn và tiến thẳng tới đích một cách nhanh chóng. Hy vọng các em sẽ cảm nhận được sự tâm huyết của tác giả trong từng bài giảng của khóa học này.

Chúc các em thành công!

MỤC LỤC

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1: CẤU TẠO TỪ VÀ TỪ LOẠI	4
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 2: CÁC TỪ LOẠI CƠ BẢN TRONG TIẾNG ANH.....	29
BÀI 1: DANH TỪ	29
BÀI 2: TÍNH TỪ	51
BÀI 3: TRẠNG TỪ	84
BÀI 4: CẤP SO SÁNH CỦA TÍNH TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ	115
BÀI 5: ĐẠI TỪ	123
BÀI 6: MẠO TỪ.....	148
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 3: THÌ CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ	176
BÀI 2: THÌ HIỆN TẠI ĐƠN (SIMPLE PRESENT).....	180
BÀI 3: THÌ QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN (SIMPLE PAST) & QUÁ KHỨ TIẾP DIỄN (PAST CONTINUOUS)	184
BÀI 4: THÌ HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH	188
BÀI 5: THÌ HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN	191
BÀI 6: THÌ QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH & QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN... ..	193
BÀI 7: THÌ TƯƠNG LAI ĐƠN	196
BÀI 8: THÌ TƯƠNG LAI TIẾP DIỄN, TƯƠNG LAI HOÀN THÀNH & TƯƠNG LAI HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN	199
CHUYÊN ĐỀ 4: CÁC VẤN ĐỀ VỀ ĐỘNG TỪ	240
BÀI 1: PHÂN TỪ	240
BÀI 2: CÁCH DÙNG BE-HAVE-DO	249
BÀI 3: CÁC LOẠI ĐỘNG TỪ	259
BÀI 4: ĐỘNG TỪ KHUYẾT THIỂU	270
BÀI 5: ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU	283
BÀI 6: DANH ĐỘNG TỪ	293
BÀI 7: CÁC CẤU TRÚC VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU VÀ DANH ĐỘNG TỪ	303
BÀI 8: SỰ HÒA HỢP GIỮA CHỦ NGỮ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ	312
PHỤ LỤC.....	323

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1: CẤU TẠO TỪ VÀ TỪ LOẠI**A-LÝ THUYẾT****I. CÁCH NHẬN BIẾT THEO ĐUÔI CỦA DANH TỪ, ĐỘNG TỪ, TÍNH TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ TRONG TIẾNG ANH****1. Noun endings**

Noun Endings	Examples
1. – ism	criticism, heroism, patriotism
2. – nce	importance, significance, dependence, resistance
3. - ness	bitterness, darkness, hardness
4. – ion	pollution, suggestion, action
5. - ment	accomplishment, commencement, enhancement, excitement
6- —(i)ty	purity, authority, majority, superiority, humidity, cruelty, honesty, plenty, safety
7. - age	baggage, carriage, damage, language, luggage, marriage, passage
8. - ship	citizenship, fellowship, scholarship, friendship, hardship
9. – th	bath, birth, death, growth, health, length, strength, truth, depth, breadth, wealth
10. – dom	freedom, kingdom, wisdom
11. – hood	childhood, brotherhood, neighborhood, likelihood
12. – ure	closure, legislature, nature, failure, pleasure
13. – cy	bankruptcy, democracy, accuracy, expectancy, efficiency
14. —(t)ry	rivalry, ancestry, carpentry, machinery, scenery, bravery
15. - logy	archaeology, geology, sociology, zoology
16. - graphy	bibliography, biography
17. - or	actor, creator, doctor, tailor, visitor, bachelor
18. - er	northerner, villager, airliner, sorcerer
19. - ee	employee, payee, absentee, refugee
20. - ist	economist, dentist, pianist, optimist, perfectionist
21. - ician	magician, physician, musician, electrician, beautician

22. - ant	assistant, accountant, consultant, contestant, inhabitant
------------------	---

2. Adjective endings

Adj endings	Examples
1. - ent	independent, sufficient, absent, ancient, apparent, ardent
2. - ant	arrogant, expectant, important, significant, abundant, ignorant, brilliant
3. - ful	beautiful, graceful, powerful, grateful, forgetful, doubtful
4. - less	doubtless, fearless, powerless, countless, careless, helpless
5. - ic	civic, classic, historic, artistic, economic
6. - ive	authoritative, demonstrative, passive, comparative, possessive, native
7. - ous	dangerous, glorious, murderous, viscous, ferocious, hilarious
8. - able	charitable, separable, bearable, reliable, comfortable, suitable
9. - ible	audible, edible, horrible, terrible
10. - al	central, general, oral, tropical, economical
11. - ory	mandatory, compulsory, predatory, satisfactory
12. - ary	arbitrary, budgetary, contrary, primary, temporary, necessary
13. - y	angry, happy, icy, messy, milky, tidy, chilly, slippery, rainy
14. - ly	friendly, lovely, lively, daily, manly, beastly, cowardly, queenly, rascally
15. - ate	temperate, accurate, considerate, immediate, literate
16. - ish	foolish, childish, bookish, feverish, reddish

3. Verb endings

Verb endings	Examples
1. - en/en-	listen, happen, strengthen, lengthen, shorten, soften, widen, entrust, enslave, enlarge, encourage, enable, enrich
2. - ate	assassinate, associate, fascinate, separate, vaccinate, evacuate
3. - ize	idolize, apologize, sympathize, authorize, fertilize
4. - ify	satisfy, solidify, horrify

4. Adverb endings

Adverb endings	Examples
1. – ly	firstly, fully, greatly, happily, hourly
2. - wise	otherwise, clockwise
3. - ward	backward, inward, onward, eastward

II. VỊ TRÍ CỦA TỪ LOẠI TRONG CÂU**1. Noun**

Vị trí	Ví dụ
Sau tính từ (adj + N)	These are interesting <u>books</u> .
Sau - mạo từ: a/an/the - từ chỉ định: this, that, these, those, every,... - từ chỉ số lượng: many, some, few, several,... - tính từ sở hữu: my, his, her, your, their, its,...	He is a <u>student</u> . These <u>flowers</u> are beautiful. She needs some <u>water</u> .
Sau ngoại động từ (V cần O)	She buys <u>books</u> . She meets a lot of <u>people</u> .
Sau giới từ (prep. + N)	He talked about the <u>story</u> yesterday. He is interested in <u>music</u> .
Trước V chia thì (N làm chủ từ)	The <u>man</u> has just arrived.
Sau enough (enough + N)	I don't have enough <u>money</u> to buy that house

2. Adjective

Vị trí	Ví dụ
Trước N (Adj + N)	This is an <u>interesting</u> book.
Sau TO BE	I am <u>tired</u> .
Sau các linking verbs : become, get, look, feel, taste, smell, seem ...	It becomes <u>hot</u> . She feels <u>sad</u>

Sau trạng từ (adv + adj): extremely (cực kỳ), completely (hoàn toàn), really (thực sự), terribly, very, quite, rather,...	It is extremely <u>cold</u> . I'm terribly <u>sorry</u> . She is very <u>beautiful</u> .
Sau keep/make	The news made me <u>happy</u> .
Sau too (be + too + adj)	That house is too <u>small</u> .
Trước enough (be + adj + enough)	The house isn't <u>large</u> enough.
Trong cấu trúc: be + so + adj + that	She was so <u>angry</u> that she can't speak.
A, an, the, this, that, his, her, their, my,... + (Adj) + Noun .	My new car is <u>blue</u> .
Trong câu cảm thán: - How + adj + S + V! - What + (a/an) + adj + N!	How <u>beautiful</u> the girl is! What an <u>interesting</u> film!

3. Adverbs

Vị trí	Ví dụ
Sau V thường	He drove <u>carefully</u> .
Trước Adj	I meet an <u>extremely</u> handsome man
Giữa cụm V	She has <u>already</u> finished the job
Đầu câu hoặc trước dấu phẩy	<u>Unfortunately</u> , I couldn't come the party.
Sau too V + too + adv	They walked too <u>slowly</u> to catch the bus.
Trong cấu trúc V + so + adv + that	Jack drove so <u>fast</u> that he caused an accident.
Trước enough V + adv + enough	You should write <u>clearly</u> enough for everybody to read.

Ví dụ:

1. As an _____ , Mr. Pike is very worried about the increasing of juvenile delinquency.

A. educate **B. educator** C. education D. educative

2. He is not really friendly and makes no attempt to be _____ .

A. society B. socialize C. social **D. sociable**

Giải thích chi tiết:

1.

- Sau mạo từ **an** thiếu một danh từ.
- Nhìn đuôi của các đáp án: A. động từ (đuôi ate) B. danh từ chỉ người (đuôi or) C. Danh từ chỉ vật (đuôi -tion) D. tính từ (đuôi -tive) → lựa chọn B hoặc c
- Theo nghĩa, câu này chỉ Mr Pike lựa chọn B: danh từ chỉ người.
- **Đáp án: B. educator**
- **Dịch: Là một nhà giáo dục, ông Pike rất lo lắng về tình trạng gia tăng của tội phạm vị thành niên.**

2.

- Sau “to be” và thể hiện tính chất là một tính từ.
- Nhìn đuôi của các đáp án: A. danh từ (đuôi -ty), B. động từ (đuôi -ize), C.tính từ (đuôi -cial), D. tính từ (đuôi -able) lựa chọn C hoặc D.
- Theo nghĩa: C.thuộc về xã hội, D. có tính chất hòa đồng. Câu này chỉ tính chất của “anh ấy” phải là “hòa đồng” → chọn D
- **Đáp án: D. sociable**
- **Dịch: Anh ta không thực sự thân thiện và không hề nỗ lực để hòa đồng với mọi người.**

III. Phương pháp học cấu tạo từ trong tiếng Anh

No.	Word	Meaning	Example
1	responsible (Adj)	Chịu trách nhiệm	- A drunk man cannot be held fully responsible for his actions
	+ for sth		
	+ to sb/sth		
	irresponsible (Adj)	Vô trách nhiệm	- Tom is an irresponsible person
	responsibility (N)	Sự trách nhiệm	- Women bear children and take responsibility for childcare
	irresponsibility (N)	Sự vô trách nhiệm	- They thought that the explosion was an act of irresponsibility
2	special (Adj)	Đặc biệt	- She’s a very special person.
	specially (Adv)	Đặc biệt	- She has a wheelchair that was specially made for her.
	speciality (N)	Nét đặc trưng, chuyên môn	- Unkind remarks are one of his specialities .
	specialist (N-p)	Chuyên gia	- My doctor has referred me to a specialist for a second opinion on the results of my blood test.

	specialize (V) + in specialization (N)	Chuyên về Sự chuyên môn hóa	- That restaurant specializes in seafood. - The lawyer said that he was unable to help us because our case fell outside his specialization .
3	eat (V) edible (Adj/N) eatable (Adj) eater (N-p)	Ăn Có thể ăn được (không độc)/Thức ăn (số nhiều) Ăn được Người ăn	Jane never eats breakfast. Only the leaves of the plant are edible . Food that is eatable is good enough to eat, but not excellent. I'm still a big eater .
4	person (N) Số nhiều: People personal (Adj) personally (Adv) personalize (V)	Con người Cá nhân, riêng tư Đích thân Cá nhân hóa	Who was the first person to swim the English Channel? The book describes his sporting career and gives little information about his personal life. Personally , I think the show is going to be a great success. I don't want to personalize the issue
5	approve (V) + of approval (N) disapprove (V) + of disapproval (N)	Tán thành, chấp thuận Sự tán thành, sự chấp thuận Phản đối Sự không tán thành,	He doesn't approve of smoking. He showed his approval by smiling broadly. I strongly disapprove of underage drinking. Although they said nothing, she could sense their
		Sự phản đối	disapproval of her suggestion
6.	compare (V) + with/to comparison (N)	So sánh Sự so sánh	This road is quite busy compared to ours. They made a comparison of different countries' eating habits

	comparable (Adj)	Có thể so sánh	The two experiences aren't comparable.
	comparative (Adj)	So sánh, tương đối	"Fatter" is the comparative of "fat".
	comparatively (Adv)	Tương đối	Inflation was comparatively low
	in comparison with	So sánh với	In comparison with the French, the British eat far less fish
7.	frequent (Adj)	Thường xuyên	The most frequent cause of death is heart disease.
	frequency (N)	Tính thường xuyên	Complaints about the frequency of buses rose in the last year.
	infrequent (Adj)	Không thường xuyên, hiếm khi xảy ra	His letters became infrequent, then stopped completely.
	infrequency (N)	Sự không thường xuyên, sự hiếm khi xảy ra	She did notice and comment on the infrequency of our visits.
8	history (N)	Lịch sử	I studied modern European history at college.
	historic (Adj)	Có tính chất lịch sử	How many historic buildings are damaged by fire each year?
	historical (Adj)	Thuộc lịch sử	Many important historical documents were destroyed when the library was bombed.
	historically (Adv)	Về mặt lịch sử	The film makes no attempt to be historically accurate.
9	confident (Adj)	Tự tin, tin cậy, chắc chắn	I'm confident of his skills as a manager.
	confidence (N)	Sự tự tin, sự tin cậy	She's completely lacking in confidence .
	confidential (Adj)	Bí mật, riêng tư	A person's medical records are confidential .
	confidentiality (N)	Sự cẩn mật, sự tin cẩn	All replies will be treated with complete confidentiality .
	confide in sb	Giải bày tâm sự, đủ tin để kể bí mật	He confided that his hair was not his own.
	self-confident (Adj)	Tự tin về bản thân	He is self-confident anywhere he goes

10	Recognize (V)	Nhận ra, thừa nhận	I hadn't seen her for 20 years, but I recognized her immediately.
	Recognizable(Adj)	Có thể nhận ra, có thể thừa nhận	The Eiffel Tower in Paris is an instantly recognizable landmark.
	recognition (N)	Sự nhận ra, sự thừa nhận	His work was slow to gain recognition .
	unrecognizable (Adj)	Không thể nhận ra, không thể thừa nhận	His voice was muffled by his collar and unrecognizable .
11	qualify (V) +for	Đủ tư cách, đủ khả năng	This course qualifies you to teach in any secondary school.
	qualified (Adj)	Đủ tư cách, đủ khả năng	What makes you think that you are qualified for this job?
	unqualified (Adj)	Không đủ tư cách, không đủ trình độ	I feel unqualified to speak on the subject.
	disqualified (V) + from qualification (N)	Loại ra, làm cho không đủ tư cách Phẩm chất, năng lực	He's been disqualified from driving for a year. You'll never get a good job if you don't have any qualifications .
12	mystery (N)	Điều bí ẩn, huyền bí	The mystery was solved when the police discovered the murder weapon.
	mysterious (Adj)	Thần bí, huyền bí	His colleague had vanished in mysterious circumstances
	mystify (V)	Ra vẻ bí ẩn, khó hiểu	I was mystified by her decision.
13	waste (adj)	Vô giá trị, bỏ đi	What a complete waste of time!
	N	Rác thải, sự lãng phí	Oil spills are common, as is the dumping of toxic industrial wastes.
	V	Lãng phí, uổng phí	Why don't we just stop wasting time, all right?
	wasteful (Adj)	Hoang phí	It's wasteful the way you throw so much food away!
	wastefully (Adv)	Hoang phí	Energy and water are used much more

			wastefully than if these resources were priced properly.
	waste basket (N)	Thùng rác	Every room has a waste basket.
14	origin (N)	Nguồn gốc, lai lịch	It's a book about the origin of the universe.
	original (Adj)	Thuộc nguyên bản, độc đáo	The gardens have recently been restored to their original glory.
	originally (Adv)	Một cách độc đáo, đầu tiên	Originally it was a bedroom, but we turned it into a study.
	originality (N)	Tính nguồn gốc, tính độc đáo	We were impressed by the originality of the children's work.
15	vary (V)	Thay đổi, biến đổi	The samples varied in quality but were generally acceptable.
	variable (Adj)	Có thể thay đổi được	British weather is perhaps at its most variable in the spring.
	various (Adj)	Khác nhau, thuộc về nhiều loại	We had various problems on our journey, including a flat tyre.
	variety (N)	Sự đa dạng	I like almost every variety of cheese.
16	hard (Adj)	Cứng rắn, khắc nghiệt, khó khăn	Heating the clay makes it hard .
	(Adv)	Khắc nghiệt, hết sức cố gắng	It had been raining hard most of the afternoon
	hard-working (Adj)	Làm việc chăm chỉ, tích cực.	She was always very hard-working at school.
	hardship (N)	Sự gian khổ	It can be a sign of financial hardship to come.
	harden (V)	Làm cho cứng lại	The mixture hardens as it cools
17	know (V)	Biết, hiểu biết	I don't know anything about this.
	knowledge (N)	Sự nhận biết, tri thức	Her knowledge of English grammar is very extensive.
	knowledgeable (Adj)	Thông thạo	He's very knowledgeable about German literature.

	well - known (Adj)	Nổi tiếng	The restaurant is well-known for its friendly atmosphere and excellent service.
	knowingly (Adv)	Cố ý, chủ tâm	I've never knowingly offended him
18	conceive (V)	Diễn đạt, nhận thức, tưởng tượng	He couldn't conceive of a time when he would have no job.
	concept(N)	Khái niệm	It is very difficult to define the concept of beauty.
	conception (N)	Quan niệm, nhận thức	People from different cultures have different conceptions of the world.
	misconception (N)	Sự hiểu sai, sự nhận thức sai	We hope our work will help to change popular misconceptions about disabled people.
	conceptual (Adj)	Thuộc nhận thức, thuộc quan điểm	The main weakness of the proposal is conceptual .
	conceivable (Adj)	Có thể nhận thức được, có thể tưởng tượng được	Books on every conceivable subject lined one wall.
19	occupy (V)	Chiếm đóng, chiếm giữ	The rest of the time was occupied with writing a report.
	occupied (Adj)	Đang sử dụng, bận rộn, kín (người)	This table is already occupied .
	unoccupied (Adj)	Nhàn rỗi, bỏ không	Are there any unoccupied seats in that row?
	preoccupy (V)	Chiếm trước, ám ảnh	Economic concerns are preoccupying the voters in this election.
	occupation (N)	Sự chiếm đóng, công việc	He missed the bell in his occupation with the computer game
	occupational (Adj)	Thuộc nghề nghiệp	Back problems are an occupational hazard for any desk-bound office worker.

IV. LUYỆN TẬP VỀ CẤU TẠO TỪ - TỪ LOẠI

Question 1: Your _____ must be typed into 3 copies to hand in for our company.

A. applicants

B. application

C. applying

D. applying

Question 2: Well, I think that the prices in BIG C supermarket are _____.

- A. reason B. reasonable C. reasonably D. reasoning

Question 3: This company offered a lot of _____ jobs.

- A. attractive B. attraction C. attract D. attractively

Question 4: The _____ of the moon for the earth causes tides.

- A. attract B. attracted C. attraction D. attractive

Question 5: What are the _____ between women's in old times and women in modern times?

- A. differs B. different C. difference D. differences

Question 6: In the past people believed that women's _____ roles were as mothers and wives.

- A. nature B. natural C. naturism D. naturalist

Question 7: It is necessary for students to listen to their teacher _____.

- A. attentive B. attentively C. attention D. attend

Question 8: Our company believes it is the best_____ to handle the account.

- A. organizing B. organizational C. organizational D. disorganization

Question 9: _____ films should be made for school.

- A. Educational B. Educational C. Educated D. Educate

Question 10: He apologized for the _____ he had caused.

- A. convenient B. inconvenient C. convenience D. inconvenience

Question 11: They gave a clear _____ of their intentions.

- A. demonstrate B. demonstrative C. demonstration D. demonstrating

Question 12: Information technology is very _____ to our lives.

- A. useful B. useless C. use D. usefully

Question 13: A computer is a _____ typewriter which allows you to type and print any kind of documents.

- A. magically B. magical C. magic D. magician

Question 14: Hue is famous for its _____ spots.

- A. beauty B. beautiful C. beautify D. beautifully

Question 15: Three films are in _____ for the same contract.

- A. compete B. compete C. competition D. competitor

Question 16: You must place these events in their _____ context.

- A. history B. historical C. historic D. historian

Question 17: We need _____ information before we can decide.

- A. far B. further C. farther D. farthest

Question 18: The day was so _____ that we decided to take a picnic lunch to the beach.

- A. clear and warmly B. clearly and warmly C. clearly and warm D. clear and warm

Question 19: Health care _____ have been rising but so has the quality.

- A. cost B. costs C. costing D. costly

Question 20: She is _____ to understand the matter.

- A. enough intelligent B. so intelligent C. intelligent enough D. very intelligent

Question 21: What _____!

- A. an exciting story B. is an exciting story C. a story exciting D. the exciting story

Question 22: How _____!

- A. the room is dirty B. is the room dirty C. dirty the room is D. the dirty room is

Question 23: The love for books is helpful in _____ the pupils' knowledge.

- A. developing B. development C. developed D. being developed

Question 24: Sport is sometimes used by governments as a tool of foreign _____.

- A. political B. policy C. politics D. politician

Question 25: He spoke _____ to her, and she began crying immediately.

- A. insensitivity B. insensitiveness C. insensitively D. insensitive

Question 26: When the automobile salesman described the car so _____, we became very uneasy about buying it.

- A. ambiguity B. ambiguousness C. ambiguous D. ambiguously

Question 27: The meeting was _____, and all left satisfied.

- A. harmony B. harmoniousness C. harmonious D. harmonize

Question 28: "Since the goal seems _____, I believe we should begin at once," Tim argued.

- A. achievements B. achieve C. achievable D. achieving

Question 29: Scientists _____ in their opinions of how snow crystals originate.

- A. difference B. differ C. differentiate D. differentiate

Question 30: Writer Ernest Hemingway is known for his _____ language and his lively dialogue.

- A. simplification B. simple C. simplistic D. simplicity

V. BÀI TẬP NÂNG CAO VỀ CẤU TẠO TỪ - TỪ LOẠI

Question 1. The judge told him it was _____ to drink and drive and banned him for a year.

- A.responsible B. irresponsible C. responsibilty D. irresponsibility

Question 2. Most doctors are _____ after they learn general medicine.

- A.special B. specialists C. especially D. specialist

Question 3. Peter's gained so much weight because he can't stop .

- A.Eat B. edible C. eatable D. overeating

Question 4. The sun and the moon are often _____ in poetry.

- A.person B. personal C. personalize D. personified

Question 5. The work is still at very _____ level.

- A.experimental B. experiment C. experimental D. expire

Question 6. She wants to be an actress but her parents_____ of her intention.

- A.approve of B. approval C. disapprove D. disapproval

Question 7. In the Middle Ages, salt was very valuable so that slaves were_____ with it.

- A.compare B. comparable C. comparative D. incomparable

Question 8. The_____ of the trains and the buses causes frustration and annoyance.

- A.frequent B. frequency C. infrequent D. infrequency

Question 9. It is usually forbidden to destroy _____ buildings.

- A.history B. historic C. historical D. historically

Question 10. This matter is very _____. Don't discuss it outside the office.

- A.confident B. confidential C. confidence D. confide

Supply the correct word form.

Question 11. I didn't know who she was with a mask on. She was completely_____.

- A.recognize B. recognizable C. recognition D. unrecognizable

Question 12. I felt _____ to speak on the subject. In fact, I could have done it perfectly.

- A.qualify B. qualified C. unqualified D. qualification

Question 13. They were totally_____ by the girl's disappearance

- A.mystery B. mysterious C. mystified D. mystified

Question 14. They are an incredibly _____ family. You should see how much food they throw away.

- A.wasted B. wasteful C. wastefully D. waste

Question 15. To be successful, an artist must show great _____

- A.origin B. original C. originally D. originality

Supply the correct forms of the words.

Question 16. He _____ goes to the pub before lunch on Sunday.

- A. variable B. various C. variety D. invariably

Question 17. The judge described John as a “_____ criminal” who was a danger to members of the public.

- A. hard B. hard – working C. hardship D. hardened

Question 18. The flowers are a small _____ of your great kindness.

- A. know B. knowledge C. knowledgeable D. acknowledgement

Question 19. The idea that the sun “rises” is a popular _____.

- A. conceive B. concept C. conception D. misconception

Question 20. You look rather _____. Are you worried about something?

- A. occupy B. occupied C. preoccupy D. preoccupied

ĐÁP ÁN

IV. LUYỆN TẬP VỀ CẤU TẠO TỪ VÀ TỪ LOẠI

1. B	2. B	3. A	4. C	5. D	6. B	7. B	8. C	9. A	10. D
11. C	12. A	13. B	14. A	15. C	16. B	17. B	18. D	19. B	20. C
21. A	22. C	23. A	24. B	25. C	26. D	27. C	28. C	29. B	30. B

V. BÀI TẬP NÂNG CAO VỀ CẤU TẠO TỪ VÀ TỪ LOẠI

1. B	2. B	3. D	4. D	5. A	6. C	7. D	8. D	9. B	10. B
11. D	12. C	13. D	14. B	15. D	16. D	17. D	18. D	19. D	20. D

B. LUYỆN TẬP 1

Question 1: How many _____ took part in the 22 nd SEA Games?

- A. competitors B. competitive C. competes D. competitions

Question 2: Boys often enjoy doing things in a _____ way.

- A. create B. creative C. creativity D. creatively

Question 3: The problem of _____ among young people is hard to solve.

- A. employment B. employee C. employers D. unemployment

Question 4: The children _____ high grade at school.

- A. achieve B. achievement C. achievable D. achieving

Question 5: She was the first in her family to enjoy the privilege of a university _____.

- A. educated B. educational C. educating D. education

Question 6: Buckingham Palace is a major tourist _____ in London.

- A. attract B. attraction C. attractive D. attractiveness

Question 7: Some species of rare animals are in _____ of extinction.

- A. danger B. dangerous C. dangerously D. endanger

Question 8: Electronic music is a kind of music in which sounds are produced _____.

- A. electron B. electric C. electronic D. electronically

Question 9: Are you sure that boys are more _____ than girls?

- A. act B. active C. action D. activity

Question 10: These quick and easy _____ can be effective in the short term, but they have a cost.

- A. solve B. solvable C. solutions D. solvability

Question 11: Housework is _____ shared between them.

- A. equally B. equal C. equality D. equalizing

Question 12: Don't forget to say goodbye to the _____ before leaving the office.

- A. interviewer B. interviewing C. interviewee D. interview

Question 13: Vietnamese athletes performed _____ and won a lot of gold medals. A. excellent B. excellently C. excellence D. excel

- A. excellent B. excellently C. excellence D. excel

Question 14: WHO's main activities are carrying out research on medical _____ and improving international health care.

- A. develop B. developing C. development D. develops

Question 15: The panda's _____ habitat is the bamboo forest.

- A. nature B. natural C. naturally D. natured

Question 16: To Americans, it is impolite to ask someone about age, _____ and salary.

- A. marry B. married C. marriage D. marrying

Question 17: Life here is very _____.

- A. peaceful B. peacefully C. peace D. peacefulness

Question 18: Farmers can enrich the soil by using _____.

- A. fertile B. fertility C. fertilize D. fertilizer

Question 19: Nowadays, chemicals are _____ into some fruits to reduce decay.

- A. injection B. injecting C. inject D. injected

Question 20: What's your _____? – I'm Vietnamese.

- A.** nation **B.** national **C.** nationality **D.** international

ĐÁP ÁN

1. A	2. B	3. D	4. A	5. D	6. B	7. A	8. D	9. B	10. C
11. A	12. A	13. B	14. C	15. B	16. C	17. A	18. D	19. D	20. C

LUYỆN TẬP 2:

Question 1: A book may be evaluated by a reader or professional writer to create a book _____.

- A.** review **B.** reviewing **C.** reviewer **D.** reviewed

Question 2: Read the book _____ and you can find the information you need.

- A.** care **B.** careful **C.** carefulness **D.** carefully

Question 3: Not many people find reading more _____ than watching TV.

- A.** interest **B.** interested **C.** interesting **D.** interestingly

Question 4: To become a novelist, you need to be _____.

- A.** imagine **B.** imagination **C.** imaginative **D.** imaginarily

Question 5: They are going to _____ the pool to 1.8 meter.

- A.** deep **B.** depth **C.** deepen **D.** deeply

Question 6: The referee had no hesitation in awarding the visiting team a _____.

- A.** penalty **B.** penalize **C.** penal **D.** penalization

Question 7: The sick man still finds it _____ to stand without support.

- A.** discomfort **B.** comforting **C.** uncomfortable **D.** comfortable

Question 8: You will have to work hard if you want to _____.

- A.** succeed **B.** successfully **C.** success **D.** successful

Question 9: Their _____ has lasted for more than 20 years.

- A.** friendly **B.** friend **C.** friends **D.** friendship

Question 10: English is an _____ language to learn.

- A.** easiness **B.** easily **C.** easy **D.** ease

Question 11: Physical _____ are good for our health.

- A.** activities **B.** activists **C.** actions **D.** acts

Question 12: You should write a letter of to that institute.

- A.** inquire **B.** inquiry **C.** inquisition **D.** inquisitor

Question 13: Don't eat those vegetables. They're

- A.** poison **B.** poisoning **C.** poisoned **D.** poisonous

Question 14: We'll live a happier and life if we keep our environment clean.

- A. health B. healthy C. unhealthy D. healthier

Question 15: He decided, very, not to drive when he was so tired

- A. sense B. sensitively C. sensibly D. sensible

Question 16: Environmental is everybody's responsibility.

- A. protect B. protection C. destruction D. damage

Question 17: In the future, many buildings will be by solar energy.

- A. hot B. hotter C. hottest D. hotter

Question 18: My brother can repair electric very well.

- A. apply B. applicator C. application D. appliances

Question 19: These will conserve the earth's resources. (INNOVATE)

- A. innovate B. innovation C. innovations D. innovative

Question 20: is now a serious problem in many countries.

- A. Forest B. Forestry C. Deforestation D. Forestall

Question 21: Burning coal is an way to heat the house. Gas is much cheaper.

- A. economy B. economic C. uneconomical D. B&C

Question 22: Sometimes I have some which can't be explained

- A. fell B. felling C. feel D. feelings

Question 23: The earthquake caused terrible

- A. destroying B. destroyed C. destruction D. destroys

Question 24: The cost of the must be paid by the buyer.

- A. carry B. carrying C. carried D. carriage

Question 25: Why don't you call the if the lights don't work?

- A. electricity B. electric C. electrician D. electrics

Question 26: Everyone has a number of, but no one has many true friends.

- A. acquaint B. acquaintances C. acquainting D. acquainters

Question 27: His son's has not improved much.

- A. behave B. behaviour C. behaviourist D. behaviourism

Question 28: He draws cartoons for a magazine.

- A. humour B. humourous C. human D. humourously

Question 29: You shouldn't others if you also have a lot of mistakes.

- A. critic B. critical C. criticize D. critically

Question 30: They tried to win but their efforts are

A. success B. successful C. successfully D. unsuccessful

ĐÁP ÁN

1-A	2-D	3-C	4-C	5-C	6-A	7-C	8-A	9-D	10-C
11-A	12-B	13-D	14-D	15-C	16-B	17-D	18-D	19-C	20-C
21-C	22-D	23-C	24-D	25-C	26-B	27-B	28-A	29-C	30-D

LUYỆN TẬP 3:

Question 1: That little girl can dance

A. beauty B. beautiful C. beautifully D. beautify

Question 2: Since her the room has been full of laughter.

A. arrival B. arrive C. arriver D. arrivence

Question 3: Most modern buildings have underground lots.

A. park B. parking C. parks D. no answer is correct

Question 4: I went to the store to buy something.

A. grocer B. grocery C. grow D. growing

Question 5: There is no water left in the well.

A. nearby B. near C. nearly D. no answer is correct

Question 6: He is now studying in the USA as an student.

A. change B. changeable C. changing D. exchange

Question 7: They have a good of stamps.

A. collect B. collected C. collecting D. collection

Question 8: Goods are as long as they are returned in good condition.

A. change B. changes C. changing D. changeable

Question 9: The party twenty bottles from various parts of the house yesterday.

A. collect B. collected C. collecting D. collection

Question 10: When did you start antique glass?

A. collecting B. collection C. collective D. collectively

Question 11: The more _____ and positive you look, the better you will feel.

A. confide B. confident C. confidently D. confidence

Question 12: My parents will have celebrated 30 years of _____ by next week.

A. marry B. married C. marriageable D. marriage

Question 13: Many Vietnamese people _____ their lives for the revolutionary cause of the nation

- A. sacrifice B. sacrificed C. sacrificial D. sacrificially

Question 14: Most of us would maintain that physical _____ does not play major part in how we react to the people we meet.

- A. attract B. attractive C. attractiveness D. attractively

Question 15: They had a _____ candlelit dinner last night and she accepted his proposal of marriage.

- A. romance B. romantic C. romantically D. romanticize

Question 16: They started, as _____ gatherings but they have become increasingly formalized in the last few years.

- A. informal B. informally C. informalize D. informality

Question 17: Children who are isolated and lonely seem to have poor language and _____.

- A. communicate B. communication C. communicative D. communicator

Question 18: The lecturer explained the problem very clearly and is always _____ in response to questions.

- A. attention B. attentive C. attentively D. attentiveness

Question 19: If a boss wants to have a well-qualified staff, he should have to pay his employees _____.

- A. appropriate B. appropriately C. appropriation D. appropriating

Question 20: Mrs. Pike was so angry that she made a _____ gesture at the driver.

- A. rude B. rudeness C. rudely D. rudest

Question 21: He is not really friendly and makes no attempt to be _____.

- A. society B. social C. socialize D. sociable

Question 22: She sent me a _____ letter thanking me for my invitation.

- A. polite B. politely C. politeness D. impoliteness

Question 23: Mr. Timpson's behavior and comments on occasions were inappropriate and fell below the _____ standards.

- A. accept B. acceptable C. acceptance D. accepting

Question 24: In England, primary education is provided by state schools run by the government and by _____ fee-paying schools.

- A. independent B. independently C. depended D. independence

Question 25: The United Nations Secretary-General has often spoken of the need for individual _____ and human rights in his speeches

- A. free B. freedom C. freely D. freeing

Question 26: He did not do well at school and left with few _____ qualifications.

- A. academic B. academy C. academician D. academically

Question 27: The from Genoa enjoyed wearing jeans.

- A. work B. workers C. working D. workaholic

Question 28: of clothes always goes up.

- A. Selling B. Sell C. Sold D. Sales

Question 29: At the to the village, we saw the accident.

- A. enter B. entering C. enteric D. entrance

Question 30: Air pollution in the city had reached four times the _____ levels

- A. accept B. acceptable C. acceptance D. accepting

Question 31: They had an day by the river.

- A. enjoy B. enjoying C. enjoyed D. enjoyable

Question 32: They are - qualified teachers.

- A. good B. better C. best D. well

Question 33: We need further

- A. inform B. information C. informal D. informative

Question 34: This book is very

- A. inform B. information C. informal D. informative

Question 35: Look at the! Rain Bi looks so handsome.

- A. advertise B. advertising C. advertisement D. advertiser

Question 36: It is an program.

- A. interest B. interesting C. interested D. interestingly

Question 37: The song is to me.

- A. interest B. interesting C. interested D. interestingly

Question 38: We felt in the show.

- A. interest B. interesting C. interested D. interestingly

Question 39: Her language is Korean.

- A. native B. nation C. national D. nationality

Question 40: It is cheap. It's (expensive)

- A. expensive B. unexpensive C. inexpensive D. expensively

Question 41: TV is available now.

- A. Interact B. Interaction C. Interactive D. interactively

Question 42: The between this computer and the others is good.

- A. Interact B. Interaction C. Interactive D. interactivity

Question 43: The of TV is always fast.

- A. develop B. developed C. developing D. development

Question 44: The Internet has developed nowadays.

- A. increase B. increased C. increasingly D. incredible

Question 45: The Internet is one of the most important of our life.

- A. invent B. invent C. inventing D. inventions

Question 46: Everyone has their which are hardly recognized by themselves.

- A. limit B. limited C. limitation D. limitations

Question 47: Their is always good.

- A. communicate B. communicative C. communication D. communications

Question 48: She is a girl.

- A. communicate B. communicative C. communication D. communications

Question 49: The website is not ... for teenagers. It's unusable.

- A. usage B. using C. use D. used

Question 50: Libraries are helpful in children's love for books.

- A. develop B. developed C. developing D. development

ĐÁP ÁN

1-C	2-A	3-B	4-B	5-A	6-D	7-D	8-D	9-B	10-A
11-B	12-D	13-B	14-C	15-B	16-A	17-B	18-B	19-B	20-A
21-D	22-A	23-B	24-A	25-B	26-A	27-B	28-D	29-D	30-B
31-D	32-D	33-B	34-D	35-C	36-B	37-B	38-C	39-A	40-C
41-C	42-B	43-D	44-C	45-D	46-D	47-C	48-B	49-D	50-C

LUYỆN TẬP 4

Question 1: We like their

- A. friends B. friendly C. friendliness D. a&c

Question 2: The between Vietnam and China is good.

- A. friends B. friendly C. friendliness D. friendship

Question 3: They seem to be We dislike them.

A. friends B. friendly C. friendliness D. unfriendly

Question 4: There will be a in this street.

A. meet B. meeting C. met D. a&b

Question 5: We saw girls there.

A. beauty B. beautiful C. beautifully D. beautify

Question 6: The garden is ... with trees and flowers.

A. beauty B. beautified C. beautifully D. beautify

Question 7: They enjoy the atmosphere here.

A. peaceably B. peace C. peaceful D. A & C

Question 8: The unit of currency is the Ringgit.

A. Malaysia B. Malaysian C. Malay D. no answer is correct

Question 9: In, there are other religions.

A. addition B. additionally C. add D. addiction

Question 10: The _____ of old buildings should be taken into consideration.

A. preserve B. preservation C. preservative D. preserves

Question 11: You have to be aware of the damage humans are doing to quicken the _____ of wildlife.

A. extinct B. extinctive C. extinctions D. extinction

Question 12: The language of is Bahasa Malaysia.

A. instruction B. instruct C. instructive D. instructing

Question 13: The problem of _____ among young people is hard to solve.

A. employment B. employers C. employees D. unemployment

Question 14: The _____ will judge you on your quality and performance.

A. examining B. examinees C. examiners D. examination

Question 15: A (An) _____ corporation is a company that operates in more than one country.

A. national B. international C. multinational D. nationwide

Question 16: Excessive _____ to direct sunlight should of course be avoided.

A. disposition B. disposal C. exposition D. exposure

Question 17: There was quite a _____ crowd at the match.

A. respective B. respectable C. respectable D. respected

Question 18: He was finally _____ in his final attempt.

A. successful B. successive C. unsuccessful D. unsuccessful

Question 19: Our education will help with the _____ of knowledge for the young.

A. enrichment B. rich C. riches D. richness

Question 20: There is an match between Vietnam and Lebanon on VTV3.

A. national B. international C. multinational D. nationwide

Question 21: We're worried about the here.

A. pollute B. polluted C. pollution D. polluting

Question 22: This river is extremely

A. pollute B. polluted C. pollution D. polluting

Question 23: Her appearance is today.

A. needful B. need C. necessary D. A&C

Question 24: Artists must be, otherwise they just repeat what they see or hear.

A. create B. created C. creating D. creative

Question 25: Farm are always exported.

A. production B. productivity C. products D. produce

Question 26: This plant's is high, so it attracts a lot of investment.

A. production B. productivity C. products D. produce

Question 27: The of this machine requires the latest techniques.

A. production B. productivity C. products D. produce

Question 28: This energy - bulb is not cheap.

A. save B. saved C. saving D. savoury

Question 29: The are requiring us to repair the machines.

A. consume B. consumer C. consumption D. consumers

Question 30: Watching Korean films on TV is a time - activity.

A. consume B. consumer C. consumption D. consuming

Question 31: Water is increasing this summer.

A. consume B. consumer C. consumption D. consuming

Question 32: The of the model attracts us.

A. efficiency B. effect C. efficient D. effectively

Question 33: They are working, so we are

A. effective, satisfactory B. effectively, satisfactory
C. effectively, satisfied D. effective, satisfied

Question 34: Life always needs a lot of

A. innovate B. innovator C. innovation D. B&C

Question 35: Why are you so of his work? He's just doing his best.

- A. critic B. critical C. criticize D. criticism
- Question 36:** It's her obligation to tell the police what she knows.
A. immoral B. moral C. morality D. morally
- Question 37:** Tet is the most important in Vietnam.
A. celebrate B. celebration C. celebrating D. celebratory
- Question 38:** Fruits' festival in Suoi Tien Park is a very activity.
A. joy B. joyous C. joyful D. B&C
- Question 39:** Look at the bulbs. They are so beautiful.
A. colour B. coloured C. colourful D. B&C
- Question 40:** My are so strong that the word "love" can't describe them.
A. feel B. feeling C. felt D. feelings
- Question 41:** The caused a lot of bad effects.
A. volcanic eruptivity B. volcanic eruption C. volcano eruption D. volcano eruptivity
- Question 42:** Our have not warned our fishermen about the Changchun typhoon carefully.
A. science B. scientist C. scientist D. scientists
- Question 43:** A eruption occurred here last night.
A. disaster B. disastrous C. disasterative D. no answer is correct
- Question 44:** The beach is full of all kinds of
A. pollute B. pollution C. pollutants D. polluted
- Question 45:** He used all his to force the door open.
A. strong B. strengths C. strength D. strengthen
- Question 46:** The police are interested in the sudden of the valuable painting.
A. appear B. appease C. appeasement D. appearance
- Question 47:** My teacher me to take this examination.
A. couraged B. courage C. encouragement D. encouraged
- Question 48:** Recently health foods have increased in
A. popular B. popular C. popularize D. popularization
- Question 49:** The old lady hid all her under the floor.
A. save B. saving C. saver D. savings
- Question 50:** Your money will be refunded if the goods are not to your complete
A. satisfy B. satisfactory C. satisfied D. satisfaction

ĐÁP ÁN

1-D	2-D	3-D	4-B	5-B	6-B	7-C	8-B	9-A	10-B
11-D	12-A	13-D	14-C	15-C	16-D	17-B	18-A	19-A	20-B
21-C	22-B	23-D	24-D	25-C	26-B	27-B	28-C	29-D	30-D
31-C	32-A	33-C	34-C	35-B	36-B	37-B	38-D	39-D	40-D
41-B	42-D	43-B	44-C	45-C	46-D	47-D	48-B	49-D	50-D

GÓC GIẢI TRÍ

Kết thúc bài học ngày hôm nay các em có thấy mệt mỏi không? Cô hy vọng là không. Tuy nhiên, nếu có chút áp lực vì hành trình của chúng ta sắp tới còn rất dài, cô sẽ tặng các em một bài hát tiếng Anh nhé. Đây là bài hát cô Mai Phương rất thích nghe, đặc biệt những khi cảm thấy cần thêm năng lượng đấy nhé.

You raise me up – West life

When I am down and, oh my soul, so weary;	Khi con nản lòng, và tâm hồn, thật rã rời
When troubles come and my heart burdened	Khi khó khăn đến và trái tim nặng trĩu
be;	Khi đó, con bất động và chờ đợi ở đây trong
Then, I am still and wait here in the silence,	thình lạng
Until you come and sit awhile with me.	Cho tới khi Người đến và ngồi một lát với con
You raise me up, so I can stand on	Người nâng đỡ con, vì vậy con có thể đứng
mountains;	trên những đỉnh núi
You raise me up, to walk on stormy seas;	Người nâng đỡ con, để con có thể đi trên
I am strong, when I am on your shoulders;	biển, giữa trời giông bão
You raise me up... To more than I can be.	Con mạnh mẽ khi con được dựa vào đôi bờ
[Instrumental break]	vai Người
You raise me up, to walk on stormy seas;	Người nâng đỡ con, con hơn cả chính mình
I am strong, when I am on your shoulders;	[X3]
You raise me up... To more than I can be.	
[x3]	

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 2: CÁC TỪ LOẠI CƠ BẢN TRONG TIẾNG ANH

BÀI 1: DANH TỪ

A- LÝ THUYẾT

I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA

Danh từ là từ hoặc nhóm từ dùng để chỉ:

- người: John, teacher, mother,.....
- vật: chair, dog,.....
- nơi chốn: city, church, England,
- tính chất: beauty, courage, sorrow,
- hoạt động: travel, cough, walk,.....

II. CÁC LOẠI DANH TỪ

Có 4 loại danh từ:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| - Danh từ chung (common nouns) | Ex: table, man, pen, |
| - Danh từ riêng (proper nouns) | Ex: John, France, the Thames,..... |
| - Danh từ trừu tượng (abstract nouns) | Ex: charity, existence, fear, |
| - Danh từ tập hợp (collective nouns) | Ex: family, police, crowd,..... |

III. CHỨC NĂNG CỦA DANH TỪ

1. Chủ ngữ của câu

Ex: The children have gone to bed.

My dog is lovely.

2. Tân ngữ trực tiếp hoặc gián tiếp của câu

Ex: I saw the thief.

The police asked the thief a lot of questions.

3. Tân ngữ của giới từ

Ex: He is listening to music.

I sent this letter to the teacher.

4. Bổ ngữ của To be/become/seem,...

Ex: Nam is my close friend.

She became queen in 1952.

5. Dùng trong sở hữu cách

Ex: Tom's book is interesting.

I enjoy Son Tung's music.

6. Đồng vị ngữ với một danh từ khác

Ex: He told us about his father, a general, who died in the war.

Ms Phuong, my English teacher, helps me to improve my skills.

IV. VỊ TRÍ CỦA DANH TỪ

1. Chủ ngữ của câu

Ex: Computers are being used in all kinds of work.

Maths is the subject I like best.

2. Sau “enough”

Ex: He hasn’t got enough patience to wait.

We don’t have enough food for lunch.

3. Sau tính từ hoặc tính từ sở hữu

Ex: She is a good teacher.

I parked my car across the road.

4. Sau giới từ (in, on, of, with,)

Ex: The robbery is under investigation.

He is fond of football.

5. Sau các mạo từ (a, an, the) hoặc các từ hạn định (this, that, these, those, both, no,...)

Ex: A friend of hers is said to be very rich.

She can find no solution to her financial troubles

*Lưu ý: a/an/the + adj + noun

Ex: It’s such a long time since I saw you.

6. Sau các từ chỉ về số lượng: few, a few, some,...

Ex: Vicky hasn’t made much progress in his study.

I have a little knowledge about genetics.

Most boys like playing football.

V. GIỐNG CỦA DANH TỪ

1. Danh từ chỉ giống đực – giống cái

Giống đực	Giống cái
boy	girl
bachelor	spinster
bridegroom	bride
father	mother
gentleman	lady

husband	wife
man	woman
niece	nephew
son	daughter
uncle	aunt
widower	widow
king	queen
lord	lady
prince	princess
actor	actress
duke	duchess
earl	countess

2. Danh từ không phân biệt giống

Baby, infant, relative, child, parent, spouse, cousin, relation, teenager,...

VI. CÁCH THÀNH LẬP DANH TỪ

Cách thành lập		Ví dụ
1. Thêm hậu tố vào sau động từ	V + -tion/-ation	prevent => prevention introduce => introduction invent => invention conserve => conservation admire => admiration
	V + -ment	develop => development achieve => achievement employ => employment disappoint => disappointment improve => improvement
	V + -er/-or	drive => driver teach => teacher edit => editor instruct => instructor dry => dryer cook => cooker

	V + - ar/- ant/- ee (chỉ người)	beg => beggar assist => assistant examine => examinee lie => liar employ => employee
	V + - ence/- ance	exist => existence differ => difference attend => attendance appear => appearance
	V + - ing	teach => teaching build => building understand => understanding
	V + - age	drain => drainage
		use => usage
2. Thêm hậu tố vào sau danh từ	N + -ship	friend => friendship owner => ownership
	N + -ism (chủ nghĩa/học thuyết)	capital => capitalism hero => heroism
3. Thêm hậu tố vào sau tính từ	Adj + -ity	possible => possibility real => reality national => nationality special => speciality
	Adj + -ism	racial => racialism (chủ nghĩa phân biệt chủng tộc) common => communism (chủ nghĩa cộng sản) social => socialism (chủ nghĩa xã hội) feudal => feudalism (chế độ phong kiến) surreal => surrealism (chủ nghĩa siêu thực)
	Adj + -ness	rich => richness happy => happiness sad => sadness willing => willingness
4. Thêm tiền tố	super –	man => superman

vào trước danh từ khác		market => supermarket star => superstar structure => superstructure store => superstore
	under –	current => undercurrent growth => undergrowth education => undereducation pass => underpass weight => underweight
	sur –	face => surface name => surname plus => surplus
	sub –	way => subway marine => submarine contact => subcontract ...

Ví dụ: Cho dạng đúng của các từ trong ngoặc để điền vào chỗ trống

1. Detroit is renowned for the _____ **production** _____ of cars. (produce)
2. If you make a good ____ **impression** ____ at the interview, you will get the job. (impress)

Giải thích chi tiết

1. Trong câu có mạo từ xác định “the” nên cần điền một danh từ

Đáp án là: production

Dịch: Detroit rất nổi tiếng về việc sản xuất ô tô.

2. Trong câu có mạo từ “a” và tính từ “good” nên ta cần điền một danh từ vào chỗ trống
Danh từ của “impress” là “impression”

Dịch: Nếu bạn tạo được ấn tượng tốt trong buổi phỏng vấn, bạn sẽ nhận được công việc

VII. CÁC LOẠI DANH TỪ

1. Danh từ đếm được và không đếm được

- **Danh từ đếm được** (Countable nouns): là khi chúng ta có thể đếm trực tiếp người hay vật ấy. Phần lớn danh từ cụ thể đều thuộc vào loại đếm được.
Ex: boy (cậu bé), apple (quả táo), book (quyển sách), tree (cây)...
- **Danh từ không đếm được** (Uncountable nouns): Là khi chúng ta không đếm trực tiếp người hay vật ấy. Muốn đếm, ta phải thông qua một đơn vị đo lường thích hợp.

Phần lớn danh từ trừu tượng đều thuộc vào loại không đếm được.

Ex: meat (thịt), ink (mực), chalk (phấn), water (nước)...

Ex 1: Phân chia các danh từ sau thành danh từ đếm được và không đếm được:

Person, smoke, water, sugar, car , tomato, dog, tea, apple, class, beer, soup, doctor, butter, cheese, house, housework, pen, cup, bread, happiness, bus, map, help, information, book, orange, window, advice, boy, hair, news, box, piano, boy, leaf.

2. Danh từ đơn và danh từ ghép

Danh từ đơn: là danh từ cấu tạo bởi một từ duy nhất.

Ex: Computer, money, house,....

Danh từ ghép: là danh từ được tạo thành từ 2 hay nhiều từ.

Ex: Football, software, swimming pool.....

❖ Cách thành lập danh từ ghép

Cách thành lập danh từ ghép	Ví dụ
1. Danh từ + danh từ	London Transport (vận tải London) Fleet Street (Báo chí London) hall door (cửa đại sảnh) traffic warden (người giám sát giao thông)
2. Danh từ + danh động từ (gerund)	fruit picking (má hái trái cây) lorry driving (lái xe tải) weight-lifting (cử tạ) bird-watching (đi xem/coi phim)
3. Danh động từ + danh từ	Waiting-list (danh sách chờ) diving-board (tấm ván nhún) landing-card (thẻ lên bờ) dinning-room (phòng ăn) driving-licence (bằng lái xe) swimming-pool (hồ bơi)
4. Khi danh từ thứ hai thuộc về hay là phần của danh từ thứ nhất:	shop window (cửa sổ quầy hàng) picture frame (khung hình) garden gate (cổng vườn)

	church bell (chuông nhà thờ)
5. Danh từ thứ nhất có thể chỉ rõ nơi chốn của danh từ thứ hai.	city street (đường phố) cornershop (tiệm ở góc phố) country lane (đường làng) streetmarket (chợ trời)
6. Danh từ thứ nhất có thể chỉ rõ vật liệu mà danh từ thứ hai được tạo nên:	steel door (cửa thép) stone wall (tường đá) rope ladder (thang dây) silk shirt (áo sơ mi lụa)
7. Danh từ thứ nhất cũng có thể là nguồn năng lượng/nhiên liệu để hoạt động từ thứ hai.	gas fire (lửa ga) petrol engine (động cơ xăng) oil stove (bếp dầu)
8. Từ thứ nhất có thể chỉ mục đích của từ thứ hai	coffee cup (tách cà phê) escape hatch (hầm ngầm để thoát thân) reading lamp (đèn đọc sách)
9. Những từ nối này thường được dùng cho nghề nghiệp, các môn thể thao, các trò tiêu khiển và người luyện tập chúng	sheep farming (trại cừu) sheep farmer (chủ trại cừu) pop singer (ca sĩ nhạc pop) wind surfing (môn lướt ván buồm)
10. Danh từ thứ nhất có thể chỉ ra những gì mà danh từ thứ hai có liên quan đến	Một tác phẩm tiểu thuyết có thể là: detective (trình thám)/murder (sát nhân)/mystery (bí ẩn)/ghost (ma)/horror (kinh dị)/spy (tình báo)/story (truyện).

VIII. CÁCH CHUYỂN DANH TỪ SỐ ÍT SANG SỐ NHIỀU

1. Hầu hết các danh từ chuyển sang số nhiều thường thêm "s" ở cuối

Ex: boy => boys, hat => hats

2. Danh từ tận cùng bằng "s, ss, sh, ch, x, z, zz" + es để tạo danh từ số nhiều

Ex: Bus => buses (xe buýt)

Brush => brushes (bàn chải)

Kiss => kisses (nụ hôn)

Box => boxes (hộp)

Church => churches (nhà thờ)

3. Các danh từ kết thúc bằng “y”

+ “phụ âm + y”: y -> i + es

Ex: lady => ladies, story => stories...

+ “nguyên âm + y”: y -> y + s

Ex: boy => boys, monkey => monkeys

4. Các danh từ kết thúc bằng “f” hoặc “fe”: “-f, -fe” → “-ves”

Ex: wife => wives, calf => calves.

Chú ý:

“-oof” -> “-oofs”

Ex: roof => roofs, proof => proofs

❖ Số nhiều bất quy tắc

1. Một số danh từ thay đổi khi ở số nhiều

Ex: man => men

woman => women

mouse => mice

2. Một số danh từ khi ở số nhiều vẫn không thay đổi hình thức

Ex: a sheep => sheep

a fish => fish

a deer => deer

3. Danh từ Latin/Hy Lạp: bỏ -us thêm -i

Ex: alumnus/alumna → alumni

cactus → cacti

fungus → fungi

nucleus → nuclei

stimulus → stimuli

4. Danh từ Latin/Hy Lạp: chuyển -is thành -es

Ex: analysis → analyses

crisis → crises

diagnosis → diagnoses

oasis → oases

hypothesis → hypotheses

5. Danh từ Latin/Hy Lạp: chuyển -um/on thành -a

Ex: bacterium → bacteria

criterion → criteria

curriculum → curricula

datum → data

millennium → millennia

phenomenon → phenomena

*** Những danh từ sau đây chỉ có hình thức số nhiều (thường được dùng với động từ số nhiều):**

belongings (vật dụng cá nhân)	binoculars (ống nhòm)
cards (trò chơi bài)	credentials (giấy chứng nhận)
dominoes (trò chơi domino)	pliers (cái kìm)

*** Một số danh từ có hai hình thức số nhiều với nghĩa khác nhau:**

- (1) brother (anh em) - brothers (các anh em) - brethren (các đạo hữu)
- (2) cloth (vải vóc) - cloths (các mảnh, rểu vải) - clothes (áo quần)
- (3) genius (thiên tài) - geniuses (các thiên tài) - genii (các vị thần)
- (4) penny (đồng xu lẻ) - pennies (các đồng xu lẻ) - pence (trị giá bằng xu)

*** Các danh từ kép tạo thành số nhiều bằng cách biến đổi thành phần chính (headword) của từ:**

maid-servant (đầy tớ nam)	→ maid-servants
runner-up (người về nhì)	→ runners-up
assistant director (phó giám đốc)	→ assistant directors
passer-by (khách qua đường)	→ passers-by
ticket collector (người soát vé)	→ ticket collectors
mother-in-law (bà thông gia)	→ mothers-in-law

*** Các danh từ có hình thức số ít (không tận cùng bằng -s) nhưng có nghĩa số nhiều (nên được dùng với động từ số nhiều):**

cattle (trâu bò)	people (người ta)
clergy (giới tu sĩ)	police (cảnh sát)

*** Ngược lại, một số danh từ luôn luôn ở hình thức số nhiều nhưng có nghĩa số ít (nên thường được dùng với động từ số ít):**

news (tin tức)	summons (trát tòa)
billiards (bi-da)	barracks (trại lính)
species (chủng, loài)	works (nhà máy)

Ví dụ: Chọn đáp án đúng.

1. You should place the _____ and spoons to the left of the plates.

- A. knives B. knives C. knife D. knifese

2. Are the _____ chasing the other farm animals?

- A. geese B. geoses C. goose D. gooses

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. “knife” kết thúc bằng “fe” nên khi chuyển sang số nhiều chúng ta đổi “fe” thành “ves”

Dịch: Bạn nên đặt dao và muổng vào phía bên trái của đĩa.

2. Số nhiều của “goose” (con ngỗng) là “gesse”

Dịch: Có phải những con ngỗng đang đuổi những con vật khác trong nông trại không?

IX. CÁCH THÀNH LẬP SỞ HỮU CÁCH

1. Cách thành lập

- Thêm 's vào sau danh từ số ít hoặc danh từ số nhiều không tận cùng bằng “s”

Ex: The horse's mouth

Men's work

A child's voice

Women's clothes

A man's job

- Thêm dấu phẩy (') vào sau danh từ số nhiều tận cùng bằng s.

Ex: My parents' car

The Smiths' car

Girls' school

The students' hostel

- Với các danh từ ghép, thêm 's vào từ cuối cùng

Ex: My brother-in-law's guitar

The commander-in-chief's directions

- Khi sở hữu của nhiều danh từ, thì phải có 's của từng chủ sở hữu

Ex: Joe's and Ann's children

- Khi sử dụng sở hữu cách, phải bỏ các mạo từ (a/an/the) đứng trước danh từ hay vật được sở hữu

Ex: The daughter of the politician = the politician's daughter

2. Cách dùng sở hữu cách 's

Sở hữu cách ('s) thường được dùng trong các trường hợp sau đây:

- Thường được dùng cho danh từ chỉ người hoặc động vật.

Ex: Ms. Laura's daughter

The horse's tail

- Danh từ chỉ châu lục, quốc gia, thành phố, trường học

Ex: The Europe's population

Italy's largest city

Foreign Trade University's students

- Cụm từ chỉ tiền bạc hoặc giá trị

Ex: A pound's worth of stamps
Fifty dollars's worth of picture

- Từ hoặc cụm từ chỉ thời gian hoặc khoảng thời gian

Ex: A week's holiday
Today's paper
Tomorrow's weather
In two years' time
Ten minutes' break

- Bắt buộc phải sử dụng sở hữu cách khi danh từ chỉ chủ sở hữu là tên riêng

Ex: John's house (NOT the house of John)

- Có thể sử dụng sở hữu cách mà không có danh từ chính theo sau khi:

- Khi ta nói: go to.../stay at... có thể lược bớt danh từ sau sở hữu cách.

Ex: He's going to the dentist's
I stayed at my aunt's last night.

- Khi danh từ đó đã được nhắc đến trước đó:

Ex: My book is thicker than Ms. Phuong's (Ms. Phuong's book)
This is my room. My sister's (my sister's room) is on the second floor.

- Các trường hợp tương tự:

the chemist's
the baker's
the butcher's
the florist's
the doctor's
the vet's
the house/travel agent's

3. Cách dùng of + danh từ

- Sở hữu với of thường được dùng cho danh từ chỉ sự vật hoặc ý tưởng

Ex: The roof of the church (NOT the church's roof)

- Danh từ có a/an đứng trước

Ex: I am a big fan of F4 (NOT F4's a big fan)

- Dùng sau các từ the beginning/end/top/bottom/front/back/part/middle/side/edge

Ex: The beginning of the month (NOT the month's beginning)

- Danh từ chỉ người khi theo sau đó là một cụm từ hoặc mệnh đề

Ex: The children obeyed the directions of the man with a whistle.

I asked for the name card of the girl I met on the train.

- Đôi khi, chúng ta có thể gặp cả hai cấu trúc 's và of + noun trong cùng một câu. Cách sở hữu này gọi là sở hữu cách kép

Ex: We saw a play of Shakespear's (plays)

= We saw one of Shakespear's plays

Ví dụ: Dùng sở hữu cách để viết lại những câu sau

1. This is the book of Nam. => *This is Nam's book*

2. The tool of the mason is heavy. => *The mason's tool is heavy*

B – LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1:

Question 1: Just because you have..... doesn't mean you're not beautiful. (FLAWLESS)

- A. Flawlessness B. Flawless C. Flawlession D. Flaws

Question 2:makes your heart grow fonder. (ABSENT)

- A. Absence B. Absentness C. Absentee D. Absentee

Question 3: Life is full of surprising..... (EVENTFUL)

- A. events B. eventfulness C. event D. eventfulment

Question 4: The post-war decline in beer was practically halted last year. (CONSUME)

- A. consumption B. consuming C. consumment D. consumingness

Question 5: Better is a dinner of herbs where love is, than a stalled ox and therewith.(HATE)

- A. hating B. hatred C. hateful D. hater

Question 6: In the first quarter of the 18th century people began to realise the of hygiene to public health.(IMPORTANT)

- A. importantment B. importantness C. importion D. importance

Question 7: Can't you just see that One Direction are steamingly.....? I just can't take it anymore. (HEAT)

- A. hot B. heatedly C. heated D. heater

Question 8: Jamie'sof the night's events is hazy but the tabloids will refresh his memory. (RECOLLECT)

- A. Recollection B. Collection C. Recollecting D. Recollectment

Question 9: We are great in fate and we believe we're meant to be together.(BELIEVE)

- A. belief B. believers C. believably D. believing

Question 10: I think your stylist has taken her from the rubbish dump.(INSPIRE)

- A. inspiring B. inspirer C. inspiration D. inspiratory

Question 11: The statesmen and scholars have made important on ways Washington could help Russia control parts of the arsenal. (SUGGEST)

- A. suggestibility B. suggestion C. suggester D. suggestive

Question 12: After denying the of any recordings of the UFO abductions, Mr President went on to talk about the newest tax policy.(EXIST)

- A. existance B. existment C. existence D. existent

Question 13: Your to me really bothers me. I told you a hundred times that I'm not the guy you need.(ATTACH)

- A. attachment B. attachable C. attaching D. attachness

Question 14: For much of the last decade, Italy's leaning tower of Pisa was a huge site.(CONSTRUCT)

- A. construction B. construction C. constructional D. constructor

Question 15: When planning began in 1989, Prof. Piero Pierotti called the rescue effort "irresponsible " that would put the tower at risk.(MAD)

- A. madden B. madsion C. madness D. madding

Question 16: If you need anything I am at your, madam. (SERVE)

- A. serving B. service C. serviceman D. serviceable

Question 17: White is the colour of, so never wear it if you are upset about a bloke- it will only make you feel worse.(LONE)

- A. alone B. lonely C. loneliness D. loner

Question 18: Food like bananas and oysters are presumed to be aphrodisiac mainly due to their to certain body parts. (RESEMBLE)

- A. resembleness B. resembling C. resemb D. resemblance

Question 19: Enjoy nicotine, alcohol and caffeine only in (MODERATE)

- A. moderating B. moderation C. moderatement D. moderated

Question 20: His were not as serious as the previous time. Just broken ribs, dislocated shoulders and sprained ankles.(INJURE)

A. injury B. injured C. injurement D. injurious

ĐÁP ÁN

1-D	2-A	3-A	4-A	5-B	6-D	7-A	8-A	9-B	10-C
11-B	12-C	13-A	14-A	15-C	16-B	17-C	18-D	19-B	20-A

LUYỆN TẬP 2:

Question 1: The of those mountainous villages is the greatest achievement of this government.(ELECTRIC)

A. electrician B. electricity C. electricality D. electrics

Question 2: With the of the soup it was a wonderful meal.(EXCEPT).

A. exceptionality B. excepted C. exception D. excepting

Question 3: Her in helping the poor earned her admiration in the neighbourhood. (SELF)

A. selfishness B. unselfishness C. selffulness D. unselfish

Question 4: Don't be too hasty to passon other people.(JUDGE)

A. judgeship B. judgematic C. judgement D. judgemental

Question 5: The of his work lies in the materials he uses.(ORIGIN)

A. originality B. original C. origin D. orginate

Question 6: Can I find a pencilsomewhere in this library? (SHARP)

A. sharpen B. sharpness C. sharpish D. sharpener

Question 7: Scandinavian legend says that when the son of the goddess Frigga was killed her tears of became the white berries.(SORRY)

A. sorriness B. sorrow C. sorrower D. sorrowfulness

Question 8: After two months of laser treatment I noticed a tiny and felt a stab of determination. (IMPROVE)

A. improvement B. improving C. improvable D. improver

Question 9: I don't want my kids to spend their young years under constant to be the best. (PRESS)

A. pressment B. pressed C. pressing D. pressing

Question 10: My grandma died a natural (DIE)

A. dying B. dead C. death D. diement

Question 11: Dreams are like stars, you may never touch them, but if you follow them, they will lead you to your (DESTINE)

- A. destined B. destiny C. destiny D. destination

Question 12: A sense of makes a girl beautiful. (HUMOUROUS)

- A. humour B. humour C. humourousity D. humourless

Question 13: The person who gives you unexplained happiness is the one who gives you unexplained..... (SAD)

- A. saddle B. sadden C. sadden D. sadment

Question 14: Harry Styles is the man, got bags of charm, can win people over easily. (LADY)

- A. ladiness B. ladiness C. lady D. ladiful

Question 15: I'm looking for a girl who's cheeky and makes me chase her, the fun is all in the..... (CHASE)

- A. chase B. chasing C. chasement D. chaser

Question 16: Though Monsters has a great storyline youngermay be confused as some facts are never explained.(VIEW)

- A. viewpoint B. viewers C. viewership D. viewdata

Question 17: One Direction has taken my life so I can no longer think about real life..... (RELATE)

- A. relating B. related C. relation D. relationships

Question 18: It's not called an unhealthy obsession, it's called (DEDICATE)

- A. dedicated B. dedication C. dedicative D. dedicatee

Question 19: Directioners are the cutest in the world. (IDIOTIC)

- A. idiots B. idiotically C. idiotic D. idiocity

Question 20: When people ask me why I like One Direction, too many..... just race through my mind, so I just wind up sitting there like: "I don't know." (THINK)

- A. thinking B. thoughts C. thinkers D. thinkable

ĐÁP ÁN

1-B	2-C	3-B	4-C	5-A	6-D	7-B	8-A	9-D	10-C
11-D	12-A	13-C	14-B	15-B	16-B	17-D	18-B	19-A	20-B

LUYỆN TẬP 3

Question 1: Harry drinks a lot. He is such a big (DRINK)

A. drinker B. drinkable C. drinking D. drinkability

Question 2: Come on, let's watch them arrive in their smartest suits and shades for Louis Tomlinson's mum's (WED)

A. wedded B. wedded C. wedded D. wed

Question 3: One Direction(DANCE) made miracle (RECOVER).....from horrific accident with help from loyal dogs.

A. dancing- discovery B. dance- discovery C. dancer- recovery D. dancers-discovery

Question 4: They have just confirmed follow-up movie after This Is Us missed out on Oscar (NOMINATE).....

A. nomination B. nominating C. nominative D. nominee

Question 5: I know you're proud of your achievements, but let's at least keep some (HUMBLE).....

A. humiliation B. humility C. humbility D. humblation

Question 6: (HATE)..... are gonna hate, potatoes're gonna potato, I already ate.

A. haters B. hating C. hatred D. hateful

Question 7: I honestly don't know what to do right now. Could you give me some (SERENE)..... please?

A. serenade B. serenity C. serendipity D. serendipity

Question 8: Don't look at me like that. I know I'm a (WEIRD).....

A. weirdness B. weird C. weird D. weirdo

Question 9: What is your biggest (WEAK).....?

A. weakenning B. weaken C. weakness D. weakfish

Question 10: And what are some of your (STRONG).....?

A. strengthen B. strengths C. strongly D. strong

Question 11: I so hate researching. What's the point of being a (RESEARCH)..... anyways?

A. research B. research C. researcher D. researching

Question 12: I'd love to be a (LOSE)..... What's the point of being a (WIN)..... anyways?

A. losers-winners B. loser-winner C. lost- win D. loss-winner

Question 13: This exercise is a bit ridiculous. Whatever, I don't care, I'm not in the right state of mind right now. I'm not trying to hide my (ADDICT)..... to that boy band, you know.

A. addictive B. addicted C. addiction D. addicting

Question 14: I'm not buying that whole environmental friendly thing. Seriously, I wonder what (ENVIRONMENT)..... do in their jobs every day.

A. environmentalism B. environmentalists C. environmental D. environment

Question 15: In the series Once Upon A Time, Emma is called their (SAVE)..... Such a typical fairy tale it is.

A. saver B. saviour C. saved D. saving

Question 16: (POLLUTE)..... are the factors that cause pollution.

A. pollution B. polluters C. pollutants D. polluting

Question 17: People use (PRESERVE)..... to keep foods.

A. preserver B. preservation C. preservative D. preservatives

Question 18: Yeah, I'm going to finish this exercise. I'm sorry I'm such a lazy ass, but I can't get rid of my (LAZY)..... , you see.

A. laze B. laziness C. lazily D. lazyment

Question 19: One more question. What should I put down for you guys? Alright, this is very tricky: I'm very impressed by their (HOSPITABLE).....

A. hospital B. hospitality C. hospitably D. hospitability

Question 20: The last question already! I'm gonna make this question super hard. Nah, just kidding, get to it. She's the best (EPITOMIZE).....of kindness.

A. epitome B. epitomist C. epitomizing D. epitomized

ĐÁP ÁN

1-A	2-B	3-D	4-A	5-B	6-C	7-B	8-D	9-C	10-B
11-C	12-B	13-C	14-B	15-B	16-C	17-D	18-B	19-B	20-A

LUYỆN TẬP 4

Question 1: A person who **acts** for a living is called an

A. action B. actor C. actress D. acting

Question 2: A is someone who earns money from writing **music**.

A. musical B. musican C. musician D. musicist

Question 3: She didn't become famous as a until her 17th **novel** was published.

A. novelists B. novelist C. novelist D. novelist

Question 4: In Part 5 of the FCE **Exam** your speaking ability will be assessed by the

A. examination B. examiner C. examiner D. examiners

Question 5: At the end of the **interview** the asked if he could be shown around the company.

A. interviewer B. Interviewee C. Interviewing D. Interviewor

Question 6: The **waiter** asked the if she would help him deal with a difficult customer.

- A. waiting B. waitress C. waiting D. waitor

Question 7: An is someone who will be able to go through your **accounts** and work out how much money you have.

- A. accountor B. accountant C. accountancy D. accountant

Question 8: to the castle are expected to come during **visiting** times only.

- A. visitors B. Visiting C. visitists D. Visits

Question 9: A..... is someone who suffers from **psychosis**.

- A. psychologist B. psychotic C. psychosistist D. psychosomatic

Question 10: The company starts to **employ** a lot of.....

- A. employers B. employing C. employees D. employists

ĐÁP ÁN

1-B	2-C	3-B	4-D	5-A	6-B	7-D	8-A	9-B	10-C
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	------

LUYỆN TẬP 5

Is the word in **CAPITAL LETTERS** a noun which is always plural, or the plural form of a countable noun? Choose plural if the noun is always plural, or on countable if the noun is countable.

Question 1: She took her **GLOVES** off.

- A. Plural B. Countable

Question 2: Remember to bring some warm **CLOTHES**

- A. Plural B. Countable

Question 3: His **TEETH** were white and even.

- A. Plural B. Countable

Question 4: She was wearing blue **SHORTS** and a green T-shirt.

- A. Plural B. Countable

Question 5: If you can't see the ball, you need new **GLASSES**!

- A. Plural B. Countable

Question 6: We import a lot of manufactured **GOODS** from China.

- A. Plural B. Countable

Question 7: Some of the **RESIDENTS** have complained about the noise.

- A. Plural B. Countable

Question 8: The **CHILDREN** loved listening to her stories.

A. Plural

B. Countable

Question 9: The soldiers were facing impossible ODDS.

A. Plural

B. Countable

Question 10: Take all your BELONGINGS with you when you leave the train.

A. Plural

B. Countable

Some of the sentences below are incorrect because they contain a plural form of an uncountable noun. Write C if it is correct or I if it is incorrect for each sentence.

Question 11: I like reading science fiction stories.

A. C

B. I

Question 12: The room was full of antique furnitures.

A. C

B. I

Question 13: A tall woman with red hairs opened the door.

A. C

B. I

Question 14: I keep my jewelleries in a safe

A. C

B. I

Question 15: He sat down and took off his shoes.

A. C

B. I

Question 16: We need to buy some meat and some vegetables.

A. C

B. I

Question 17: You shouldn't drop litters.

A. C

B. I

Question 18: We have a big problem with pollutions in this country.

A. C

B. I

Question 19: My friend gets terrible headaches.

A. C

B. I

Question 20: He has made good progresses at school this term.

A. C

B. I

ĐÁP ÁN

1-B	2-A	3-B	4-A	5-A	6-A	7-B	8-B	9-A	10-A
11-A	12-B	13-B	14-B	15-A	16-A	17-B	18-B	19-B	20-B

LUYỆN TẬP 6:

Look at each sentence below and decide whether the noun in CAPITAL LETTERS is countable or uncountable. Choose C if the noun is countable or U if it is uncountable.

Question 1: The INFORMATION I received was completely wrong.

- A. C B. U

Question 2: She didn't take the doctor's ADVICE and went on the holiday anyway.

- A. C B. U

Question 3: We had lots of WORK to do yesterday so that's why I missed the party.

- A. C B. U

Question 4: Would you like another SANDWICH?

- A. C B. U

Question 5: It was the second TRIP she had made to the USA.

- A. C B. U

Question 6: I love CHOCOLATE; I eat it all the time.

- A. C B. U

Question 7: You can't change the laws of PHYSICS.

- A. C B. U

Question 8: The sports centre has got some new EQUIPMENT.

- A. C B. U

Question 9: That RESTAURANT is excellent. I really recommend it

- A. C B. U

Question 10: Did you see the amount of LUGGAGE that Peter took with him?

- A. C B. U

Choose the right form of each following word:

Question 11: The government's _____ led to the serious financial crisis. (MANAGE)

- A. mismanagement B. management C. manager D. manageability

Question 12: The _____ of Cambridge University was held ceremoniously (COMMENCE)

- A. commencer B. commencement C. commence D. commendatory

Question 13: A Committee was set up under the _____ of Edmund Compton. (CHAIR)

- A. chairman B. chair C. chairperson D. chairmanship

Question 14: The _____ of youth is one of the most important factor contributing to their succeed. (RESILIENT)

- A. resilience B. resilient C. resile D. resiliently

Question 15: The no- smoking policy was introduced with little _____ from the staffs. (RESIST)

- A. resistant B. resistive C. resistance D. resister

Question 16: Even now, the full _____ of his crimes has not been exposed. (ENORMOUS)

- A. enormously B. enormity C. enormousness D. enormous

Choose the correct quantify:

Question 17: If you have _____ time at the end of the exam, check your answer.

- A. few B. a few C. little D. a little

Question 18: Give me _____ minutes and I'll be ready.

- A. few B. a few C. little D. a little

Question 19: We've only got _____ milk left so get some when you go shopping.

- A. few B. a few C. little D. a little

Question 20: Just _____ practice everyday and you will be soon able to play the piano.

- A. few B. a few C. little D. a little

Question 21: We were disappointed that _____ of the members came to the youth club party.

- A. few B. a few C. little D. a little

Question 22: Sprinkle _____ sugar on the strawberries.

- A. few B. a few C. little D. a little

Question 23: I suppose now I'm 43, I have _____ hope of playing football for England

- A. few B. a few C. little D. a little

Question 24: Could you help me with _____ exercises I don't understand.

- A. few B. a few C. little D. a little

Question 25: There's _____ coffee left, if anyone wants some.

- A. few B. a few C. little D. a little

Question 26: Becoming an astronaut is so demanding that _____ people manage it.

- A. few B. a few C. little D. a little

Question 27: I'll meet you in half an hour – I have got _____ e-mails to write first.

- A. few B. a few C. little D. a little

Question 28: Many people feel there is _____ point in voting, even in a general election.

- A. few B. a few C. little D. a little

ĐÁP ÁN

1-B	2-B	3-B	4-A	5-A	6-B	7-B	8-B	9-A	10-B
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	------

11-A	12-B	13-D	14-A	15-C	16-B	17-D	18-B	19-D	20-D
21-A	22-D	23-C	24-B	25-D	26-A	27-B	28-C		

GÓC GIẢI TRÍ

A bum approaches a well dressed gentleman on the street. “Hey, Buddy, can you spare two dollars?” The well dressed gentleman responds “You are not going to spend in on liquor, are you?” “No, sir, I don’t drink” retorts the bum. “You are not going to throw it away in some crap game, are you?” asks the gentleman. “No way, I don’t gamble” answers the bum. “You wouldn’t waste the money at a golf course for green fees, would you?” asks the man “Never” says the bum, “I don’t play golf” The man asks the bum if he would like to come home with him for a home cooked meal. The bum accepts eagerly. While they are heading for the man’s house, the bum asks “Isn’t your wife going to be angry when she sees a guy like me at your table?” “Probably” says the man, “but it will be worth it. I want her to see what happens to a guy who doesn’t drink, gamble or play golf.”

Một gã ăn mày tiến gần một quý ông ăn mặc sang trọng trên đường phố. “Này, ông bạn quý, ông có thể cho 2 đô la được không?”

Người đàn ông ăn mặc sang trọng trả lời: “Anh sẽ không tiêu tiền vào rượu chè, phải không?” “Không, thưa ngài, tôi không uống rượu” gã ăn mày cãi lại. “Anh sẽ không quẳng nó vào những trò chơi tào lao, phải không?” người đàn ông thượng lưu hỏi. “Không đời nào, tôi không chơi bài” gã ăn mày trả lời. “Anh sẽ không tiêu hoang tiền vào những khoản phí của một trận golf, phải không?” “Không bao giờ” “Tôi không chơi golf”. Người đàn ông hỏi người ăn mày liệu ông ấy có muốn ăn một bữa cơm thân mật tại nhà không. Người ăn mày vui vẻ đồng ý. Trên đường về nhà, người ăn mày tò mò hỏi: “Liệu vợ của ông có tức giận khi thấy một gã như tôi ở bàn ăn?”

“Có lẽ là thế rồi” Người đàn ông nói, “Nhưng điều đó là đáng, tôi muốn cho vợ tôi thấy điều gì sẽ xảy ra với một gã không nhậu nhẹt, không bài bạc và cả không chơi golf”.

BÀI 2: TÍNH TỪ

A – LÝ THUYẾT

I. KHÁI NIỆM

Tính từ là từ chỉ tính chất, mức độ, phạm vi, ... của một người hoặc vật

Ex: She is **beautiful**.
That is my **new red** car.
My job is **boring**.
I'm not **satisfied** with my job.

II. CÁC LOẠI TÍNH TỪ

a) Tính từ chỉ định (**demonstrative**): this, that, these, those

Ex: This house is mine.
What does that notice say?

b) Tính từ phân biệt (**distributive**): each, every, either, neither

Ex: Each student has different learning style.

c) Tính từ chỉ số lượng (**quantitative**): some, any, no, (a) little/(a) few, many, much one, twenty

Ex: Some books are good.
I want to save a little money.

d) Tính từ nghi vấn (**interrogative**): which, what, whose

Ex: Which skirt do you like?
What games do you want to play?

e) Tính từ sở hữu (**possessive**): my, your, his, her, its, our, their

Ex: Her pen is red.
Their house is pretty.

f) Phẩm chất/tính chất (**quality**):

Ex: clever, dry, fat, golden, good, heavy, square,...

III. TÍNH TỪ CHỈ ĐỊNH: THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE

This/That + Danh từ đếm được số ít: This house

These/Those + Danh từ đếm được số nhiều: These houses

Ex: This beach was quite empty last year.
These people come from that hotel over there.
Do you see those birds at the top of the tree?

Lưu ý

Cách dùng đại từ chỉ định this/these, that/those thay thế cho danh từ đã được nhắc đến

Ex: The bookshelf of my room is better than that of his room.
The bookshelves of my room are better than those of his room.

1. This/these, that/those dùng với one/ones

Ex: This shirt is expensive. I'll buy that one.
These shirts are expensive. I'll buy those ones.

2. Cách dùng với sở hữu cách

Ex: This is my umbrella.
That is yours. That is Ms Phuong's.

This/these/that/those + danh từ + of + possessive (sở hữu cách)

Ex: That friend of Ms Phuong's = Ms Phuong's friend
This book of mine = my book

3. Those có thể có một mệnh đề quan hệ xác định theo sau

Ex: Those who couldn't walk were carried on stretchers.
Those who are interested in this job may apply to us.

4. This/that/these/those có thể chỉ một cụm từ hay mệnh đề đã được đề cập trước

Ex: He always tells lies; that makes me tired.
He always tells lies, which makes me tired. He said I wasn't a good wife.
Wasn't that a horrible thing to say?

IV. VỊ TRÍ VÀ CHỨC NĂNG CỦA TÍNH TỪ CHỈ PHẨM CHẤT

1. Tính từ bổ nghĩa cho danh từ

- a/an + adj + N
- Some, many + adj + N(s,es)

Ex: It is a hot day.
This is a new car.
She has a long hair.
I hate my boring job.

Những trường hợp đặc biệt:

a. Đứng sau đại từ bất định: everything, anything, something, nothing

Ex: I'll tell you something new.
There is nothing new.
He'll provide everything necessary.

b. Đứng sau một nhóm từ ngụ ý đo lường

Ex: The river is two hundred kilometers long.
The man is eighty years old = An eighty – year – old man.
The road is four metres wide.

c. Đứng sau danh từ khi cần một nhóm từ bổ nghĩa cho nó

Ex: I need to find an employee responsible for this job.
He wants a glass full of milk.
He is a man greedy of money.

d. Trong trường hợp nhiều tính từ cùng bổ nghĩa cho một danh từ, có thể đặt sau

Ex: He has a face thin and worn, but eager and resolute.

2. Làm bổ ngữ

Tính từ làm bổ ngữ khi nó kết hợp với một động từ làm thành vị ngữ trong câu.

Các động từ đó được gọi là “linking verb” - động từ nối: to be, to turn, to become, to fall, to keep, to remain = stay, ...

Ex: Insect turns beautiful.
Nam fell asleep.
Tom became rich.
Ann seems happy.

Các linking verb thường gặp:

- Chỉ tri giác, cảm giác: look (trông), hear (nghe), smell (ngửi), sound (nghe), taste (nếm)

Ex: The idea sounds interesting.
She looks tired today.
The dish tastes delicious.

- Cấu trúc make + sb/sth + adj

Ex: Don't make your parents sad!
Wearing flowers made her more beautiful.

- Cấu trúc keep + sb/sth + adj

Ex: Keep your room clean!
Keep your house tidy!

- Ngoài ra, các động từ nối khác cũng hay dùng là: appear (xuất hiện), feel (cảm thấy), get/grow (trở nên), keep (giữ), look (trông), turn (trở nên)

Ex: Tom felt cold.
He grew impatient.

3. Một số trường hợp đặc biệt: Tính từ có thể có nhiều nghĩa

- Ex: - early (sớm), late (muộn)
 an early/a late train
 the train is early/late
- poor (nghèo): This is a poor family
 - poor (nghèo nàn): poor working condition

V. DÙNG PHÂN TỬ NHƯ MỘT TÍNH TỪ

- Hiện tại phân từ: kết thúc bằng -ing: interesting
- Quá khứ phân từ: kết thúc bằng -ed: interested ...

Ex: The film interests me. (interest là động từ)

The film is interesting. (Mang nghĩa chủ động)

I am interested in the film. (Mang nghĩa bị động)

Lưu ý:

Cách nghĩ tính từ + V_ing dùng với người, tính từ + V_ed dùng với vật là sai.

Ex: I'm so bored that I can't find anything to do but taking selfies.

 You're boring. You came here to see me and then can't take your eyes off
 your cellphone.

Hiện tại phân từ có chức năng tính từ như: amusing, boring, tiring v.v... là chủ động và có nghĩa là “có ảnh hưởng này”

Quá khứ phân từ có chức năng tính từ như amused, horrified, tired, v.v.... là thụ động và có ý nghĩa: “bị ảnh hưởng theo cách này”

Ví dụ:

Jane is bored because her job is boring.

It was surprising that he passed the exam.

The scene was horrifying.

❖ Tính từ/phân từ có thể theo sau bằng giới từ

Động từ	Hiện trạng phân từ	Quá khứ phân từ
amuse	amusing: hài hước	amused by/at
bore	boring: buồn tẻ	bored with
scare	scaring	scared of
tire	tiring: mệt mỏi Ex: Shopping can be very tiring.	tired of: chán vì cái gì tired from: mệt mỏi vì làm gì

		Ex: I am tired from teaching all day. (Tôi bị mệt vì dạy cả ngày.) I am tired of teaching. (Tôi chán việc dạy học)
shock	shocking	shocked at/by
surprise	surprising	surprised at/by
disappoint	disappointing	disappointed by
horrify	horrifying: đáng sợ, gây sốc	horrified by
excite	exciting Ex: The football match was quite exciting.	excited about/at/by Ex: I was excited about the film.

Ví dụ: Chọn dạng đúng của từ

1. I like the film very much. It's really (interested/ **interesting**).
2. We were all (horrifying/ **horrified**) when we heard about the disaster.
3. It made me (**surprised**/ surprising) at the immigrants.

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. Ở đây ta cần một tính từ mang nghĩa chủ động.

Interesting: gây thú vị.

Dịch: Tôi rất thích bộ phim này. Nó rất là thú vị.

2. Ở đây ta cần một tính từ mang nghĩa bị động.

Horrifying: gây sợ hãi.

Horrified: bị làm cho sợ hãi

Dịch: Tất cả chúng tôi đều bị sợ hãi khi nghe về thảm họa đó.

3. Tính từ ở đây bổ nghĩa cho “me”

Hơn nữa, cấu trúc “It made me”: nó làm cho tôi ... + Tính từ mang nghĩa chủ động.

Dịch: Nó khiến tôi rất ngạc nhiên về những người nhập cư.

VI. TÍNH TỪ ĐI VỚI GIỚI TỪ

A

afraid of: sợ hãi

Ex: Are you afraid of snakes?

angry/annoyed/furious about sth/with sb for doing sth: tức giận

Ex: I was angry with myself for making such a stupid mistake.

accustomed to V-ing (= used to V.ing):

quen với Ex: I am accustomed to
driving on the left.

addicted to sth: nghiện.

Ex: He's addicted to computer games.

anxious about sth/for sb: lo lắng

Ex: He seemed anxious about the meeting.

Parents are naturally anxious for their children.

ashamed of: hổ thẹn, bối rối

Ex: She was deeply ashamed of her behaviour at the party.

amazed/astonished + at/by + sth/sb: ngạc nhiên

Ex: My parents looked astonished at my news.

We were amazed by his generosity.

acquainted with: quen với cái gì (Hay dùng: **get acquainted with**)

Ex: The students are already acquainted with the work of Shakespeare.

allergic to: bị dị ứng với

cái gì. Ex: I'm

allergic to cats.

appreciated for: được đánh giá cao.

Ex: I was appreciated for my help.

associated with: cộng tác với, liên quan tới

Ex: He no longer wished to be associated with the party's policy on education.

aware of: nhận thức về cái gì >< **unaware of.**

Ex: He was well aware of the problem.

attached to: đính kèm với, gắn bó với

Ex: We've grown very attached to this house.

B

bad at: không giỏi về

Ex: I bad at Maths.

bored with: chán

Ex: I'm bored with my job.

brilliant at = very intelligent or

skilful Ex: He's brilliant

at football.

based on: dựa trên cái gì.

Ex: This novel is based on a real story.

beneficial to = advantageous, favourable: có lợi cho.

Ex: A good diet is beneficial to health.

boastful for/about: ba hoa, khoác lác

Ex: I don't want to sound boastful but I always finish everything on time.

busy with sth/sb (hoặc busy doing sth)

Ex: Irina and Marcus were busy with preparations for their wedding.

C

clever at: thông minh

Ex: She's clever at getting what she wants.

crazy about: điên cuồng vì cái gì

Ex: It's pretty obvious he's crazy about you.

capable of: có khả năng về cái gì

Ex: He is capable of anything if it furthers his ambition.

committed to: tận tâm = **devoted to** = **dedicated to**

Ex: She is committed to her family.

concerned about/for sth: lo lắng, quan tâm về cái gì

Ex: The President is deeply concerned about this issue.

content with: bằng lòng với cái gì

Ex: She seemed quite content with her results.

careful with/about/of sth: cẩn thận

Ex: Please be careful with my glasses. (= Don't break them).

I'm very careful about washing my hands before eating. (= I make sure I do it).

certain about/of: chắc chắn về cái gì

Ex: You don't seem too certain about it.

characteristic of: đặc trưng cho tính cách của ai đó hoặc của vật nào đó

Ex: Enthusiasm is characteristic of him.

connected with: kết nối với, liên hệ với

Ex: The fall in retail sales is directly connected with the decline in employment.

conscious of: nhận thức, chú ý đến

Ex: She's very conscious of the problems involved.

crowded with sth = packed with.

Ex: a room crowded with books.

curious about: tò mò

Ex: Children are curious about animals and how they live.

D

disappointed at/by/with/in: thất vọng

Ex: They were bitterly disappointed at the result of the game.

I was disappointed by the quality of the wine.

I'm disappointed in you - I really thought I could trust you! I was very disappointed with myself.

derived from: bắt nguồn từ cái gì

Ex: In fact the word “fiction” is derived from the Greek “fictus,” which means to shape.

dedicated/devoted to: tận tụy.

Ex: She is dedicated to her job.

discouraged by: bị làm nhụt chí bởi

Ex: He sounded discouraged by the lack of progress in the talks.

dissatisfied with: không hài lòng

Ex: He has been very dissatisfied with his life in recent months.

doubtful about: hoài nghi, không chắc chắn.

Ex: Rose was doubtful about the whole idea.

delighted at/by/with: vui vẻ, hài lòng

Ex: She was delighted by/at the news of the wedding.

I was delighted with my presents.

E

excited about: có hứng thú với

Ex: I'm very excited about the news.

excellent at/in: xuất sắc

Ex: My teacher is excellent at English.

eager for: hào hứng

Ex: I am eager for my next trip.

eligible for: đủ điều kiện

Ex: Only those over 70 are eligible for the special payment.

enthusiastic about: hứng thú

Ex: You don't sound very enthusiastic about the idea.

experienced in: có kinh nghiệm về cái gì

Ex: He's very experienced in looking after animals.

envious of: ghen tị (= jealous).

Ex: He was envious of the local boys who could see her every day.

They were envious of his success.

F

famous for: nổi tiếng

Ex: Hanoi is famous for “pho”.

fed up with/about: chán ngấy

Ex: In the end, I just got fed up with his constant complaining.

I fed up with my job.

fond of: ưa thích.

Ex: I’m fond of cooking

frightened of: sợ hãi

Ex: I’ve always been frightened of snakes.

furious at: giận dữ, điên tiết

Ex: They were furious at not being invited to the party.

faithful to = loyal: trung thành

Ex: He remained faithful to the ideals of the party.

familiar with: quen thuộc

Ex: He is familiar with me.

friendly with: thân thiện

Ex: I am very friendly with the people.

free of/from: không chứa hoặc không bị ảnh hưởng bởi thứ gì đó độc hại, không tốt

Ex: free from difficulty/doubt/fear.

free from artificial colours and flavourings.

It was several weeks before he was completely free of pain.

G

glad about: vui mừng

Ex: She wasn’t going to leave, and he was glad about that.

guilty of/about: cảm thấy có lỗi, hối lỗi

Ex: I felt guilty about not visiting my parents more often.

generous with: rộng rãi, rộng lượng.

Ex: To be generous with your time.

gentle with: lịch thiệp

Ex: He is gentle with women and children.

good at: giỏi

Ex: I'm good at English.

grateful to: biết ơn.

Ex: I am extremely grateful to all the teachers for their help.

She was grateful to them for letting her stay at their house.

H

happy about/with + sb/sth: hạnh phúc

Ex: I'm not happy with his work this term.

If there's anything you're not happy about, come and ask.

I'm not too happy about her living alone.

hopeless at: không còn hy vọng, vô vọng

Ex: I'm hopeless at science.

I am hopeless at paying my bills on time.

hopeful of/about: hi vọng

Ex: He is not very hopeful about the outcome of the interview.

She is hopeful of returning to work soon.

The board is quite hopeful of securing further investment.

I

involved in/with: liên quan đến; dành nhiều thời gian, sự chú ý

Ex: We need to examine all the costs involved in the project first.

She was deeply involved with the local hospital.

I was so involved in my book I didn't hear you knock.

interested in: quan tâm, thích thú

Ex: I'm interested in football.

incapable of: không có khả năng

Ex: Professors who seem incapable of any original thought.

identical with/to: giống, tương tự

Ex: This house is almost identical to the one where I lived as a child.

immune to/from: miễn dịch, không bị ảnh hưởng bởi, tránh khỏi

Ex: Adults are often immune to German measles.

Not even the President's wife was immune from criticism by the press.

impressed with/by: ấn tượng

Ex: We were all impressed by her enthusiasm.

I was very impressed by the efficiency of the staff.

inferior to: kém hơn, không tốt

Ex: Modern music is often considered inferior to that of the past.

indifferent to: thờ ơ, không quan tâm, hờ hững

Ex: The government cannot afford to be indifferent to public opinion.

innocent of: ngây thơ, vô tội

Ex: She was found innocent of any crime.

J

jealous of: ghen ghét, đố kỵ

Ex: Other girls were jealous of her good looks.

Sophia had admirers, and I was jealous of her.

K

keen on: thích thú

Ex: The kids are mad keen on computer games at the moment.

I'm keen on playing soccer.

kind to: tốt bụng

Ex: He was very kind to me when the children were ill.

You are very kind to me for buying this gift.

L

late for: muộn

Ex: He was ten minutes late for school.

limited to: hạn chế

Ex: Racial problems are certainly not limited to the south.

lucky at: may mắn cho cái gì

Ex: I'm lucky at winning this trip.

N

nervous of/about: lo lắng

Ex: She was nervous about walking home so late.

He's always been a little nervous of change.

notorious for: được biết đến vì tiếng xấu.

Ex: The country is notorious for its appalling prison conditions.

O

opposed to: bất đồng

Ex: He was bitterly opposed to the war.

P

proud of: tự hào về

Ex: They are proud of their daughter.

pleased with: hài lòng với

Ex: It took a long time to complete the work, but I'm very pleased with the results.

Are you pleased with the way things went yesterday?

patient with: nhẫn nại

Ex: Susan's very patient with the children.

pessimistic about: bi quan

Ex: Doctors are pessimistic about his chances of making a full recovery.

polite to: lịch sự

Ex: You must be more polite to the customers.

popular with: được yêu thích bởi số đông

Ex: These policies are unlikely to prove popular with middle-class voters.

punished for: bị trừng phạt

Ex: He was punished for being late for school yesterday.

Q

qualified for: đủ điều kiện, đủ khả năng

Ex: He is qualified for this dangerous mission.

R

responsible for: chịu trách nhiệm về

Ex: You must be responsible for paying these bills.

ready for: sẵn sàng

Ex: I'm ready for the exam.

related to: liên quan đến

Ex: He was related to that crime.

relevant to: liên quan đến

Ex: I'll supply the facts relevant to the case.

respectful for/of: lễ phép, tôn trọng

Ex: I'm respectful of your opinion.

be/get + rid of: tống khứ

Ex: We got rid of all the old furniture.

S

sick of: chán ngấy

Ex: I'm sick of waiting around like this.

sorry about/for: rất hối hận và hối hận

Ex: Are you sorry for what you've done?

scared of: sợ hãi

Ex: All small children are scared of ghost.

similar to: tương tự

Ex: Your hat is similar to mine.

surprised at/by: ngạc nhiên

Ex: We were surprised at your behavior.

shocked at/by: sốc

Ex: I was shocked at the news of her death.

satisfied with: hài lòng với

Ex: He felt satisfied with his job.

sensitive to/about: nhạy cảm

Ex: She is very sensitive to other people's feelings.

successful in: thành công

Ex: Finally, they were successful in putting out the fire.

serious about: nghiêm trọng, nghiêm túc

Ex: I'm serious about my work.

skillful at: khéo tay, tài giỏi

Ex: He is skillful at inventing excuses.

slow at: chậm

Ex: She is frequently slow at making up her mind.

suitable for/to: thích hợp

Ex: This programme is not suitable for children.

sure of/about: chắc chắn

Ex: I'm not sure of the results.

suspicious of/about: nghi ngờ

Ex: I'm always suspicious about his kindness.

sympathetic to/towards: thông cảm

Ex: I did not feel sympathetic at all towards Kate.

T

tired of: chán vì cái gì

Ex: I am tired of studying all the time.

tired from: mệt mỏi vì làm gì

Ex: I am tired from teaching all day.

terrified of: cảm thấy khiếp sợ

Ex: I'm terrified of spiders.

thankful to do sth/for sth: biết ơn

Ex: I was thankful to see they'd all arrived safely.

troubled with: bồn chồn, lo lắng

Ex: Don't be troubled with that.

typical of: điển hình

Ex: This meal is typical of local cookery.

U

used to: quen với

Ex: I'm used to getting up early.

upset about: buồn về

Ex: I was upset about losing my money.

unaware of: không nhận thức được

Ex: He was unaware of my presence.

W

worried about: lo lắng

Ex: He is always worried about his wife.

wrong with/about: sai về

Ex: There's something wrong with the printer.

Ví dụ: Chọn đáp án đúng

1. She was a little jealous ____ her sister's success

- A. by B. in C. to **D. of**

Jealous of: ghen ghét, đố kỵ.

2. I've always been keen ____ learning language.

- A. with **B. on** C. at D. of

Keen on: thích thú

VII. TÍNH TỪ ĐƠN, TÍNH TỪ GHÉP

1. Tính từ đơn

	Noun	Adj
Noun + y	Rain	Rainy
	Wind	Windy
	Sun	Sunny
	Snow	Snowy
	Fog	Foggy
Noun + ly	Day	Daily
	Man	Manly
	Friend	Friendly
	Love	Lovely
Noun + ful	Care	Careful
	Beauty	Beautiful
	Harm	Harmful
Noun + less	Care	Careless
	Home	Homeless
	Harm	Harmless
Noun + en	Gold	Golden
	Wool	Woolen
	Wood	Wooden
Noun + some	Trouble	Troublesome
	Quarrel	quarrelsome
Noun + ish	Book	Bookish
	Girl	Girlish
	Child	Childish
Noun + ous	Humour	Humourous
	Danger	Dangerous

2. Tính từ ghép

	Examples
--	----------

Adj + adj	a dark-blue coat
	a red-hot iron bar
Noun + adjective	a snow-white face
	the oil-rich country
Noun + participle	a horse-drawn cart
	a heart-breaking story
Adjective + participle	ready-made shirt
	a good-looking girl
Adverb + participle	a newly-built house
	a well-dressed man
Noun + noun-ed	a tile-roofed house
Adjective + noun-ed	a dark-haired girl
A group of words	a twenty-year-old girl
	a twelve-chapter novel
	an eight-day trip
	an air-to-air missile

VIII. HẬU TỔ, TIỀN TỔ CỦA TÍNH TỪ

1. Hậu tố của tính từ

Adj endings	Examples
1. – ent	independent, sufficient, absent, ancient, apparent, ardent
2. – ant	arrogant, expectant, important, significant, abundant, ignorant, brilliant
3. – ful	beautiful, graceful, powerful, grateful, forgetful, doubtful
4. – less	doubtless, fearless, powerless, countless, careless, helpless
5. – ic	civic, classic, historic, artistic, economic
6. – ive	authoritative, demonstrative, passive, comparative, possessive, native
7. – ous	dangerous, glorious, murderous, viscous, ferocious, hilarious
8. – able	charitable, separable, bearable, reliable, comfortable, suitable
9. – ible	audible, edible, horrible, terrible
10. – al	central, general, oral, tropical, economical
11. – ory	mandatory, compulsory, predatory, satisfactory
12. – ary	arbitrary, budgetary, contrary, primary, temporary, necessary

13. – y	angry, happy, icy, messy, milky, tidy, chilly, slippery, rainy
14. – ly	friendly, lovely, lively, daily, manly, beastly, cowardly, queenly, rascally
15. – ate	temperate, accurate, considerate, immediate, literate
16. – ish	foolish, childish, bookish, feverish, reddish

2. Tiền tố của tính từ

Prefix	Examples
non-	non-smoking, non-alcoholic
inter-	international, intercontinental
il-	illegal, illegible, illiterate, illogical
ir-	irreplaceable, irregular, irresponsible
un	uncomfortable, unsuccessful, unhappy, unreal, untrue, unlucky, unequal, unemployed
in-	inconvenient, inedible, incomplete, independent, indivisible
im-	immature, impatient, impossible, impractical

IX. THỨ TỰ CỦA CÁC TÍNH TỪ CHỈ PHẨM CHẤT

O	Opinion	beautiful, excellent.....
S	Size	big, small...
A	Age	old, new...
S	Shape	round, oval, square...
C	Color	blue, red, yellow....
O	Origin	Vietnamese, Japanese...
M	Material	cotton, woollen....
P	Purpose	walking stick, sleeping bag, reading lamp

Ví dụ: Sắp xếp lại trật tự các từ

- sharp/ knife/ a/ long → a sharp long knife
- a/ bath/ small/ round → a small round bath

Giải chi tiết

- sharp: sắc - Opinion;
long: dài - Size
a: mạo từ; knife: con dao (danh từ)
→ a sharp long knife: một con dao sắc dài

2. a: mào từ; bath: bồn tắm (danh từ)

Small: nhỏ - size

Round: hình tròn - shape

→ a small round bath: một cái bồn tắm nhỏ hình tròn

X. BÀI TẬP TÍNH TỪ

I. Chọn đáp án đúng nhất

Question 1: It was _____ that she passed the exam. Everyone had thought that she failed.

- A. surprising B. surprised C. surprisingly D. surprisedly

Question 2: Jane is _____ because her job is _____

- A. bored/bored B. boring/bored C. boring/boring D. bored/boring

Question 3: I don't like this coffee because it tastes very _____

- A. strength B. strong C. strongly D. strengthly

Question 4: Because of the lights, the city seemed _____ from the way that I had remembered it.

- A. different B. differently C. to different D. to be differently

Question 5: He is one of the most _____ people I have ever met.

- A. bored B. bore C. boring D. boredom

Question 6: That film was so _____ that I was completely attracted.

- A. interestingly B. interesting C. interest D. interested.

Question 7: Jenny was so _____ when she saw Heidi who was in white costume with long black hair.

- A. frighten B. frightened C. frightening D. frightens

Question 8: I broke the window. _____ made my mother angry.

- A. This B. That C. Which D. What

Question 9: She looks very _____ in her white dress.

- A. beautiful B. beautifully C. beauty D. beautician

Question 10: She can't come to my birthday party. _____ makes me sad.

- A. This B. That C. These D. Those

Question 11: He felt _____ after a long hard working day.

- A. tired B. tiring C. tiredness D. tire

Question 12: Her misbehavior makes me _____

- A. annoying B. annoyingly C. annoyed D. annoy

Question 13: I am sick _____ George! He is always short _____ money!

- A. from/with B. from/from C. of/of D. with/in

Question 14: We weren't interested at all _____ what he was telling about his journey.

- A. from B. in C. at D. on

Question 15: He is a very honest man. We don't think he is capable _____ being a theft.

- A. on B. of C. over D. from

Question 16: Why don't you trust me? Why are you suspicious _____ my intentions?

- A. of B. with C. for D. in

Question 17: Give me the names of the students who were responsible _____ all that noise.

- A. with B. in C. for D. of

Question 18: Don't worry. We'll look after you. There's nothing to be scared _____

- A. from B. against C. off D. of

Question 19: The street will be crowded _____ tourists during the festival.

- A. with B. at C. of D. on

Question 20: My mother would hate being dependent _____ anybody.

- A. from B. with C. in D. on

Question 21: He felt ashamed _____ having offended his teacher.

- A. on B. at C. in D. of

Question 22: I'm allergic _____ fish.

- A. to B. with C. for D. against

Question 23: This novel is based _____ a real story.

- A. in B. on C. at D. over

Question 24: She is dedicated _____ her family.

- A. to B. with C. from D. in

Question 25: Are you pleased _____ the way things went yesterday?

- A. for B. to C. with D. into

II. Điền giới từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống.

- Our house is similar _____ yours. Perhaps yours is a bit larger.
- I'm tired _____ doing the same things every day. I need a change.
- John has no money of his own. He's totally dependent _____ his parents.
- I don't like going up ladders. I'm afraid _____ heights.
- Linda doesn't look very well. I'm worried _____ her.
- Are you still upset _____ what I said to you yesterday?

7. I was delighted _____ the present you gave me.
 8. We're all excited _____ going on holiday next week.

III. Chọn dạng đúng của từ bằng cách thêm -ing hoặc -ed

1. During the first few years, many immigrants feel _____ (hinder) by their slow economic advancement.
 2. I have read a _____(fascinate) book. It made me surprised at the immigrants.
 3. I like the film very much. It's really _____(amaze).
 4. Everyone was _____ (surprise) that he passed the examination
 5. He is such an _____(interest) guy.
 6. He makes other people _____ (bore)
 7. I was _____(shock) at the news of her death
 8. I have never watched such a _____ (disappoint) film.
 9. He is one of the most _____ (amuse) people in my class.
 10. Many baseball players from the Dominican Republic are _____ (excite) when they are selected to play for a U.S. team.

ĐÁP ÁN

I. Chọn đáp án đúng nhất

1-A	2-D	3-B	4-A	5-C	6-B	7-B	8-B	9-A	10-B
11-A	12-C	13-C	14-B	15-B	16-A	17-C	18-D	19-A	20-D
21-D	22-A	23-B	24-A	25-C					

II. Điền giới từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống

1. to	2. of	3. on	4. of	5. about	6. about	7. with	8. about
-------	-------	-------	-------	----------	----------	---------	----------

III. Chọn dạng đúng của từ bằng cách thêm -ing hoặc -ed

1. hindered	2. fascinating	3. amazing	4. surprised	5. interesting
6. bored	7. shocked	8. disappointing	9. amusing	10. excited

B – LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1

Question 1: She recovers very fast. She has made _____progress

- A.** Astonishing **B.** Astonished

Question 2: I didn't find the situation funny. I was not _____

A. Amused **B. Amusing**

Question 3: Why do you always look so _____? Is your life really so _____?

A. Boring/Bored **B. Boring/Bored** **C. Boring/Boring** **D. Bored/Bored**

Question 4: He's one of the most _____ people I've ever met. He never stops talking and he never say anything _____.

A. Bored/interested **B. Boring/interesting** **C. Boring/interested** **D. Bored/interesting**

Question 5: At first I thought Jake was an _____ guy, but tonight I felt somewhat _____ with his company.

A. Interested/interesting **B. Interesting/interested**
C. Interested/interested **D. Interesting/interesting**

Question 6: When One Direction didn't win UK X-factor 2010, I was _____.

A. Disappointing **B. Disappointed**

Question 7: It was very _____ not to get the job.

A. Depressing **B. Depressed**

Question 8: Philip was exceptionally _____ at Joanne's behaviour.

A. Annoying **B. Annoyed**

Question 9: I thought the program on wildlife was _____. I was absolutely _____.

A. Fascinating/fascinated **B. Fascinated/fascinating**
C. Fascinating/fascinating **D. Fascinated/fascinated**

Question 10: We were _____ to hear your good news.

A. Thrilling **B. Thrilled**

Question 11: The teacher's explanation was _____. Most of the students didn't understand it.

A. Confusing **B. confused**

Question 12: I seldom visit art galleries. I'm not particularly _____ in art.

A. Interesting **B. Interested**

Question 13: The lecture was _____. I fell asleep.

A. Boring **B. Bored**

Question 14: I asked Emily if she wanted to come out with us but she wasn't _____.

A. Interesting **B. interested**

Question 15: I've been working very hard all day and now I'm _____.

A. Exhausting **B. Exhausted**

Question 16: I'm starting a new job next week. I'm quite _____ about it.

A. Exciting **B. Excited**

Question 17: Tom is very good at telling funny stories. He can be very _____.

- A. Amusing B. Amused

Question 18: I've got nothing to do. I'm _____.

- A. Boring B. Bored

Question 19: Taylor Swift is an _____ artist. She's young, beautiful and talented.

- A. Amazing B. Amazed

Question 20: Did you ever realize how _____ you are?

- A. Unprecedented B. Unprecedenteding

Question 21: This is crazy. I hate _____ work.

- A. Tiring B. Tired

Question 22: You look absolutely _____!

- A. Stunning B. Stunned

Question 23: She is very _____ when you call her at midnight.

- A. Irritating B. Irritated

Question 24: Will you stop yelling at me like that? It's so _____

- A. Frustrating B. Frustrated

Question 25: This car looks _____

- A. Luxurious B. Luxurious C. Luxuriant

Question 26: The girl over there is just so _____. She takes my breath away!

- A. Gorgeous B. Gorgon C. Gorgeously

Question 27: The baby is crying too loudly. The mom must be _____

- A. Wearing out B. Wear out C. Worn out

Question 28: What the point of being _____ at me? I didn't do anything.

- A. Mad B. Madness C. Maddening

Question 29: The _____ need to have more attention from the government.

- A. Poverty B. Poverish C. Poor

Question 30: Don't try to flirt with her, she's _____!

- A. Taking B. Taking C. Taken

Question 31: The internet is dangerous. It can be _____

- A. Addictive B. Addicted C. Addicting

Question 32: The way she walks is just _____

- A. Mesmerising B. Mesmerised C. Mesmerist

Question 33: She gave a _____ performance.

A. Hypnotised **B.** Hypnotic **C.** Hypnotical

Question 34: Turn off electronic devices when you go out. Be a bit more _____!

A. Economy **B.** Economic **C.** Economical

Question 35: He works very hard. It's not _____ that he's always tired.

A. Surprising **B.** Surprised

ĐÁP ÁN

1-A	2-A	3-B	4-B	5-B	6-B	7-A	8-B	9-A	10-B
11-A	12-B	13-A	14-B	15-B	16-B	17-A	18-B	19-A	20-A
21-A	22-A	23-B	24-A	25-A	26-A	27-C	28-A	29-C	30-C
31-A	32-A	33-B	34-C	35-A					

LUYỆN TẬP 2:

Rearrange the adjectives into the correct orders.

Question 1: grey / long / beard / a

A. a long grey beard **B.** a grey long beard

Question 2: flowers / red / small

A. red small flowers **B.** small red flowers

Question 3: car / black / big / a

A. a big black car **B.** a big black car

Question 4: blonde / hair / short

A. blonde short hair **B.** short blonde hair

Question 5: house / a / modern / big / brick

A. a big modern brick house **B.** a modern big brick house

C. a brick big modern house

Question 6: a/wonderful/round/brand new/German/table

A. a round brand new wonderful German table **B.** a wonderful brand new round German table

C. a brand new wonderful German round table

Question 7: a/ wooden/grand/ancient/precious/piano

A. a grand ancient precious wooden piano **B.** an ancient precious grand wooden piano

C. a precious grand ancient wooden piano

Question 8: a/ old/leather/skipping/brown/rope

A. an old brown leather skipping rope **B.** a leather brown old skipping rope

C. a skipping leather brown old rope

Question 9: a/long/French/amazing/kiss

- A. a long French amazing kiss
- B. an amazing long French kiss
- C. a French long amazing kiss

Question 10: a/ prestigious/international/Catholic/large/school

- A. a prestigious large international Catholic school
- B. a large prestigious international Catholic school
- C. a Catholic large prestigious international school

Rearrange the adjectives into the correct orders.

Question 11: David Archuleta is the(American Idol/youngest) runner-up.

- A. Youngest American Idol
- B. American Idol youngest

Question 12: One Direction is a bunch of (teenage/silly/pop/English-Irish) singers. They represent our generation perfectly.

- A. Teenage silly English-Irish pop
- B. Silly teenage English-Irish pop

Question 13: They are asked to be aware of (American/sexy/middle-aged) women.

- A. Middle aged American sexy
- B. Sexy middle aged American

Question 14: Prof. Lupin got (old/scary/pale) scars all over his arms.

- A. Old scary pale
- B. Scary old pale

Question 15: He was said to be a (filthy/little/green) cockroach.

- A. Green little filthy
- B. Filthy little green

Question 16: Everybody is banned from the (dark/dangerous/forbidden) forest.

- A. Dangerous dark forbidden
- B. Dark dangerous forbidden

Question 17: I'd give anything to have a look at the (wizard / intriguing/modern/British) world.

- A. Intriguing modern British wizard world
- B. Modern intriguing wizard British world

Question 18: Niall Horan is (young/blonde/Irish/renowned) hearth rob, but he's actually a brunette.

- A. Blonde young renowned Irish
- B. Renowned young blonde Irish

Question 19: Last night I had a (long/weird/teenage) dream.

- A. Teenage weird long
- B. Weird long teenage

Question 20: Germany is considered a (beautiful/developed) country.

- A. Beautiful developed
- B. Developed beautiful

Choose the correct answer.

Question 21: Look at the water! It's _____

- A. Sparkled
- B. Sparkly
- C. Sparkling

Question 22: Percy Jackson is one of my _____ characters.

- A. Favored B. Favorite C. Favoring

Question 23: The silence in this room is definitely _____

- A. Scared B. Scary C. Scaring

Question 24: What are some of the _____ topics today?

- A. Hotly debated B. Hot debated C. Debated hotly

Question 25: _____ to popular belief, Stuck in Love isn't a bad film.

- A. Contrast B. Contrary C. Contrasting

Question 26: Logan Lerman is a teenage _____ actor.

- A. Jew B. Jews C. Jewish

Question 27: Harry Styles is one of the few people who can actually make a trip _____

- A. Endearing B. Endear C. Endeared

Question 28: Drop everything now, meet me in the _____ rain.

- A. Poured B. Poury C. Pouring

Question 29: Lily Collins is such a _____ girl.

- A. Sass B. Sassing C. Sassy

Question 30: Emma Watson delivered a _____ speech at the UN meeting last Thursday.

- A. Power B. Powerful C. Empowered

Question 31: You are talking _____! Shut up!

- A. Nonsense B. Senseless C. insensible

Question 32: -Hello _____!

-Good morning douchebag.

- A. Beauty B. Beautician C. Beautiful

Question 33: The _____ by war need our help.

- A. Impoverish B. Impoverish C. Impoverished

Question 34: I just can't think of another sentence. Do you have anything more _____?

- A. Creative B. Creating C. Created

Question 35: -Do you want something from the trolley, dear?

-No thanks, I'm all _____

- A. setting B. set C. settle

ĐÁP ÁN

1. A	2. B	3. A	4. B	5. A	6. B	7. C	8. A	9. B	10. A
------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	-------

11. A	12. B	13. B	14. B	15. B	16. A	17. A	18. B	19. B	20. A
21. C	22. B	23. B	24. A	25. B	26. C	27. A	28. c	29. C	30. B
31. A	32. C	33. C	34. A	35. B					

LUYỆN TẬP 3:

Question 1: This room is so! Put all your toys away! (tidy)

- A. untidy B. tidy C. tidied

Question 2: He doesn't have a job. He's(employed)

- A. inemployed B. unemployed C. employment

Question 3: I work hard but they pay me little money. That's.....(fair)

- A. infair B. unfair C. imfair

Question 4: Bewhen you open the door.(care)

- A. Careless B. Uncareful C. Careful

Question 5: Could your repeat that, please? I don't really understand it.(explain)

- A. explaining B. explaining C. explainment

Question 6: The receptionist was very..... and explained to us everything very carefully.(help)

- A. Helpful B. Unhelpful C. Helpless

Question 7: The news is _____. Everyone is_____ (heart)

- A. Heartbreaking-heartbreak B. Hearbroken-heartbreaking
C. Heartbreaking-heartbroken

Question 8: This picture is so_____. (color)

- A. Colored B. Colorful C. Coloring

Question 9: The book is incredibly_____ (write)

- A. Well written B. Good written C. Well writing

Question 10: She always has very pretty selfies. She is quite_____ (photo)

- A. Photographic B. Photogenic C. Photographical

Question 11: This problem is _____. Every nation needs to pay attention. (universe)

- A. Universing B. University C. Universal

Question 12: Your hair is _____. I like that.

- A. Black jet B. Jet black C.

Question 13: Edward, your hands are strange! They are_____!

A. Cold ice B. Ice cold C.

Question 14: This film is so sad, it's really _____

A. Tragedy B. Tragical C. Tragic

Question 15: I think for a moment and I believe maybe I was _____ - to meet you.

A. Enchanting B. Enchanting C. Enchant

Question 16: I don't think so: I..... with you.(agree)

A. inagree B. disagree C. unagree

Question 17: I usuallythe suitcases as soon as we arrive home from the airport.(pack)

A. dispack B. dispack C. ilpack

Question 18: He never says anything when he comes into the room. He is very (polite)

A. Impolite B. Unpolite C. Dispolite

Question 19: I never watch plays because I..... going to the theatre.(like)

A. unlike B. imlike C. dislike

Question 20: Their dog while they were walking in the park.(appeared)

A. unappeared B. imappeared C. disappeared

Question 21: Making several copies of a CD and selling them is (legal)

A. illegal B. unlegal C. imlegal

Question 22: He said it is..... to solve the problem and I agree with him: I can't find a solution.(possible)

A. Unpossible B. Impossible C. Inpossible

Question 23: Your project will be_____ (stoppable).

A. Unstoppable B. Imstoppable C. Instoppable

Question 24: What the fans did to us was_____ (heard) of.

A. Unheard B. Imheard C. Disheard

Question 25: You are very _____ (responsible).

A. Unresponsible B. Imresponsible C. Irresponsible

Question 26: Be sure to contact him if you need advice. He's a very (HELP) person.

A. Helpless B. Helpful C. Unhelpful

Question 27: It was a really (ENJOY) party. Thanks for inviting me

A. Enjoying B. Enjoying C. Enjoyable

Question 28: He has just taken out a (MONTH) subscription to the magazine.

A. Monthful **B.** Month-round **C.** Monthly

Question 29: She smiled (HAPPY) when they offered her the new job.

A. happily **B.** Happy **C.** Unhappy

Question 30: In order for the medicine to work (EFFECT) you must take the correct amount.

A. effective **B.** affected **C.** effectively

Question 31: Although our teacher is very strict in class, she is more (FRIEND) than you would expect.

A. Friendly **B.** Unfriendly **C.** Friendless

Question 32: What a beautiful vase! That's the (LOVE) present I've ever ha

A. Lovely **B.** Loveliest **C.** Lovelier

Question 33: Right, you will just give yourself away to jerks with infinitely (LOW)..... IQs than yours!

A. Low **B.** lower **C.** lowest

Question 34: –I don't want to get _____ (HURT)

- I'm not going to hurt you.

A. to hurt **B.** hurting **C.** hurt

Question 35: I was _____ (AWE) when I saw him. He was so dazzling handsome.

A. awful **B.** awesome **C.** awestruck

ĐÁP ÁN

1-A	2-B	3-B	4-C	5-B	6-A	7-C	8-B	9-A	10-B
11-B	12-B	13-B	14-C	15-B	16-B	17-B	18-A	19-C	20-C
21-A	22-B	23-A	24-A	25-C	26-B	27-C	28-C	29-A	30-C
31-A	32-B	33-B	34-C	35-C					

LUYỆN TẬP 4

Choose the correct prefix or suffix to form the opposite of the word in CAPITALS.

Question 1: When he became a teenager he wanted to be more (DEPENDENT) from his parents.

A. Independent **B.** Undependent **C.** Imdependent

Question 2: It was really (HONEST) of you to take that money without asking.

A. Unhonest **B.** Mishonest **C.** Dishonest

Question 3: If you hadn't been so (CARE) with that book you'd still have it now.

- A. Uncareful B. Imcareful C. Incareful

Question 4: My broken leg means I'll be (ABLE) to go on holiday with you.

- A. Unable B. Imable C. Inable

Question 5: In many countries it is (LEGAL) to smoke cigarettes under the age of 16.

- A. Unlegal B. Illegal C. Imlegal

Question 6: He waited (PATIENTLY) for the train to arrive at the station.

- A. Unpatiently B. Inpatiently C. Impatiently

Question 7: The teacher told me it was (RESPONSIBLE) of me to set off the fire alarm.

- A. Irresponsible B. Inresponsible C. Unresponsible

Provide the correct forms of the words in brackets.

Question 8: She's a very (EMOTION) girl, so don't play with her heart.

- A. Emotional B. Emotive C. Motional

Question 9: Seeing all the crop being destroyed after the storm was very (HEART)

- A. Dishearting B. Unheart C. Disheartening

Question 10: Anyone who is (FUN) and doesn't take herself too (SERIOUS) is (ATTRACT) to me.

- A. Funny- serious- attractive B. Funny-seriously-attractively
C. Funny-seriously-attractive

Question 11: The whole stereo typical manly-man thing is a bit (RIDICULE). A lot of girls, deep down, like to see a softer side.

- A. Ridiculous B. Ridikulus C. Riddle

Question 12: However many amazing things happen in your life, you should always be thankful for it, remain humble,modest and (RESPECT)

- A. Respected B. Respectful C. Respecting

Question 13: I don't mind getting a black eye, or a (BREAK) arm for my girl, as long as she's there to kiss it later.

- A. Breaking B. Broken C. Breaked

Question 14: Zayn is a very (PROTECT) guy, especially when it comes to Niall.

- A. Protective B. Protecting C. Protecting

Question 15: I've tried playing it cool, but when I'm looking at you, I can't ever be (BRAVERY) because you make my heart race.

- A. Braverial B. Bravo C. Brave

Question 16: I hates it when girls act (STUPIDITY) because they think it's cute. Intelligence is sexy.

- A.** Stupid **B.** Stupidful **C.** Stupitive

Question 17: It's odd that that girls ask if they can hug me. Don't ask, do it. I'm just a (REGULATION) guy.

- A.** Regularly **B.** Regulative **C.** Regular

Question 18: He hates rabbits. He thinks they are (POINT) and do nothing.

- A.** Pointing **B.** Pointless **C.** Pointed

Question 19: When I was 12, all of friends had girlfriends, I felt very (LONE) and awkward, so I asked my mom to date me.

- A.** Alone **B.** Lonely **C.** Loneliness

Question 20: I'm not crazy. I prefer the term "mentally (HILARITY)".

- A.** Hilarious **B.** Hilary **C.** Hilarous

ĐÁP ÁN

1-A	2-C	3-A	4-A	5-B	6-C	7-A	8-A	9-C	10-C
11-A	12-B	13-B	14-A	15-C	16-A	17-C	18-B	19-B	20-A

CHIA SẺ KINH NGHIỆM

Lợi ích từ việc đọc báo Anh – Việt

Cũng giống như khi bạn đọc báo tiếng Việt:

Đọc báo giúp bạn tiếp cận với ngôn ngữ thời cuộc hiện tại và thông dụng mang tính chất đại chúng.

- Và qua việc đọc báo Anh - Việt, bạn cũng được mở mang về nguồn thông tin đa dạng và phong phú của thế giới

- Bạn có thể học hỏi về các lĩnh vực chuyên sâu trong cuộc sống.

Nếu bạn đọc báo tiếng Anh thường xuyên, trình độ tiếng Anh của bạn sẽ cải thiện, nhất là về vốn từ vựng. Thêm vào đó, bạn sẽ học được cách viết câu nhờ vào những từ và cấu trúc bạn đọc được từ báo. Cách hành văn của bạn nhờ đó cũng sẽ gần gũi và tự nhiên hơn với lối hành văn của người bản xứ.

Với những bạn đang muốn đạt các chứng chỉ tiếng Anh quốc tế như IELTS/TOEFL/FCE/CAE, bạn nên đọc báo tiếng Anh thường xuyên vì những bài báo sẽ được sử dụng trong phần thi viết và đọc. Các bài kiểm tra theo chuẩn Cambridge không chỉ muốn kiểm tra việc bạn hiểu các bài báo đến đâu mà còn muốn biết bạn có thể viết được chúng không nữa. Và sẽ đặc biệt hữu dụng khi bạn đọc tờ **New Scientist** và **the Economist** để sẵn sàng cho các câu hỏi về lĩnh vực học thuật.

Nên đọc báo tiếng Anh như thế nào?

Học sinh, sinh viên thường chú tâm vào câu hỏi làm sao để đọc báo một cách hiệu quả hay nên đọc bao nhiêu bài báo mỗi tuần và mỗi ngày. Câu trả lời phụ thuộc vào trình độ tiếng Anh của bạn. Nhiều học viên học rất kém tiếng Anh. Họ gặp khá nhiều khó khăn trong việc đọc và vì thế thỉnh thoảng mới đọc. Những học viên giỏi tiếng Anh thì khác, họ thường xuyên tìm đọc các thông tin từ báo **NY Times**. Những học viên ở trình độ trung bình thường đọc các bản tin ngắn trong ngày... Tuy nhiên, có một điều chắc chắn rằng bạn càng đọc nhiều thì việc học tiếng Anh của bạn sẽ càng tiến bộ.

Bạn cũng nên đọc bài báo từ các vùng mà bạn thích. Ví dụ như nếu bạn muốn định cư tới Úc, hãy cố gắng đọc báo nước này. Tuy nhiên việc đọc những bài báo đa dạng về tác giả, phong cách viết hay chủ đề... sẽ giúp mở rộng kỹ năng tư duy và giúp bạn học nhiều từ mới hơn.

Tìm được động lực để đọc cũng rất quan trọng. Tôi khuyên các bạn nên đọc những bài viết về chủ đề mà các bạn yêu thích. Từ đó việc học của bạn sẽ trở nên dễ dàng hơn. Đặc biệt, bạn sẽ có hứng thú đọc và biến việc đọc báo tiếng Anh trở thành một thói quen tốt.

Các trang báo mạng hữu ích:

Nguồn báo từ nước Anh:

- Financial Times
- Times
- Telegraph
- The Guardian
- METRO
- Mirror
- The Sun
- The SundayTimes

Nguồn báo từ nước Mỹ:

- The New York Times
- The Wall Street Journal
- The Washington Post
- Los Angeles Times
- USA Today
- New York Daily News
- New York Post
- Chicago Sun-Times
- Houston Chronicle

Nguồn báo từ Canada

- National Post
- The Vancouver Sun
- Ottawa Citizen
- Times Colonist
- The Chronicle Herald
- Calgary Herald
- Winniepeg Free Press

Nguồn báo từ nước Úc:

- The Australian
- News.com.au
- The Sydney Morning Herald

- The West Australian

Nguồn báo từ New Zealand:

- New Zealand Herald
- Stuff
- Local
- Matters
Migrant News
- The National Business Review

Báo cho người học tiếng Anh:

- The Learning Edge
- Adult Learning Activities
- Words in the News
- breakingnewsenglish.com
- PBS Newshour EXTRA
- VOA News
- simpleenglishnews.com

BÀI 3: TRẠNG TỪ

A – LÝ THUYẾT

I. CÁC LOẠI TRẠNG TỪ

Trạng từ chỉ cách thức

Ex: bravely, fast, happily, hard, quickly, well

❖ Vị trí của trạng từ chỉ cách thức:

1. Đứng sau động từ: *S + V + adv*

Ex: He runs fast.

She danced beautifully.

2. Đứng sau tân ngữ: *S + V + O + adv*

Ex: She learns English well.

She picked up all the bits of the broken glass carefully

Lưu ý:

- Không được đặt một trạng từ ở giữa động từ và tân ngữ.

Ex: She speaks well English.

- Trạng từ chỉ cách thức có thể đứng trước động từ: *S + adv + V*

Ex: She carefully picked up all the bits of the broken glass.

He angrily denied that he had stolen the documents.

- Nếu thay đổi vị trí của trạng từ thì nghĩa của câu có thể thay đổi.

Ex1: They secretly decided to leave the town.

They decided to leave the town secretly.

Ex2: You know well that I can't drive.

You know that I can't drive well.

3. Trạng từ bổ nghĩa cho tính từ: *S + tobe + adv + adj/PII*

Ex: He was badly injured.

The product is environmentally friendly.

Lưu ý: Chúng ta có thể coi *adv + adj/PII* = cụm tính từ ghép và đặt trước một N

Ex: The badly-injured man was sent to hospital.

The environmentally-friendly product is costly.

4. Trong câu bị động: *be + adv + PII = be + PII + adv*

Ex: The application form must be filled out completely.

= The application form must be completely filled out.

Lưu ý: Badly và well có nhiều nghĩa:

- Ex1: He was badly injured.
He badly needs a raincoat.
- Ex2: He knows the town well.
Shake the bottle well.

Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn

Các trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn: away, everywhere, here, nowhere, anywhere, somewhere, there.....

- Ex: She went away.
He lives abroad.
Bill is upstairs.

Ta có thể dùng giới từ + danh từ để tạo thành cụm trạng từ.

- Ex: He is in the room.

- Somewhere/Anywhere

- Somewhere: (nơi nào đó) dùng trong câu khẳng định

- Anywhere: (bất kỳ chỗ nào) thường dùng trong câu phủ định và câu nghi vấn

- Ex: I've seen that man somewhere.
Can you see my key anywhere? No, I can't see it anywhere.

- Nowhere = not anywhere

- Ex: I can't see your wallet anywhere.
= I can see your wallet nowhere

* Đảo ngữ với nowhere:

- Ex: Nowhere can see your wallet.
Nowhere will you find better roses than these.

- Hiện tượng đảo ngữ: Adv of place

S + V + adv of place = Adv of place + V + S

- Ex: Here comes the train.
Down fell a dozen apples.
Away went the runners.

Trạng từ chỉ thời gian

- Các trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian: now, afterwards, eventually, lately, recently, soon, then, today, tomorrow, since, then, till, at once, at the moment, in the end, at present, at last.....
- Những trạng từ này thường đặt ở đầu hoặc ở cuối câu.

Ex: Finally he arrived home.

Then we went home/We went home then.

- Lưu ý: Yet

- Yet (chưa): thường dùng trong thì hiện tại hoàn thành

Ex: I haven't finished my homework yet.

He hasn't yet applied for the job we told him about.

- Yet có thể làm trạng từ chỉ đối lập:

Ex: She tried her best. Yet, she failed.

Trạng từ chỉ tần suất

- Các trạng từ chỉ tần suất:

- always, continually, frequently, usually, often, occasionally, periodically, repeatedly, sometimes,...

- hardly/rarely/scarcely/seldom/barely/never: thường mang nghĩa phủ định

Ex: He is rarely late, is he?

Vị trí của trạng từ chỉ tần suất:

- Sau to be:

Ex: He is rarely late.

He is always in time for meals.

- Trước động từ thường:

Ex: They sometimes stay up all night.

I hardly (ever) go out at night.

He never comes late, does he?

Lưu ý:

- Hardly/scarcely ever/never/rarely và seldom mang nghĩa phủ định nên không được dùng với các động từ phủ định.

Ex: He didn't never see her again.

- Hardly hay được dùng với any/ever/at all hoặc can.

Hardly ever = almost never

Hardly any = very little, almost none

Ex: He has hardly any money.

It hardly rained at all last summer.

- Với các thì hoàn thành: S + have + adv of frequency + PII

Ex: I have never seen such a beautiful girl.

Have you ever met Obama?

- Đảo ngữ:

Các trạng từ: hardly ever, never, rarely, scarcely, little ... đứng đầu câu phải đảo ngược động từ chính.

Ex: Hardly does she know how much I love her.

- Thứ tự của các trạng từ và các cụm trạng từ chỉ cách thức, nơi chốn và thời gian khi chúng ở cùng một câu:

(1) Trạng từ chỉ cách thức + (2) Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn + (3) Trạng từ chỉ thời gian

Ex: Every day he queued patiently at the bus stop.

hoặc:

(1) Trạng từ chỉ thời gian + (2) Trạng từ chỉ cách thức + (3) Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn

Ex: He queued patiently at the bus stop everyday.

Trạng từ chỉ mức độ

- Các trạng từ chỉ mức độ: very = extremely, quite, rather, a little/a bit, too, so, really, fairly, pretty, absolutely, completely, entirely, almost, just, enough.....
- Trạng từ chỉ mức độ bổ nghĩa cho một tính từ hay một trạng từ khác và được đặt trước trạng từ hay tính từ đó.
- Bổ nghĩa cho tính từ.

Ex: You are absolutely right.

He is very kind.

The exercise is pretty hard.

I felt almost exhausted.

Lưu ý:

- He is very/extremely/so kind.

Các trạng từ chỉ mức độ: very/extremely/so mang nghĩa tích cực

- He is too kind

'too' thường mang nghĩa tiêu cực.

- Bổ nghĩa cho trạng từ

Ex: He learns very well.

She sings quite beautifully.

He speaks English very fluently.

Lưu ý: Enough có thể được dùng như một trạng từ chỉ mức độ và đi theo sau tính từ hay trạng từ mà nó bổ nghĩa.

Ex: He didn't work quickly enough.
He is not tall enough to reach the ceiling.
Not enough to V = too... to V

Trạng từ bổ nghĩa cho câu

Công thức: Adv, clause

- Các trạng từ diễn tả mức độ của sự chắc chắn.
actually (really/in fact), apparently = obviously, certainly, clearly, undoubtedly, definitely, perhaps, surely,
Ex: Apparently, men are stronger than women.
Undoubtedly, John broke the glass.
- Các trạng từ chỉ ý kiến khác: Admittedly, frankly, honestly, officially, luckily = fortunately
Ex: Honestly, Tom didn't get the money.
Luckily, I passed the exam.

II. CÁCH THÀNH LẬP TRẠNG TỪ

Adj + ly = Adv

Ex: quick → quickly
slow → slowly
beautiful → beautifully
final → finally
immediate → immediately

Lưu ý:

- các tính từ tận cùng bằng able/ible thì bỏ e ở cuối và thêm y:
Ex: capable → capably
probable → probably
possible → possibly
- âm cuối y đổi thành i:
Ex: happy → happily
easy → easily
lucky → luckily

Những trường hợp ngoại lệ:

- Friendly (adj): là tính từ và không có hình thức trạng từ. Để có trạng từ tương tự, ta có thể dùng cụm trạng từ in a friendly way.

Ex: He is friendly.

He greeted me in a friendly way.

- Hard vừa là tính từ vừa là trạng từ:

Ex: The exercise is pretty hard. (hard = difficult).

She works hard. (hard: adv) = She is a hard-working worker. (hard: adj)

- Late: vừa là tính từ vừa là trạng từ:

Ex: He was late. (adj)

He came late. (adv)

Tuy nhiên lately = recently + hiện tại hoàn thành

- Một số từ khác vừa là adj, vừa là adv: early, well, fast, high

Ex: - I'm very well today. (adj)

She learns very well. (adv)

- This table is high. (adj)

The plane flies high.

- early train (adj)/get up early (adv)

- highly cũng là trạng từ nhưng nghĩa khác với high (adv).

Ex: The plane flies high.

He is highly paid. = He is a highly-paid employee

Example 1. Find the adjective in the first sentence and fill the gap with the adverb.

1. Joanne is happy. She smiles*happily*.....

2. The boy is loud. He shouts*loudly*.....

III. BÀI TẬP TRẠNG TỪ

Choose the best answer

Question 1: I wouldn't have missed my flight if the bus had arrived _____.

- A. lately B. late C. more early D. early

Question 2: Although this tea tastes not bad, I don't like it _____.

- A. so B. many C. a lot D. much

Question 3: I think your presentation is _____ good.

- A. nice B. pretty C. quiet D. beautiful

Question 4: He ran so _____ that no one could catch up him.

- A. fast B. fastly C. fastly D. slowly

Question 5: We recommend that you _____ purchase your home.

- A. quickly B. quick C. quicken D. quickness

Question 6: Our production team _____ inspects the quality of our products.

- A. through B. thoroughness C. thoroughly D. thorough

Question 7: The population of this city has decreased _____ for the last few months.

- A. slight B. slightly C. slightness D. slighted

Question 8: The hotel is _____ located within easy walking distance of the beach.

- A. perfect B. perfectly C. perfectly D. perfecting

Question 9: Small-business owners _____ use local newspaper advertisements.

- A. frequent B. frequency C. frequentness D. frequently

Question 10: Most interviewers _____ examine applicants' educational backgrounds.

- A. closely B. closer C. close D. closest

Question 11: Replacing the old building with a new one was a _____ impossible task.

- A. near B. nearby C. nearly D. nearing

Question 12: The insurance company does not seem to be _____ sound.

- A. finance B. finances C. financial D. financially

Question 13: Dress _____ when you go to the interview.

- A. nice B. nicely C. tidy D. good

Question 14: She is lying _____ in the new bed.

- A. comfortably B. comfortably
C. comfortable D. in a comfortable way

Question 15: You have to pay the phone bill _____.

- A. monthly B. monthlily C. month D. in a monthly way

Question 16: The cost of petroleum is increasing _____.

- A. dramatically B. dramatic C. dramaticly D. dramatical

Question 17: Sue works _____. She never seems to stop.

- A. continuously B. continuous C. continue D. continual

Question 18: My brother often goes to bed _____.

- A. earlily B. early C. earlier D. in a early way

Question 19: _____, most adults can identify only about five out of a set of 21 colours that are only _____ different.

- A. Similarly/slightly B. . Similar/slightless C. Similar/slight D. Similarly/slighting

Question 20: The _____ decorated purse that David knitted is _____ fraying around the edges.

- A. carefully/quickly B. carefully/quick C. careful/quickly D. careful/quick

Choose the underlined word or phrase (A, B, C, or D) that needs correcting.

Question 1: It is said that five people were serious injured in the accident.

- A. is B. were C. serious D. the

Question 2: Great circle routes, the shortest courses between two points on the surface of a sphere, are routine used by international air traffic to save time.

- A. Great circle B. shortest C. routine D. international

Question 3: Lan is a hard worker. She works very hardly.

- A. is B. hard C. very D. hardly.

Question 4: The plane flew highly in the air, then landed suddenly.

- A. flew B. highly C. landed D. suddenly.

Question 5: Broad speaking, curriculum includes all experiences which the students may have within the environment of the school.

- A. Broad speaking B. includes C. which D. within

Question 6: Beginning in the late 19th century, the yearly rise in the productivity of England was just slight less than Germany and the U.S.

- A. late B. yearly C. slight D. the

Question 7: My mother is a friendly woman. She always smiles friendlily with our neighbors.

- A. is B. friendly C. smiles D. friendlily

Question 8: Because Coyote hunts bad, he dicides to team up with Eagle, who is an excellent hunter.

- A. Because B. bad C. excellent D. hunter.

Question 9: William danced very good in the contest, but Michael danced even better.

- A. very B. good C. even D. better.

Question 10: The applicants for low-interest loans hoped to buy decent built houses for their families.

- A. applicants B. low-interest C. decent D. their

Name type of the adverbs in bold. Type the letter:

M - manner, T - time, P - place, F - frequency, D – degree

1. It doesn't often ☐ rain in Vietnam ☐ in winter.

2. She had an accident on High Street ☐ yesterday.
3. I sometimes go to the South ☐ to visit one of my friends ☐ on summer vacation. ☐
4. Harry greeted us in a friendly way. ☐
5. I will wait for you at the gate of the cinema ☐ at 7:00 p.m ☐ tonight. ☐
6. Jane is absolutely ☐ hopeless at Math.
7. You shouldn't get up late ☐ because you will be late for work.
8. My father stayed until 2:00 a.m ☐ to prepare for the meeting this morning. ☐

Fill in the blank with the correct form of the word provided.

1. Jack is _____ upset about losing his keys. (terrible)
2. Our basketball team played _____ last Friday. (bad)
3. Maria _____ opened her present. (slow)
4. He is a _____ driver. He drives the car _____. (careful)
5. They learn English _____. They think English is an _____ language. (easy)
6. Max is a _____ singer. He sings _____. (good)
7. He _____ built a house out of straw. (quick)
8. Although the student worked very _____, he failed the exam. (hard)
9. During the cold winter months, the three little pigs lived _____ (extreme) _____ (good) in their houses.
10. Kevin is _____ clever. (pretty)

ĐÁP ÁN

Choose the best answer

1-C	2-D	3-B	4-A	5-A	6-C	7-B	8-B	9-D	10-A
11-C	12-D	13-B	14-B	15-A	16-A	17-A	18-B	19-A	20-A

Choose the underlined word or phrase (A, B, C, or D) that needs correcting.

1. C → seriously	2. C → routinely	3. D → hard	4. B → high
5. A → Broadly speaking	6. C → slightly	7. D → in a friendly way	8. B → badly
9. A → well	10. C → decently		

Name type of the adverbs in bold. Type the letter:

1. Often – F in Vietnam- P in winter – T
2. on High Strett – P yester day – T
3. sometimes – F go to the South – P on summer vacation – T
4. in a friendly way – M
4. at the gate of the cinema – P at 7:00 p.m – T tonight – T
6. absolutely – D
7. late – M
8. until 2:00 a.m – T this morning – T

Fill in the blank with the correct form of the word provided.

1. terribly	2. badly	3. slowly	4. careful-careful	5. easily-easy
6. goood - well	7. quickly	8. hard	9. extremely well	10. pretty

B. LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1

Question 1: I have just read an_____ book.

- A.** amazing **B.** Amazingly

Question 2: These are _____ students.

- A.** excellent **B.** excellently

Question 3: It was raining _____.

- A.** light **B.** lightly

Question 4: The wild bears seem_____ .

- A.** fierce **B.** Fiercely

Question 5: He studies very _____.

- A.** hard **B.** Hardly

Question 6: I searched the drawer_____ .

- A.** careful **B.** carefully

Question 7: They did the exam pretty_____ .

- A.** bad **B.** badly

Question 8: I was _____ injured after the accident.

- A.** serious **B.** Seriously

Question 9: It's really _____ weather out there .

- A.** awful **B.** awfully

Question 10: My mom looked so _____ when she cooke

- A. happy B. happily

Question 11: I can do this exercise.....

- A. easy B. easily

Question 12: Hermione sounds very..... in her new job.

- A. confident B. Confidently

Question 13: They look at the students.

- A. angry B. angrily

Question 14: I agree with you..... about that matter.

- A. complete B. Completely

Question 15: This apple is very.....

- A. lovely B. Sweetly

Question 16: They both study English very.....

- A. good B. well

Question 17: Helen is such a girl.

- A. beautiful B. beautifully

Question 18: Her sister plays the piano.....

- A. beautiful B. beautifully

Question 19: He completes his work.....

- A. perfect B. perfectly

Question 20: Tom is apupil.

- A. lazy B. lazily

Question 21: He's really lazy and _____ tries.

- A. hard B. Hardly

Question 22: I've been having a lot of headaches _____.

- A. late B. Lately

Question 23: Check your work _____.

- A. careful B. carefully

Question 24: The TV's far too _____.

- A. loud B. loudly

Question 25: Maria opened her present.

- A. Slow B. Slowly

Question 26: Don't speak so I can't understand you.

A. Fast **B. Fastly**

Question 27: Jack is upset about losing his keys.

A. Terribly **B. Terrible**

Question 28: Robin looks What's the matter with him?

A. Sadly **B. Sad**

Question 29: Kevin is clever.

A. Extremely **B. Extreme**

Question 30: The book was very..... written .

A. good **B. Well**

Put the adverbs in brackets into correct positions. Choose the sentence with the correct order.

Question 31: I take sugar in my coffee. (sometimes)

A. Sometimes take **B. Take sometimes**

Question 32: Tom is very friendly. (usually)

A. Is usually **B. Usually is** **C. Very friendly usually**

Question 33: Peter gets angry. (never)

A. Never gets **B. Gets never** **C. Angry never**

Question 34: They read a book. (always)

A. Read always **B. Always read**

Question 35: He listens to the radio. (often)

A. Often listens **B. Listens often**

ĐÁP ÁN

1-A	2-A	3-B	4-A	5-A	6-B	7-B	8-B	9-A	10-A
11-B	12-A	13-A	14-B	15-A	16-B	17-A	18-B	19-B	20-A
21-B	22-B	23-B	24-A	25-B	26-A	27-A	28-B	29-A	30-B
31-A	32-A	33-A	34-B	35-A					

LUYỆN TẬP

Question 1: Tom is He works... .

A. Slow, slowly **B. Slowly, slow**

Question 2: Sue is a ... girl. She climbed up the ladder

A. Careful, carefully **B. Carefully, careful**

Question 3: The dog is It barks... .

A. Angry, angrily

B. Angry, angrily

Question 4: He acted He's an ... actor.

A. Excellent, excellently

B. Excellently, excellent

Question 5: They learn English They think English is an ... language.

A. Easy, easily

B. Easily, easy

Question 6: Max is a ... singer. He sings... .

A. Good, well

B. Well, good

Question 7: It's ... cold today. The cold wind is... .

A. Awful, awful

B. Awfully, awful

Question 8: Dogs rely on their noses as they can smell extremely_____ If that is true, why does dog food smell not so ?

A. Good, good

B. Well, good

Question 9: The little boy looked I went over to comfort him and he looked at me... .

A. Sad, sad

B. Sad, sadly

Question 10: I tasted the soup ... but it tasted

A. Careful, wonderfully

B. Carefully, wonderful

adjectives or adverbs?

Question 11: He ... reads a book.

A. Quick

B. quickly

Question 12: Mandy is a ... girl.

A. Pretty

B. Prettilly

Question 13: The class is ... loud today.

A. Terrible

B. Terribly

Question 14: Max is a ... singer.

A. Good

B. Well

Question 15: You can ... open this tin.

A. Easy

B. Easily

Question 16: It's a ... day today.

A. Awful

B. awfully

Question 17: She sings the song

A. Inspiring

B. Inspiringly

Question 18: He is a ... driver.

A. Careful

B. Carefully

Question 19: He drives the car

A. Careful

B. Carefully

Question 20: The dog barks

A. Loud

B. loudly

Put the adverbs in brackets into correct position. Choose the sentence with the correct order.

Question 21: He has read that book . (already).

A. Already has read

B. Has already read

Question 22: This book is interesting (extremely).

A. Extremely is interesting

B. Is extremely interesting

Question 23: I haven't been there (before).

A. Haven't before been there

B. Haven't been there before

Question 24: He has a bad pain in his chest (today, very).

A. Has a very bad pain in his chest today

B. Has a very bad pain in his chest today

Question 25: He arrives (on time, never, at the meeting).

A. Never arrives at the meeting on time.

B. Never arrives on time at the meeting

Question 26: I saw Dan (at the lecture, last night).

A. Last night at the lecture

B. At the lecture last night

Question 27: I will be there (certainly, by 2 o'clock).

A. Will certainly be there by 2 o'clock

B. By 2 o'clock will be there certainly

Question 28: He left the office (this afternoon, early).

A. This afternoon early

B. Early this afternoon

Question 29: She will return the book (next week, to, the library).

A. Return the book next week to the library

B. Return the book to the library next week

Question 30: She went (at 6 o'clock, to school).

A. Went to school at 6 o'clock

B. Went at 6 o'clock to school

Question 31: He was born (in 1392, at 10 am, on June 14th).

A. Born at 10 am, on June 14th, in 1932

B. Born in 1932, on June 14th, at 10 am.

Question 32: They stayed (all day, quietly, there).

A. there quietly all day

B. quietly there all day

ĐÁP ÁN

1-A	2-A	3-B	4-B	5-B	6-A	7-B	8-B	9-B	10-B
11-B	12-A	13-B	14-A	15-B	16-A	17-B	18-A	19-B	20-B

21-B	22-B	23-B	24-A	25-A	26-B	27-A	28-B	29-B	30-A
31-A	32-A								

LUYỆN TẬP 3:

Question 1: They dance the Tango.....

A. beautiful

B. beautifully

Question 2: She planned their trip to Greece very.....

A. careful

B. carefully

Question 3: Jim painted the kitchen very.....

A. bad

B. badly

Question 4: She speaks very

A. soft

B. softly

Question 5: Turn the stereo down. It'slou

A. deafening

B. deafeningly

Question 6: He skipped_____ down the road to school.

A. Happy

B. Happily

Question 7: He speaks too

A. fast

B. fastly

Question 8: She knows the road

A. good

B. well

Question 9: He plays the guitar.....

A. Charming

B. Charmingly

Question 10: We're going camping tomorrow so we mustn't get up

A. late

B. lately

Question 11: Andy doesn't often work

A. hard

B. hardly

Question 12: As the play unfolds, the audience is _____brought into the grip of an awful evil.

A. subtle

B. subtly

Question 13: In a bold, sometimes_____ form there is nothing academi

A. careless

B. carelessly

Question 14: The _____updated detective tale succeeded despite a serious flirt with cliches.

A. clever

B. cleverly

Question 15: Last week we buried my closest friend, and it was a _____moving service.

A. Deep

B. Deeply

Question 16: In times gone by, the paddle steamers docked to pick up their loads of _____ baled cotton.

A. fresh

B. freshly

Question 17: All goes....., and after some time he feels relaxed enough to go for a walk.

A. Good

B. Well

Question 18: Your trigger..... friend isn't in the house.

A. happy

B. happily

Question 19: The gulf between the 'rich' and the 'poor' has narrowed, to the point that the word 'poor' is _____ applicable.

A. Hard

B. Hardly

Question 20: _____, the changes the adapter has made seem designed to make the story even more frightening.

A. Interesting

B. Interestingly

Question 21: He joined dozens of others that sailed _____ toward the surface.

A. lazy

B. lazily

Question 22: He swore so _____ at the top of his voice, that she didn't get any sleep all the next night.

A. loud

B. loudly

Question 23: Frankly, it is very _____ done.

A. good

B. good

Question 24: Such _____ balances of economic integration are hard to sustain for more than a single generation.

A. nice

B. nicely

Question 25: There are already rumours that publishers are feeling

A. nervous

B. nervously

Question 26: Children should be cared for by a _____ and healthy family.

A. normal

B. normally

Question 27: We hoped this war could be resolved both _____ and with as few civilian casualties as possible.

A. quick

B. quickly

Question 28: All we wanted to do was to stand very _____ and look and look and look.

A. quiet

B. quietly

Question 29: He wanted to pat her neck _____ because she was so wonderful to touch.

A. most

B. mostly

Question 30: It was _____ packaged and wrapped in pretty, recycled paper

A. nice

B. nicely

ĐÁP ÁN

1-B	2-B	3-B	4-B	5-B	6-B	7-A	8-B	9-B	10-A
11-A	12-B	13-A	14-B	15-B	16-B	17-B	18-A	19-B	20-B
21-B	22-B	23-B	24-A	25-A	26-A	27-B	28-B	29-B	30-B

LUYỆN TẬP 4

Question 1: Jack spoke to the audience urging them to elect him president of the union. He knew he had a chance of winning the election.

A. Confidently/ good B. confident/ well C. confidently/ well

Question 2: Melanie ate her lunch. She knew the meeting was and she didn't want to be late.

A. Quick/ important B. quickly/ importantly C. quickly/ important

Question 3: Sophie lived in Thailand for several years. She speaks Thai, and she knows the culture very

A. fluently/ good B. fluently/ well C. fluent/ well

Question 4: The , humid weather made it difficult to enjoy the tropical beach. Miriam seemed more than relaxed.

A. hot/ uncomfortable B. hot/ uncomfortably C. hotly/ uncomfortably

Question 5: The entrance examination is challenging. Very few people make it into the medical school.

A. extreme/ prestigiously B. extremely/ prestigious C. exstreme/ prestigious

Question 6: This airline's lack of organization is astounding. I have been very up to this point, but I am going to lose my temper if you don't find my baggage immediately.

A. completely/ patient B. complete/ patient C. completely/ patiently

Question 7: The young girl sings well for someone her age. Her performance was to say the least.

A. amazingly/ spectacular B. amazing/ spectacular C. amazing/ spectacularly

Question 8: The skies became surprisingly as the moon moved between the Earth and the Sun. As the eclipse progressed, the people in the streets stood waiting for the sun's warmth to return.

A. darkly/ silently B. dark/ silent C. dark/ silently

Question 9: Although Beth speaks and seems quite , she is the leading expert in her field. Don't underestimate her abilities.

A. softly/ timid B. soft/ timid C. softly/ timidly

Question 10: After the medieval cathedral was burnt down last year, the city rebuilt it stone for stone. It looks exactly the same as it did before the fire.

A. tragical/ quick B. tragically/ quickly C. tragical/ quickly

Question 11: We noticed changes in Diane's personality; she became and withdrawn from her friends and family. We finally realized that we had to do something about her drinking problem before it was too late.

A. gradually/ quiet B. gradually/ quiet C. gradual/ quiet

Question 12: Nicole grew from the hours of overtime at work. It became quite that she needed a long vacation.

A. tired/ obvious B. tiredly/ obviously C. tiredly/ obvious

Question 13: The tomato plants grew in the rich soil. Mrs. Ficara intended to use the homegrown tomatoes to make her tempting lasagna.

A. quick/ delicious B. quickly/ deliciously C. quickly/ deliciously

Question 14: Mr. Tanzer donated \$1,000,000 to the law school's scholarship fund. With this money, they will be able to help low-income students cope with the cost of education.

A. generous/ increase B. generous/ increasely C. generously/ increasing

Question 15: Tim is known for his sense of humor. Last Saturday, when he told the joke about the fireman and the school teacher, everybody there started laughing

A. well/ uncontrollable B. good/ uncontrollable C. well/ uncontrollably

Choose the best answer:

Question 16: I _____ want to know what happened.

A. exactly B. purely C. simply D. highly

Question 17: Don't worry. It's _____ safe. You won't fall.

A. finely B. deeply C. fully D. completely

Question 18: The future will be _____ shaped by technology.

A. merely B. specially C. largely D. purely

Question 19: Everything will be _____ cheaper in the sales.

A. widely B. greatly C. considerably D. particularly

Question 6: She invented a new kind of wheelchair for_____.

A. the disabled

B. the disabled people

Question 7: I'm very _____ about what to do.

A. Confused

B. confusing

Question 8: They performed the experiment_____.

A. Scientifically

B. scientificly

Question 9: Don't get me _____

A. Wrongly

B. wrong

Question 10: _____, everybody dies.

A. Natural

B. Naturally

Question 11: This _____ means I don't want to do your dirty jobs.

A. Basically

B. Basic

Question 12: My mind went_____.

A. Blackly

B. Black

Question 13: Rain kept pouring down. It was raining_____

A. Fiercely

B. Fierce

Question 14: My Halloween custom looks so_____

A. Hideous

B. Hideously

Question 15: As he read, I fell in love the way you fall asleep:_____, and then all at once.

A. Slowly

B. Slow

Question 16: The marks humans leave are too _____ scars.

A. Often

B. Oftenly

Question 17: Love is keeping the promise _____

A. Anyway

B. Any way

Question 18: The book portrays death_____

A. Truthful

B. Truthfully

Question 19: You are so busy being you that you have no idea how _____unprecedented you are.

A. Utterly

B. Utter

Question 20: "Headline?"he aske"Swing Set Needs Home," I sai"_____Lonely Swing Set Needs Loving Home."

A. Desperately

B. Desperate

Question 21: Look, let me just say it: He was hot. A nonhot boy stares at you _____ and it is, at best, awkward and, at worst, a form of assault. But a hot boy . . . well.

A. relentlessly

B. relentless

Question 22: Janet: Is this the _____ car you've just bought?

Nigel: That's right. Well, it's second-hand of course.

A. New

B. newly

Question 23: Janet: It's _____ buying a car, isn't it?

A. Excited

B. exciting

Question 24: Nigel: We'll, it was a bit of a problem actually because I didn't have much money to spen But I managed to find one that wasn't very

A. Expensive

B. Expensive

Question 25: Janet: It looks very I must say.

A. Nice

B. nicely

Question 26: Nigel: Its ten years old, so I was what good condition it's in.

A. Surprisingly

B. Surprised

Question 27: The man I bought it from is over eighty, and he always drove it very he sai

A. Careful

B. Carefully

Question 28: He never took it out if it was raining, which I find

A. Amusing

B. Amusingly

Question 29: Nigel: He was a old chap.

A. Befriended

B. friendly

Question 30: He even gave me all these maps

A. Free

B. Freely

GÓC GIẢI TRÍ

Đây là Steve Jobs, người được ví như ông tổ phát minh Edison của thời đại tin học đã qua đời vào 5/10/2011, thọ 56 tuổi.

Bỏ học giữa chừng từ năm thứ nhất Đại học, cùng một người bạn lập công ty Apple trong gara của cha mẹ; là người thiết kế và chế tạo chiếc máy tính cá nhân đầu tiên Macintosh; rồi bị mất việc, lại lập ra 2 công ty khác trong đó có xưởng phim hoạt hình máy tính đầu tiên và cũng là xưởng phim hoạt hình thành công nhất trên thế giới Pixar; rồi trở lại làm Chủ tịch và Giám đốc điều hành (CEO) của Apple - đưa công ty này trở thành công ty

lớn nhất trên thế giới với trị giá hiện nay cỡ khoảng 351 tỷ đô la (4 lần GDP của Việt Nam). Với lòng quý mến và ngưỡng mộ ông, xin giới thiệu bài phát biểu này để các em đọc biết thêm về cuộc đời của ông qua chính lời tự sự của ông qua bài phát biểu dự lễ tốt nghiệp của Đại học Stanford năm 2005.

(Applause...) Thank you. I'm honored to be with you today for your commencement from one of the finest universities in the world.

Truth be told, I never graduated from college, and this is the closest I've ever gotten to a college graduation. Today, I want to tell you three stories from my life. That's it. No big deal. Just three stories.

The first story is about **connecting the dots**. I dropped out of Reed College after the first six months, but then stayed around as a drop-in for another 18 months or so before I really quit. So why'd I drop out?

It started before I was born. My biological mother was a young, unwed graduate student, and she decided to put me up for adoption. She felt very strongly that I should be adopted by college graduates, so everything was all set for me to be adopted at birth by a lawyer and his wife. **Except that** when I popped out, they **decided** at the last minute that they really wanted a girl. So my parents, who were on a waiting list, got a call in the middle of the night asking: **"We've got an unexpected baby boy. Do you want**

Cảm ơn các bạn. Tôi lấy làm hân hạnh được có mặt với các bạn hôm nay trong ngày phát bằng tốt nghiệp của các bạn, tại một trong những trường Đại học tuyệt vời nhất trên thế giới.

Phải nói thật là tôi chưa bao giờ tốt nghiệp đại học, và đây là dịp gần giống lễ tốt nghiệp đại học nhất mà tôi có được.

Hôm nay tôi muốn kể với các bạn ba câu chuyện từ cuộc đời của tôi. Vâng, chỉ có vậy thôi. Chẳng có gì to tát cả. Chỉ ba câu chuyện.

Câu chuyện đầu tiên là về việc nối các điểm [lại với nhau].

Tôi bỏ học giữa chừng ở trường Reed College sau 6 tháng đầu, nhưng vẫn lưu lại dự một số lớp dự thính thêm khoảng 18 tháng nữa trước khi tôi thực sự bỏ học. Vậy thì tại sao tôi lại bỏ học giữa chừng? Có sự đã bắt đầu từ trước khi tôi sinh ra. Bà mẹ đẻ (nguyên văn: mẹ sinh học - biological mother) của tôi là một sinh viên cao học trẻ chưa cưới hỏi, và bà đã quyết định cho tôi làm con nuôi. Bà cảm nhận một cách mạnh mẽ rằng tôi cần phải được nhận nuôi bởi những người tốt nghiệp đại học, và vì vậy tất cả mọi thứ đã được sắp đặt cho tôi được một luật sư và vợ của ông ta nhận làm con nuôi ngay khi sinh ra, ngoại trừ một điều là tới phút cuối cùng khi tôi vừa lọt lòng, họ đã quyết rằng họ thực sự muốn một đứa con gái. Và thế là, cha mẹ tôi,

him?" They said: "Of course". My biological mother found out later that my mother had never graduated from college and that my father had never graduated from high school. She refused to sign the final adoption papers. She only **relented** a few months later when my parents promised that I would someday go to college.

And 17 years later I did go to college. But I naively chose a college that was almost as expensive as Stanford, and all of my working-class parents' savings were being spent on my college tuition. After six months, I couldn't see the value in it. I had no idea what I wanted to do with my life and no idea how college was going to help me figure it out. And here I was spending all of the money my parents had saved their entire life. So I decided to drop out and **trust that** it would all work out OK. It was pretty scary at the time, but looking back, it was one of the best decisions I ever made.

The minute I dropped out, I could stop taking the required classes that didn't interest me and begin dropping in on the ones that looked far more interesting.

It wasn't all romantic. I didn't have a **dorm room**, so I slept on the floor in friends' rooms. I returned Coke bottles for the five-cent deposits to buy food with, and I would walk the seven miles across town

những người trong danh sách chờ [nhận con nuôi], nhận được một cú điện thoại vào lúc nửa đêm hỏi Chúng tôi không ngờ lại có một bé trai, ông bà có muốn đưa con trai này không? Họ trả lời "Tất nhiên rồi". Bà mẹ đẻ của tôi sau này phát hiện ra rằng mẹ tôi chưa bao giờ tốt nghiệp đại học và bố tôi chưa từng tốt nghiệp phổ thông. Bà không chịu ký các giấy tờ cuối cùng cho việc cho con nuôi. Bà chỉ **chịu nhường** một vài tháng sau đó, khi cha mẹ tôi hứa sau này sẽ cho tôi vào đại học.

Và 17 năm sau đó, tôi đã vào đại học thực, nhưng tôi đã ngây thơ chọn một trường mà tốn kém cũng bằng trường Stanford, và bao nhiêu tiền tiết kiệm của cha mẹ tôi, vốn là tầng lớp lao động, đã phải tiêu hết vì học phí cho tôi. Sau sáu tháng, tôi không thấy đáng phải mất tiền như vậy. Lúc đó tôi hoàn toàn không biết mình muốn gì cho cuộc đời, và cũng không biết đại học có thể giúp tôi tìm ra điều đó như thế nào, thế mà ở đây tôi đã tiêu hết tiền bạc cha mẹ tôi cả đời dành dụm. Thế là tôi quyết định bỏ học và tin rằng mọi chuyện cũng sẽ ổn thôi. Hồi đó chuyện cũng hơi liều, nhưng giờ nhìn lại, đó quả là một trong những quyết định tốt nhất của tôi.

Lúc bỏ trường, tôi khỏi phải dự giờ học bó buộc mà tôi không hứng thú, và bắt đầu đến dự những lớp mà tôi thấy thú vị hơn.

Hồi đó chẳng phải mọi chuyện đều màu hồng. Tôi không có phòng ký túc xá, và thế là tôi ngủ trên nền sàn phòng của bạn bè. Tôi đi đổi chai CocaCola 5 xu/lọ để mua thức ăn và tôi đi bộ cả

every Sunday night to get one good meal a week at the Hare Krishna temple. I loved it. And much of what I stumbled into by following my curiosity and intuition **turned out to be** priceless later on. Let me give you one example:

Reed College, at that time, offered perhaps the best calligraphy instruction in the country. Throughout the campus, every poster, every label on every drawer was beautifully hand-calligraphed. Because I had dropped out and didn't have to take the normal classes, I decided to **take a** calligraphy **class** to learn how to do this. I learned about serif and sans serif typefaces, about varying the amount of space between different letter combinations, about what makes great typography great.

It was beautiful, historical, artistically subtle in a way that science can't capture, and I found it fascinating.

None of this had even a hope of any practical application in my life. But 10 years later, when we were designing the first Macintosh computer, it all came back to me. And we designed it all into the Mac. It was the first computer with beautiful typography. If I had never dropped in on that single course in college, the Mac would have never had multiple typefaces or proportionally spaced fonts. And since Windows just copied the Mac,

chục cây số qua thành phố mỗi tối Chủ nhật để ăn một bữa tối cho ngon lành tại đền Hare Krishna. Tôi yêu quý ngôi đền đó. Và hầu hết tất cả những gì mà tôi vấp ngã do theo đuổi sự ham hiểu biết cũng như trực giác của mình, sau này hóa ra là vô giá. Để tôi đưa ra cho các bạn một ví dụ.

Vào lúc bấy giờ Reed College là trường có lẽ có một chương trình dạy thư pháp mỹ thuật tốt nhất trong cả nước. Trong khắp khu trường, tất cả các tấm áp phích quảng cáo, các biển trên các tất cả các bảng đều được viết tay tuyệt đẹp. Bởi vì tôi đã bỏ học và không phải đến dự các lớp thông thường, tôi quyết định theo một lớp về thuật viết chữ để học viết như thế nào. Tôi học về các kiểu mặt chữ serif và sans serif, về thay đổi khoảng cách giữa các tổ hợp chữ khác nhau, về cái gì làm cho kiểu chữ in đẹp.

Đó là vẻ đẹp, nét cổ kính, sự tinh tế mỹ thuật mà khoa học không thể nắm bắt được, và tôi thấy nó thực là quyến rũ.

Chẳng có gì trong đó thậm chí có hy vọng ứng dụng thực tế trong cuộc đời tôi. Nhưng 10 năm sau khi chúng tôi thiết kế chiếc máy tính Macintosh đầu tiên, tất cả những điều đó trở lại với tôi, và chúng tôi đã thiết kế tất cả những cái đó thành chiếc Mac. Đó là chiếc máy tính đầu tiên với thuật in máy tuyệt đẹp. Nếu tôi đã không dự lớp học đó ở trường, chiếc Mac có lẽ không bao giờ có nhiều kiểu chữ hoặc các phong (font) chữ được đặt các khoảng cách tỷ lệ thích hợp, và vì Windows chỉ đơn thuần bắt chước Mac, rất có thể các máy tính cá nhân

it's likely that no personal computer would have them. If I had never dropped out, I would have never dropped in on that calligraphy class, and personal computers might not have the wonderful typography that they do. Of course, it was impossible to connect the dots looking forward when I was in college, but it was very, very clear looking backwards 10 years later.

Again, you can't connect the dots looking forward. You can only connect them looking backwards. So you have to trust that the dots will somehow connect in your future. You have to trust in something, your gut, destiny, life, karma, whatever, because believing that the dots will connect down the road will give you the confidence to follow your heart even when it leads you off the well-worn path and that will make all the difference in my life. My second story is about love and loss.

I was lucky, I found what I loved to do early in life. Woz and I started Apple in my parents' garage when I was 20. We worked hard, and in 10 years Apple had grown from just the two of us in a garage into a \$2 billion company with over 4,000 employees.

We had just released our finest creation, the Macintosh, a year earlier, and I had just turned 30, and then I got fired. How can you get fired from a company you started? Well, as Apple grew, we hired

cũng sẽ không có các kiểu chữ như thế.

Nếu tôi đã không bỏ học giữa chừng, có lẽ tôi cũng không bao giờ dự lớp thư pháp đó và các máy tính cá nhân có lẽ sẽ không có kiểu in chữ tuyệt vời mà chúng có ngày hôm nay.

Dĩ nhiên lúc đang còn ở trong trường tôi không thể nào kết nối các điểm đó lại với nhau khi nhìn về tương lai phía trước, nhưng điều đó là rất, rất rõ khi nhìn lại 10 năm sau.

Một lần nữa, bạn không thể kết nối các điểm khi nhìn về tương lai. Bạn chỉ có thể kết nối các điểm khi nhìn ngược trở lại, vì thế các bạn phải tin rằng các điểm đó sẽ được nối kết như thế nào đó trong tương lai của các bạn. Bạn phải tin vào điều gì đó, vào bản năng, vào số mệnh, cuộc sống, nghiệp chương của bạn (nguyên văn: karma - Steaven Jobs là người theo Đạo Phật - ND), vào bất cứ cái gì. Điều này chưa bao giờ làm tôi thất vọng và chính nó đã tạo ra tất cả những sự khác biệt trong cuộc đời tôi.

Câu chuyện thứ hai của tôi là về tình yêu và mất mát.

Tôi là một người may mắn. Tôi đã sớm tìm thấy cái mà tôi yêu thích để làm trong cuộc đời. Woz và tôi đã khởi đầu [công ty] Apple trong cái gara xe của cha mẹ tôi khi tôi mới 20 tuổi. Chúng tôi làm việc vất vả và trong 10 năm, Apple đã phát triển từ chỗ chỉ có hai chúng tôi trong một cái gara thành một công ty trị giá 2 tỷ đô la với hơn 4000 nhân viên. Một năm trước, chúng tôi vừa mới tung ra một sản phẩm tuyệt vời nhất của chúng tôi, chiếc Macintosh, và tôi mới vừa tròn 30 tuổi. Và thế rồi tôi bị đuổi việc.

someone who I thought was very talented, to run the company with me. And for the first year or so, things went well. But then our visions of the future began to diverge and eventually we had a falling out. When we did, our board of directors sided with him. And so at 30, I was out - and very publicly out. What had been the focus of my entire adult life was gone, and it was devastating.

I really didn't know what to do for a few months. I felt that I had let the previous generation of entrepreneurs down, that I had dropped the baton as it was being passed to me. I met with David Packard and Bob Noyce and tried to apologize for screwing up so badly. I was a very public failure, and I even thought about running away from the valley. But something slowly began to dawn on me, I still loved what I did. The turn of events at Apple had not changed that one bit. I had been rejected, but I was still in love, and so I decided to start over.

I didn't see it then, but it turned out that getting fired from Apple was the best thing that could have ever happened to me. The heaviness of being successful was replaced by the lightness of being a beginner again, less sure about everything. It freed me to enter one of the most creative periods of my life.

During the next five years, I started a

Làm sao mà anh lại có thể bị mất việc từ công ty do anh sáng lập ra? Vậy đó, khi Apple phát triển, chúng tôi thuê một người mà tôi nghĩ là rất tài giỏi để điều hành công ty cùng với tôi, và trong khoảng một vài năm đầu mọi việc đều trôi chảy tốt đẹp. Nhưng sau đó định hướng về tương lai của chúng tôi bắt đầu trở nên phân rẽ, và cuối cùng chúng tôi trở nên bất hòa. Khi chúng tôi bất hòa, Ban giám đốc công ty ngả về phe của anh ta, và thế là vào lúc 30 tuổi, tôi bị loại ra. Một cách rất công khai. Cái đã là toàn bộ sự tập trung của cả cuộc đời của tôi khi đã trưởng thành đã mất, và điều đó thật là tàn tệ.

Tôi thực sự không biết phải làm gì trong vài tháng. Tôi cảm thấy rằng tôi đã khiến thế hệ doanh nhân trước phải thất vọng, và tôi đã để rơi cái gậy chỉ huy khi nó đã được truyền lại cho tôi. Tôi đã gặp David Packard và Bob Noyce và đã cố xin lỗi vì đã làm hỏng công việc một cách thật tệ hại. Tôi đã là một sự thất bại rất công khai, và thậm chí tôi đã nghĩ đến việc bỏ đi khỏi vùng Thung Lũng [Silicon] này. Nhưng một cái gì đó đã từ từ lóe lên trong trí óc tôi và tôi vẫn còn yêu thích cái mà tôi đã làm. Bước ngoặt của các sự kiện xảy ra tại Apple đã không làm thay đổi điều đó một chút nào. Tôi đã bị loại bỏ nhưng tôi vẫn đang còn yêu. Và thế là tôi quyết định làm lại từ đầu.

Lúc bấy giờ tôi chưa nhìn thấy điều đó, nhưng hóa ra bị mất việc ở Apple lại là một điều tốt nhất đã từng có thể xảy ra đối với tôi. Sự nặng nề của sự thành công được thay thế bằng sự nhẹ nhàng thanh thản được lại là người mới bắt đầu,

company named NeXT, another company named Pixar, and fell in love with an amazing woman who would become my wife. Pixar went on to create the world's first computer animated feature film, "Toy Story," and is now the most successful animation studio in the world. In a remarkable turn of events, Apple bought NeXT, and I returned to Apple, and the technology we developed at NeXT is at the heart of Apple's current renaissance. And Laurene and I have a wonderful family together.

I'm pretty sure none of this would have happened if I hadn't been fired from Apple. It was awful-tasting medicine, but I guess the patient needed it. Sometime life - sometimes life is going to hit you in the head with a brick, don't lose faith. I'm convinced that the only thing that kept me going was that I loved what I did. You've got to find what you love, and that is as true for your work as it is for your lovers. Your work is going to fill a large part of your life, and the only way to be truly satisfied is to do what you believe is great work, and the only way to do great work is to love what you do. If you haven't found it yet, keep looking and don't settle. As with all matters of the heart, you'll know when you find it. And like any great relationship, it just gets better and better as the years roll on, so keep looking - don't

kém chắc chắn về mọi thứ. Điều đó đã giải phóng cho tôi bước vào một trong những giai đoạn sáng tạo nhất của cuộc đời của tôi.

Trong vòng 5 năm tiếp theo tôi đã khởi đầu một công ty mới tên NEXT, một công ty khác nữa tên Pixar và đã yêu một người đàn bà tuyệt vời, là người đã trở thành vợ của tôi. Tiếp theo, Pixar đã tạo ra bộ phim hoạt hình máy tính đặc biệt đầu tiên, "Toy Story", và hiện nay là xưởng phim hoạt hình thành công nhất trên thế giới.

Trong các sự kiện có tính bước ngoặt, Apple mua lại NeXT, và thế là tôi quay trở lại Apple và công nghệ chúng tôi đã phát triển tại NeXT trở thành trung tâm của sự phục hưng hiện nay của Apple. Và Laurene và tôi có một gia đình tuyệt vời cùng với nhau.

Tôi tin chắc chắn rằng chẳng có điều gì trên đây đã có thể xảy ra nếu tôi không bị đuổi việc khỏi Apple. Đó là một liều thuốc có vị kinh khủng, nhưng tôi nghĩ người bệnh cần đến nó. Đôi khi cuộc đời sẽ giáng gạch vào đầu anh. Đừng đánh mất niềm tin. Tôi tin chắc rằng điều duy nhất giữ cho tôi tiếp tục là tôi yêu thích việc mà tôi làm. Bạn phải tìm được cái mà bạn yêu thích, và điều đó là thực sự đúng với công việc cũng như với những người mà bạn yêu thương. Công việc của bạn sẽ lấp một phần lớn của cuộc đời của bạn, và cách duy nhất để thực sự thỏa mãn là làm cái mà bạn tin là một công việc tuyệt vời, và cách duy nhất để làm công việc tuyệt vời là yêu cái mà bạn làm. Nếu bạn chưa tìm thấy điều đó, hãy tiếp tục tìm kiếm, và đừng dừng lại. Cũng như các vấn đề của con tim, bạn sẽ biết

settle.

My third story is about death.

When I was 17, I read a quote that went something like: "If you live each day as if it was your last, someday you'll most certainly be right". It made an impression on me. And since then, for the past 33 years, I have looked in the mirror every morning and asked myself, if today were the last day of my life, would I want to do what I am about to do today? And whenever the answer has been no for too many days in a row, I know I need to change something.

Remembering that I'll be dead soon is the most important tool I've ever encountered to help me make the big choices in life. Because almost everything, all external expectations, all pride, all fear of embarrassment or failure, these things just fall away in the face of death, leaving only what is truly important. Remembering that you are going to die is the best way I know to avoid the trap of thinking you have something to lose. You are already naked. There is no reason not to follow your heart.

About a year ago, I was diagnosed with cancer. I had a scan at 7:30 in the morning, and it clearly showed a tumor on my pancreas. I didn't even know what a pancreas was. The doctors told me this was almost certainly a type of cancer that

khi nào bạn sẽ tìm được nó. Và cũng như bất cứ một mối quan hệ tốt đẹp nào nó sẽ trở nên tốt hơn và tốt hơn khi năm tháng trôi qua. Vì thế hãy cố tìm kiếm. Đừng dừng lại.

Câu chuyện thứ ba của tôi là về cái chết.

Khi tôi 17 tuổi tôi đọc một câu trích dẫn đại ý nói rằng "Nếu bạn sống mỗi ngày như đó là ngày cuối cùng của bạn, một ngày nào đó chắc chắn bạn sẽ đúng". Nó tạo ra cho tôi một ấn tượng, và kể từ đó trong suốt 33 năm qua, tôi đã nhìn vào gương vào mỗi buổi sáng và tự hỏi "Nếu hôm nay là ngày cuối cùng của đời tôi, liệu tôi có muốn làm cái mà tôi đã định làm vào ngày hôm nay?" Và bất cứ khi nào câu trả lời là "không" cho quá nhiều ngày liên tục, tôi biết là tôi cần thay đổi điều gì đó. Việc nhớ rằng tôi sẽ bị chết là điều quan trọng nhất mà tôi phải đương đầu để giúp tôi thực hiện những lựa chọn lớn của cuộc đời. Bởi vì hầu như tất cả mọi thứ - tất cả sự mong đợi ở thế giới bên ngoài, tất cả niềm kiêu hãnh, tất cả sợ hãi hoặc xấu hổ hoặc thất bại - những điều đó sẽ biến mất khi đứng trước cái chết, chỉ để lại cái thực sự quan trọng mà thôi. Nhớ rằng anh sẽ chết là phương cách tốt nhất mà tôi biết được để tránh cái bẫy của sự suy nghĩ cho là anh có cái gì đó để mà mất mát. Bạn đã bị lột truồng [lúc chết] rồi. Chẳng có lý do nào mà không làm theo con tim của bạn.

Cách nay khoảng 1 năm, tôi được chẩn đoán phát hiện có ung thư. Tôi có một cuộc khám chụp soi máy vào lúc 7:30 buổi sáng và kết quả chụp cho thấy rõ ràng một khối u trong tụy của tôi. Tôi thậm chí chẳng biết tụy là cái gì. Các

is incurable, and that I should expect to live no longer than three to six months. My doctor advised me to go home and get my affairs in order, which is doctor's code for prepare to die. It means to try and tell your kids everything you thought you'd have the next 10 years to tell them in just a few months. It means to make sure everything is buttoned up so that it will be as easy as possible for your family. It means to say your goodbyes.

I lived with that diagnosis all day. Later that evening, I had a biopsy, where they stuck an endoscope down my throat, through my stomach and into my intestines; put a needle into my pancreas and got a few cells from the tumor. I was sedated, but my wife who was there told me that when they viewed the cells under a microscope the doctors started crying because it turned out to be a very rare form of pancreatic cancer that is curable with surgery. I had the surgery and, thankfully, I'm fine now.

This was the closest I've been to facing death, and I hope it's the closest I get for a few more decades. Having lived through it, I can now say this to you with a bit more certainty than when death was a useful but purely intellectual concept

No one wants to die. Even people who want to go to heaven, don't want to die to get there, and yet death is the destination

bác sỹ bảo tôi gần như chắc chắn đó là một dạng ung thư không chữa được, và rằng tôi nên chờ đợi sống thêm không quá từ 3 đến 6 tháng nữa. Bác sỹ của tôi khuyên tôi về nhà và thu xếp mọi chuyện cho ổn thỏa, là ngôn từ của bác sỹ cho “chuẩn bị để chết”. Nó có nghĩa là cố gắng nói cho các con của bạn mọi thứ bạn nghĩ bạn có thể có 10 năm tới để nói với chúng trong vòng chỉ vài tháng. Nó có nghĩa là thu xếp hoàn tất mọi chuyện sao cho việc đó sẽ xảy ra một cách dễ dàng nhất có thể được cho gia đình của bạn. Nó có nghĩa là nói những lời tạm biệt của bạn.

Tôi đã sống cả ngày với chẩn đoán như thế. Cuối chiều ngày hôm đó tôi có một cuộc xét nghiệm sinh thiết (biopsy) khi họ đút một cái ống soi qua họng của tôi, xuyên qua dạ dày vào trong ruột của tôi, đặt 1 cái kim vào trong tụy của tôi và lấy ra vài tế bào của khối u. Tôi đã bị gây mê nhưng vợ tôi đang ở đó nói cho tôi biết rằng khi họ xem các tế bào dưới kính hiển vi, vị bác sỹ bắt đầu khóc bởi vì hóa ra đó là một dạng rất hiếm của ung thư tuyến tụy có thể chữa trị được với một cuộc phẫu thuật. Tôi đã được phẫu thuật và thật là biết ơn, giờ đây tôi đã khỏe lại bình thường.

Đó là lần gần gũi nhất với cái chết mà tôi phải đối mặt, và tôi hy vọng nó là lần gần nhất mà tôi có được trong vài thập kỷ nữa. Đã từng sống trải qua như thế, giờ đây tôi có thể nói điều này với các bạn với một chút chắc chắn hơn là khi cái chết là một khái niệm hữu ích nhưng chỉ thuần túy là tưởng tượng.

we all share. No one has ever escaped it, and that is as it should be, because death is very likely the single best invention of Life. It's life's change agent. It clears out the old to make way for the new. Right now the new is you, but someday not too long from now, you will gradually become the old and be cleared away. Sorry to be so dramatic, but it is quite true.

Your time is limited, so don't waste it living someone else's life. Don't be trapped by dogma, which is living with the results of other people's thinking. Don't let the noise of others' opinions drown out your own inner voice. And most important, have the courage to follow your heart and intuition. They somehow already know what you truly want to become. Everything else is secondary.

When I was young, there was an amazing publication called *The Whole Earth Catalog*, which was one of the bibles of my generation. It was created by a fellow named Stewart Brand, not far from here in Menlo Park, and he brought it to life with his poetic touch. This was in the late '60's, before personal computers and desktop publishing, so it was all made with typewriters, scissors, and Polaroid cameras. It was sort of like Google in paperback form 35 years before Google came along. It was idealistic, overflowing with neat tools and great notions.

Không một ai muốn chết, ngay cả với những người muốn lên Thiên Đường cũng không muốn chết để tới được đó. Vậy nhưng, cái chết là một cái đích mà tất cả chúng ta đều cùng chia sẻ. Không một ai có thể thoát được cái chết. Và đó cũng là điều nên như thế, bởi vì cái chết rất giống như sự sáng chế tốt nhất của sự sống. Đó là tác nhân thay đổi của sự sống; nó quét sạch những cái cũ và dọn đường cho cái mới. Ngay lúc này đây, cái mới là các bạn. Nhưng một ngày nào đó, không quá xa từ bây giờ, các bạn sẽ dần trở nên già cũ và sẽ bị quét sạch đi. Xin lỗi vì quá kịch tính, nhưng điều đó khá là sự thực.

Thời gian của các bạn là có giới hạn, vì thế đừng phí phạm thời gian do sống cuộc sống của kẻ khác. Đừng bị mắc kẹt trong những điều giáo lý tức là [chỉ] sống với các kết quả suy nghĩ của người khác. Đừng để sự ồn ào của những ý kiến, quan điểm của người khác chìm chết tiếng nói trong tâm hồn, con tim và trực giác của chính bạn. Và quan trọng nhất là hãy can đảm làm theo trái tim và trực giác của bản thân. Bằng cách nào đó, chúng đã biết bạn thực sự muốn trở thành cái gì. Tất cả những cái khác chỉ là thứ yếu.

Khi tôi còn trẻ, có một ấn bản kỳ diệu được gọi là Danh Mục của Địa cầu vốn [được coi] là một trong những quyển kinh thánh của thế hệ của chúng tôi. Nó được tạo ra bởi một người tên là Stuart Brand ở Menlo Park cách đây không xa lắm, và ông ta đã đem nó cho đời với bút pháp đầy chất thi vị của mình. Lúc đó là vào cuối

Stewart and his team put out several issues of *The Whole Earth Catalog*, and then when it had run its course, they put out a final issue. It was the mid-1970s, and I was your age. On the back cover of their final issue was a photograph of an early morning country road, the kind you might find yourself hitchhiking on if you were so adventurous. Beneath it were the words, stay hungry. Stay foolish. It was their farewell message as they signed off. Stay hungry. Stay foolish. And I have always wished that for myself. And now, as you graduate to begin anew, I wish that for you. Stay Hungry. Stay foolish. Thank you all very much.

những năm Sáu mươi, trước khi máy tính cá nhân và xuất bản bằng máy tính ra đời, vì thế nó được tạo ra bởi máy chữ, kéo, và máy ảnh Polaroid. Nó là một kiểu giống như Google hình thức trên giấy 35 năm trước khi Goggle xuất hiện: nó duy tâm, tràn đầy các công cụ tinh xảo và ý niệm to lớn.

Stuart và nhóm của ông ta đã xuất bản được một vài số Danh Mục của Địa cầu, và khi đã hết khả năng, họ cho ra số cuối cùng. Lúc đó vào giữa những năm bảy mươi, và tôi vào cỡ tuổi của các bạn. Ở tấm bìa cuối của ấn bản số cuối cùng là một bức ảnh của một con đường thôn quê vào sáng sớm, kiểu đường các bạn có thể thấy chính mình đi nhờ xe quá giang nếu các bạn là người thích phiêu lưu mạo hiểm. Bên dưới bức ảnh là những chữ “Hãy giữ lấy sự thèm khát, hãy giữ lấy sự đại khờ”. Đó là lời chia tay của họ khi họ ký chia tay “Hãy giữ lấy thèm khát, hãy giữ lấy đại khờ”. Và tôi luôn mong ước điều đó cho riêng tôi. Và giờ đây khi các bạn tốt nghiệp để lại bắt đầu một cuộc đời mới, tôi xin chúc các bạn điều đó.

Hãy giữ lấy thèm khát, hãy giữ lấy đại khờ.

Cảm ơn tất cả các bạn rất nhiều.

BÀI 4: CẤP SO SÁNH CỦA TÍNH TỪ VÀ TRẠNG TỪ

A – LÝ THUYẾT

1. So sánh bằng

- Công thức: **As + adj/adv + as**

Ex: He is as tall as me = He is as tall as I am.

He works as hard as me = He works as hard as I do.

- **as + adj + noun + as**

Ex: I earn as much money as him.

There are as many cats in my room as in his room.

- Trong so sánh “không bằng” ta có thể dùng so...as thay cho as....as

Ex: I am not so/as tall as you.

He doesn't works as/so hard as me.

2. So sánh hơn

- Công thức với tính từ/trạng từ ngắn: **Adj/Adv + er + than**

Ex: I am taller than him = He isn't so tall as me.

I work harder than him = He doesn't work as hard as me.

- Công thức với tính từ/trạng từ dài: **More + Adj/Adv + than**

Ex: I am more beautiful than her.

She dances more beautifully than me.

- Tính từ/Trạng từ dài là những tính từ/trạng từ có từ 2 âm tiết trở lên.

Lưu ý:

- Tuy narrow, clever và quiet là tính từ dài (2 âm tiết) nhưng ta vẫn thêm -er cho so sánh hơn: narrower, cleverer, quieter

- Những tính từ, trạng từ mà gốc của từ kết thúc là “y” thì đổi thành “i” rồi thêm “er”:

Ex: early => earlier;

easy => easier;

busy => busier;

happy => happier

- Những trạng từ được cấu tạo từ tính từ bằng cách thêm “ly” thì ta dùng more + adv:

Ex: more slowly, more quietly, more easily, more carefully ...

Những trường hợp đặc biệt:

- good/well => better

- ill/bad/badly => worse
- little => less
- many/much => more
- far => farther/further
- old => older/elder

Lưu ý:

• **Older/Elder:**

- Khi muốn diễn đạt anh (chị) lớn, anh (chị) cả trong gia đình ta thường dùng elder brother, elder sister.
- Nhưng muốn diễn đạt lớn hơn bao tuổi thì ta dùng older.

Ex: My elder brother is three years older than me.

Nam is Linh's elder brother.

• **Farther/Further:**

- Farther: Thường được dùng để nói về khoảng cách địa lý.
- Further: Thường dùng với nghĩa bóng “thêm vào”, “hơn nữa”.

Ex: I will give you further details later.

For further information, until further notice.

• **Cách dùng “more” và “less”:**

more/less + adj/adv + than

Ex: There are more people today.

He did more carefully than me.

He did less carefully than me.

- Ta có thể nhấn mạnh sự hơn nhiều bằng cách dùng "much/far/a lot, many, greatly, a great deal" hoặc hơn ít bằng cách thêm "a bit/a little/slightly" trước hình thức so sánh..

Ex: I am far taller than you.

This house is slightly more expensive than that one.

• **So sánh số lần:**

Dùng so sánh bằng và số lần để trước so sánh.

Ex: I am twice as heavy as you.

• **So sánh số lượng:**

Dùng so sánh HƠN và số lượng để trước so sánh

Ex: I am 2 kg heavier than you.

I am 3 years older than you.

3. So sánh hơn nhất

- Công thức tính từ/trạng từ ngắn: **The Adj/Adv + est**

Ex: I am the tallest student in the class.

- Công thức tính từ/trạng từ dài: **The most Adj/Adv**

Ex: I am the most beautiful girl in my class

- **Một số từ cần lưu ý:**

Adj/adv	Adj/adv	Superlatives
Good/well	Better	The best
ill/bad/badly	Worse	The worst
Little	Less	The least
Many/much	More	The most
Far	Farther/further	The farthest/furthest
Old	Older/elder	The oldest/eldest

Lưu ý:

- Nếu chỉ có 2 đối tượng thì chỉ dùng so sánh hơn, so sánh nhất chỉ dùng khi có từ 3 đối tượng trở lên.
- Đối tượng trong so sánh nhất đã xác định nên luôn phải có “the” ngoại trừ trường hợp có sở hữu cách.

Ex: This is my best book.

- Nếu muốn nói nhất trong số các đối tượng thì dùng of phía sau.

Ex: I like Jane the most of all brothers and sisters.

Of the three girls, Mary is the tallest.

- So sánh hơn nhất hay đi với cấu trúc: S + have + ever + PII:

Ex: This is the most beautiful girl I have ever met.

This is the best film I've ever seen.

Một số Idiom dùng so sánh hơn:

- **as soon as:** càng sớm càng tốt
- **as well as = and**

Ex: I need to learn English as well as Math.

Lưu ý:

- Có thể lược bớt mệnh đề sau “than”: than expected/scheduled/anticipated

Ex: I did the exam better than I had expected.

= I did the exam better than expected.

- **at the latest:** là muộn nhất

Ex: You should submit by Friday at the latest.

- **at least:** ít nhất

Ex: You should study at least 4 courses to get mark 10.

4. So sánh kép

- Dạng 1: Một chủ ngữ

- Với tính từ/trạng từ ngắn: S + V + adj-er + and + adj-er

Ex: It is hotter and hotter

- Với tính từ/trạng từ dài: S + V + more and more + adj/adv

Ex: The lessons are more and more difficult.

- Dạng 2: 2 chủ ngữ

The + so sánh hơn + S + V, the + so sánh hơn + S + V

Ex: The hotter it is, the more unpleasant I feel.

The younger you are, the easier it is to learn.

The more you study, the higher your results are.

II. BÀI TẬP CẤP SO SÁNH

Question 1: John doesn't speak English _____ Peter.

- A.** as well **B.** as better as **C.** as well as **D.** so good as

Question 2: The garden looks _____ since you tidy it up.

- A.** better **B.** well **C.** gooder **D.** as good as

Question 3: This one is prettier, but it costs _____ as that one.

- A.** as much as **B.** twice as much **C.** as many **D.** twice as many

Question 4: The house overthere is _____ building in the city.

- A.** the oldest **B.** the eldest **C.** older than **D.** as old as

Question 5: Mr David doesn't work here _____. He left about six months ago

- A.** anymore **B.** any longer **C.** no longer **D.** A & B

Question 6: I'm sorry I'm late. I got here _____ as I could.

- A.** as fastly **B.** as fast **C.** as faster **D.** so fast

Question 7: Your English is improving. It is getting _____

- A.** good **B.** well **C.** Better **D.** good and well

Question 8: Ann works _____ than most of her friends.

A. harder B. a lot more hardly C. more hardly D. many harder

Question 9: You must explain your problems _____

A. as clear as you can B. as clear as you are
C. as clearly as you can D. as clearly as you are

Question 10: Nam is _____ student in his class.

A. the best B. better C. the good D. best

Question 11: John is _____ of the boys.

A. taller than B. so tall as C. the tallest D. the most tall

Question 12: Jane is not _____ her brother

A. more intelligent as B. so intelligent as
C. intelligent as D. so intelligent that

Question 13: It is a long journey by train. It is much _____ by road.

A. quickly B. more quickly C. quick D. quicker

Question 14: Commercial centres are _____ they were many years ago.

A. as rapidly as B. so rapidly that C. as rapid as D. as rapid that

Question 15: The sooner, the _____

A. better B. best C. good D. more good

Question 16: It's _____ film I have ever watched.

A. best boring B. most boring C. the best boring D. the most boring

Question 17: These days, _____ people are learning English.

A. much and more B. many and many C. more and more D. many and much

Question 18: I've never had a _____ meal than that.

A. more delicious B. the more delicious C. deliciouser D. most delicious

Question 19: This shirt is too small. I need a _____ size.

A. large B. larger C. more large D. largest

Question 20: Don't walk so _____. Can't you walk _____?

A. fast/slower B. fast/more slowly C. fastly/slower D. fastly/more slowly

Question 21: You're always tired in the morning. You should go to bed _____

A. earlier B. more earlier C. more early D. the earliest

Question 22: It's _____ to go by car than to go by train.

A. more cheap B. cheaper C. more cheaper D. as cheap as

Question 23: Of the four dresses, which is _____ expensive?

A. the best B. the most C. the more D. the greater

Question 24: It's _____ decision I've ever made in years.

- A.** the most difficult **B.** the more difficult
C. the best difficult **D.** most difficult

Question 25: This book is _____ of the two I have

- A.** the better **B.** the best **C.** better **D.** best

Question 26: _____we walk, _____ we will get there.

- A.** The fastest/the soonest
- B.** The faster/the sooner
- C.** The more fastly/the more soon
- D.** The more fastly/the sooner

Question 27: He is _____ boy I have ever met.

- A.** the most clever **B.** the more clever **C.** the cleverest **D.** the cleverer

Question 28: -“Why did you buy these oranges?”

- “They were _____ I could find”

- A.** cheapest **B.** cheapest ones **C.** the cheapest ones **D.** the most cheapest

Question 29: It's becoming _____ difficult to find a job in the city.

- A.** more **B.** much and more **C.** more and more **D.** much

Question 30: Bill is _____

- A.** lazier and lazier **B.** lazier and more lazy
- C.** more and more lazy **D.** more lazy and lazier

Question 31: Computers are considered as _____ tools today.

- A.** much modern than **B.** modern as
C. the most modern **D.** the modernest

Question 32: Vietnam is now _____ rice-exporting country in the world.

- A.** the second biggest **B.** the more bigger
C. the second bigger **D.** biggest

Question 33: The more popular television programs become, _____ they seem to get.

- A.** the more **B.** the worse **C.** the more badly **D.** the badlier

Question 34: Jean has _____ opportunities to play tennis than me.

- A.** fewer **B.** less **C.** the fewest **D.** the least

Question 35: It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere

- A.** noisier **B.** more quiet **C.** more noisy **D.** quieter

Question 36: For _____, it is certain that in the future some things will be very different.

- A.** the better or the worse **B.** good or bad
C. the good or the bad **D.** better or worse

Question 37: Her grandfather's illness was _____ we thought at first.

- A. more seriously B. more serious than C. as seriously as D. as serious than

Question 38: _____ you study for these exams, _____ you will do.

- A. The harder/the better B. The hardest/the best
C. The more/the much D. The more hardly/the more well

Question 39: This book is _____ the one I read last night.

- A. less much interesting B. much less than interesting
C. the less interesting D. much less interesting than

Question 40: The rooms in Graduate Towers are _____ Patterson Hall

- A. larger than B. larger than those in
C. larger than that of D. larger than in

Question 41: June is _____ than May, but July is the _____

- A. as hot/hotter B. hotter/hottest C. hotter/hotter D. hotter/most hottest

Question 42: He finished the test _____ of all.

- A. rapidly B. most rapidly C. the most rapidly D. more rapidly

Question 43: My new glasses cost me _____ the last pair that I bought.

- A. times three B. three times as much as
C. more than three times D. as much three times as

Question 44: She is the _____ daughter in the family.

- A. older B. more old C. eldest D. oldest

Question 45: Of all the ball-point pens, which one do you like _____?

- A. (the) best B. better C. (the) most D. A & C

Question 46: It is _____ cold to go in the sea.

- A. too B. enough C. so D. such

Question 47: I cooked this meal _____ for you. So I hope, you like it.

- A. special B. specially C. specialize D. specialist

Question 48: They dance the Tango _____

- A. beautiful B. beauty C. beautifully D. beautifulness

Question 49: Frankly, it is very _____ done.

- A. clever B. clever C. cleverly D. cleverness

Question 50: It was _____ packaged and wrapped in pretty, recycled paper.

- A. nice B. nicely C. nicely D. niceness

ĐÁP ÁN

1. C	2. A	3. B	4. A	5. D	6. B	7. C	8. A	9. B	10. A
11. C	12. C	13. D	14. C	15. A	16. D	17. C	18. A	19. B	20. B
21. A	22. B	23. B	24. A	25. A	26. B	27. C	28. C	29. C	30. A
31. B	32. A	33. B	34. A	35. D	36. D	37. C	38. A	39. D	40. C
41. C	42. B	43. c	44. C	45. D	46. A	47. B	48. C	49. C	50. B

BÀI 5: ĐẠI TỪ

A- LÝ THUYẾT

I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA

Đại từ là những từ thay thế cho danh từ.

Ex: My teacher is Ms. Phuong. I like her so much

II. CÁC LOẠI ĐẠI TỪ

Đại từ trong tiếng Anh có nhiều loại, trong đó có những từ vừa là đại từ (thay thế cho danh từ) vừa là tính từ. Có thể chia ra như sau:

- Đại từ nhân xưng (personal pronouns): I, we, you, he, she, it, they...

Ex: This is my book. It is very interesting.

- Đại từ chỉ định (demonstrative pronouns): This, that, these, those.

Ex: Ms Jones' report is better than that of other colleagues.

Lưu ý: Các đại từ này còn được dùng như tính từ.

Ex: *This house is big.* (This là tính từ)

- Đại từ bất định (indefinite pronouns): Something, anything, each, someone, somebody, everything...

Ex: There are ten apples on the table. Give me *some*.

- Số từ (numerals): One, two, three, a hundred, the first, the second, the third...

Ex: There are two (adj) apples here (adv) and there are four there (adv). → four là đại từ dạng số từ.

Ex2: - I'm the first student to come to class. → The first là adj

- N.A was the first to set foot on the Moon. → The first là đại từ

- Đại từ nghi vấn (interrogative pronouns): Who, what, which...

Ex: *Who* teaches you English?

What's your name?

- Đại từ sở hữu (possessive pronouns): Mine, yours, ours, theirs... (không cần có danh từ đi kèm). Phân biệt với tính từ sở hữu: my, your, our, their... cần có danh từ đi kèm.

Ex: *My* bike is newer than *yours*

adj pronoun

- Đại từ tân ngữ: me, her, him,

Ex: My mother is very kind. I love her.

- Đại từ phản thân (reflexive pronouns): myself, yourself, ourselves, themselves...

Ex: I'll do it *myself*.

1. Đại từ nhân xưng và đại từ tân ngữ

➤ Hình thức

	Chủ ngữ	Tân ngữ của động từ
Số ít	I you he/she/it	me you him/her/it
Số nhiều	we you they	us you them

Ex: Did you see the snake?
Yes, I saw it and it saw me
Did it frighten you?

➤ Vị trí của đại từ làm tân ngữ

A. Tân ngữ gián tiếp và tân ngữ trực tiếp

Tân ngữ gián tiếp đứng trước tân ngữ trực tiếp:

Ex: I made her a cake.
I sent her a cake.

=> Her là tân ngữ gián tiếp, a cake là tân ngữ trực tiếp.

Tuy nhiên, nếu đưa tân ngữ trực tiếp đứng ngay sau động từ thì phải sử dụng giới từ trước tân ngữ gián tiếp.

Ex: I made a cake for her.
I bought a cake for her
I sent a cake to her
I gave a cake to her

B. Đại từ làm tân ngữ của những cụm động từ

Với nhiều cụm động từ thì một danh từ làm tân ngữ có thể ở giữa hay ở cuối cụm động từ.

Ex: Hand your paper in/Hand in your paper.
Take your shoes off/Take off your shoes.
Hang your coat up/Hang up your coat.

Lưu ý: Một đại từ làm tân ngữ thì phải được đặt ở giữa cụm động từ

Ex: Hand them in.
Take them off.
Hang it up.

2. Các cách dùng của “it”

- “It” thông thường được dùng thay cho một vật hay một con vật mà chúng ta không biết giống của nó và đôi khi “it” dùng cho một em bé hay một đứa nhỏ

Ex: Where’s my map? It is on the table.

 Look at that bird. It always comes to my window.

 Her new baby is tiny. It only weighs 2 kilos.

- “It” có thể được dùng cho người ở những câu như là:

- Ann (on phone): Who is that?/Who is it?

Bill: It’s me

- Is that Tom over there? No, it’s Peter.

- “It” được dùng trong các thành ngữ chỉ thời gian, khoảng cách, thời tiết, nhiệt độ, thủy triều:

Ex: - What time is it? It is six.

 - What’s the date? It’s the third of March.

 - How far is it from your house to your school? – It’s about 2 km.

 - How long does it take to get there? It depends on how you go.

 - It is raining/snowing/freezing.

 - It’s high tide/low tide.

- “It/This” có thể tiêu biểu cho một cụm từ hay mệnh đề đã đề cập ở trước:

Ex: He smokes in bed, though I don’t like it.

 He suggested flying, but I thought it would cost too much.

- Cấu trúc: It + is + a period of time + since + Mốc thời gian/Mệnh đề (ở quá khứ)

Ex: It’s three years since I last saw him.

 = I haven’t seen him for three years.

- It dùng để mở đầu:

- It có thể mở đầu câu theo kiểu câu tách:

Ex: - It was Peter who lent us the money.

 - It’s today that he’s going (not tomorrow).

 - It’s pilots that we need, not ground staff.

 - It’s they who came late.

- It is + adj + to + V

Ex: - It is easy to criticize someone.

 = To criticize someone is easy.

 - It is better to be early.

= To be early is better.

- find + it + adj + to + v

Ex: - I often find it difficult to learn new words.

= I often find that it is difficult to learn new words.

- We found it impossible to get visas.

- It có thể dùng một cách tương tự như khi chủ ngữ của một câu là một mệnh đề:

Ex: That prices will go up is certain.

→ It's certain that prices will go up.

That he hasn't phoned is odd.

→ It's odd that he hasn't phone.

- It cũng dùng như một chủ ngữ cho các động từ “seem, appear, look”:

Ex: It seems that they know what they're doing.

It appears that there has been a mistake.

It looks like rain (= it looks as if it's going to rain).

3. Tính từ và đại từ sở hữu

Tính từ sở hữu	Đại từ sở hữu
My	Mine
Your	Yours
Our	Ours
Their	Theirs
His	His
Her	Hers
It	Its

Lưu ý: it's = it is; Hình thức tính từ sở hữu của “it” là its, chứ không phải là it's

Ex: A happy dog wags its tail.

- Đại từ sở hữu thay cho tính từ sở hữu + danh từ

Ex: I have received my report. Have you received yours (= your report)?

My report is better than yours. (= your report)

This is their car. That car is theirs, too.

Đại từ sở hữu thay thế cho tính từ sở hữu + danh từ mà ta không muốn nhắc lại.

Tương tự: other + N = others

Ex: I like Chelsea but other students like MU

= I like Chelsea but others like MU.

- Để thêm sự nhấn mạnh, own (riêng) có thể được đặt sau tính từ sở hữu: my, your, his, ... và sau one's

Ex: I have my own business. = I have a business of my own.

My own room

Her own idea

- Own có thể là một tính từ như trên hay là một đại từ: a room of one's own

- Ta dùng đại từ "one" khi muốn chỉ chung chung một người nào đó.

Ex: One must take care of one's parents.

⇒ one's là tính từ sở hữu của đại từ one

Lưu ý: one of my friends = a friend of mine

one of her sisters = a sister of hers

4. Đại từ phản thân

Chủ ngữ	Tân ngữ	Tính từ sở hữu	Đại từ sở hữu	Đại từ phản thân
I	Me	My	Mine	Myself
You	You	Your	Yours	Yourself
We	Us	Our	Ours	Ourselves
They	Them	Their	Theirs	Themselves
He	Him	His	His	Himself
She	Her	Her	Hers	Herself
It	It	Its	Its	Itself

Cách sử dụng của đại từ phản thân:

A. Myself, yourself, v.v... được dùng như tân ngữ của một động từ khi chủ ngữ và tân ngữ cũng là một người.

Ex: - She looks at herself in the mirror.

- Tom and Ann blamed themselves for the accident.

Lưu ý: Sẽ có sự thay đổi nghĩa nếu chúng ta thay đổi đại từ phản thân bằng đại từ tương hỗ "each other"

Ex: Tom and Ann blamed each other.

B. Đại từ phản thân dùng để nhấn mạnh.

- Đứng ngay sau từ muốn nhấn mạnh:

Ex: I myself wrote this book.

- Đứng cuối câu:

Ex: I wrote this book myself.

Lưu ý: I wrote this book itself.

I want to meet Ms. Phuong herself (not her husband).

Lưu ý: **by oneself = alone = on one's own**

Ex: She wrote the report by herself.

I'm on my own. = I'm alone.

5. Đại từ bất định

5.1 Some: một vài

- Thường dùng trong câu khẳng định.
 - Some có thể đi với danh từ đếm được số nhiều.
 - Some có thể đi với danh từ không đếm được.
- Ex: - Some students like leaning English.
- We bought some bread for lunch. => Some là tính từ bất định.
- There are ten apples on the table. Give me some => Some là đại từ bất định.
- Some dùng trong câu nghi vấn chỉ lời mời.
- Ex: - Would you like some coffee?
- Some đứng trước danh từ số ít đếm được và có nghĩa là “nào đó”.
- Ex: - Some man at the door wants to see you.

Lưu ý: **Sometimes, Some time & Some times**

- ❖ Sometimes (adv): thỉnh thoảng
Ex: I sometimes watch TV.
- ❖ Some time: lúc nào đó
Ex: I'll visit you again some time.
- ❖ Some times: một vài lần
Ex: I've watched this film some times.

5.2 Any:

- Dùng trong câu phủ định và nghi vấn,
 - Có thể đứng trước danh từ không đếm được lẫn danh từ đếm được số ít và số nhiều.
- Ex: - I haven't read any books by Charles Dickens.
- Do you know any French?
- ANY trong câu khẳng định, có nghĩa là “bất cứ”, mang ý nghĩa nhấn mạnh.
- Ex: - Please phone me any day next week.

- I can do any thing for you.

5.3 No = Not any

Là tính từ, đứng trước danh từ số ít lẫn số nhiều, và danh từ không đếm được.

Ex: - I don't have any money. = I have no money.

- I didn't have any money. = I had no money.

Lưu ý: Cần chia động từ cho phù hợp:

- Nếu no/any + danh từ không đếm được/danh từ số ít thì chia động từ số ít;

Ex: - No example is relevant to this case. (No + Danh từ số ít)

- There is no coffee. (No + danh từ không đếm được)

- Nếu no/any + danh từ đếm được số nhiều thì chia động từ số nhiều.

Ex: - No words can express my happiness. (No + Danh từ số nhiều)

5.4 Not

- Là trạng từ, không thể đứng trước một danh từ
- Not + a + Danh từ đếm được số ít: không một
- Not + many/much + N: không nhiều

Ex: - Not a student understands the lesson he's just explained.

- Not many students understand the lesson he's just explained

- Not much time left.

- They have not any friends in this city.

5.5 None

- Là đại từ, có nghĩa là no one, nothing...
- Có thể đứng trước danh từ đếm được số ít hoặc số nhiều, và danh từ không đếm được.

Ex: I have no apples. I had some last year but I had none this year.

- Cấu trúc: None of the + danh từ

Ex: - None of the guests want to stay there longer.

- None of the counterfeit money has been found.

Một số trường hợp đặc biệt của any/some/none:

- any/some/none (Đại từ bất định) + of + the + N

Ex: - Some of my staff can speak Japanese.

- Did any of your staff leave early yesterday?

- Hardly any:

Ex: I have hardly any free time.

- without any = with no:

Ex: I passed the exam without any difficulties.

= I passed the exam with no difficulties

- Someone = somebody/something

Anyone = anybody/anything + động

No one (# None) = Nobody/nothing từ số ít

Ex: - Someone at the door wants to see you.

- There is something I want to talk to you.

- Is there anyone/anybody home?

- I can do anything for you

- I do nothing on Sunday.

- Có thể sử dụng sở hữu cách với những từ bất định trên

Ex: Mr. James unintentionally took someone's report.

- Có thể thêm từ "else" (nữa, khác) vào sau những từ bất định trên

Ex: Do you want anything else?

- Có thể kết hợp "some, any, no" với từ "where": somewhere, anywhere, nowhere

Ex: I can't find my wallet anywhere.

= I can find my wallet nowhere.

= Nowhere can I find my wallet.

5.6- 5.10 One – Another - The other; Some - other/others - the others

Ex: - I have 4 pencils. One is red. Another is blue. Another is black. The other (pencil) is grey.

- This pen doesn't work. Can you give me another?

- There are 12 members in my group. Some like MU. Other members/others like Chelsea.

The others like Liverpool.

- Other: là Tính từ, thường đứng trước danh từ số nhiều.

Ex: - Other people may disagree with your ideas.

- He was at the library with two other students.

- Others: là đại từ = Other + Noun(s)

Ex: Some people drink beer. Other people/Others drink wine.

- The others: là đại từ = The other + Noun(s)

Ex: I can't do the 4th and the 5th questions, but have done all the others.

Lưu ý các cách diễn đạt:

- from one.....to another

Ex: Beggars travel from one city to another.

- On one hand,..... On the other hand..... (Hay dùng trong viết luận)
- each other & one another
- each other: dùng khi chỉ có 2 người.

Ex: Mary and Tom love each other

- one another: dùng khi có từ 3 người trở lên

Ex: Through the Internet people are discovering new ways to share relevant information with one another.

- Another còn có nghĩa là thêm nữa

Ex: Would you like another cup of coffee?

5.11. Both: cả hai

- Both + N (s,es)

Ex: Both students are clever. => Both là tính từ bất định

- Both of + the/these/those hay các sở hữu:

Ex: both of the students are clever. => Both là đại từ bất định

- Both of + us/you/them:

Ex: Both of them are clever.

- Đại từ nhân xưng + both cũng có thể dùng được:

Ex: We both knew him.

They both like coffee.

- Both S1 and S2 + Vsố nhiều

Ex: - Both the teacher and her student like Chelsea.

- It was both cold and wet.

- He is both an actor and a director.

- He both acts and directs

5.12 & 5.13. Each, every

- Each/Every + Nđđ số ít + Vsố ít

Ex: - Every/Each student needs to have a notebook => tính từ bất định

- Each of students needs to have a notebook => đại từ bất định

Lưu ý: Each có thể đi sau danh từ

Ex: - The students each need to have a notebook.

Lưu ý:

Everyone = Everybody/Everything + Vsố ít

- All people = All the people + Vsố nhiều

5.14 All

- All + N số nhiều + V số nhiều (All là tính từ)

Ex: All students must do homework

- All of the + N số nhiều + V số nhiều (All là đại từ)

Ex: All of the students like my lessons.

- All of + đại từ nhân xưng: All of us = We all, All of you = you all

Ex: We all like apples = All of us like apples.

All of us are ready = We are all ready.

We are all waiting for you.

5.15 & 5.16. Either, Neither

- Either/Neither +N

Ex: Trees grow on either side of the street.

= both sides

Neither student is good at maths.

- Either/Neither + of + the + N+ V số ít

Ex: - Either of the students doesn't understand my lesson.

- Neither of the students understands my lesson.

- Either.....or & Neither.....nor

Ex:- He didn't either phone or write to me.

- I bought a very expensive house but it is neither large nor bright.

Lưu ý:

Either + S1 + or + S2

Neither + S1 + nor + S2

not only +S1 + but also + S2

} Động từ chia theo S2

5.17 & 5.18. Most, most of, almost

- Most + Nđđ số nhiều + V số nhiều

Ex: Most students are afraid of history.

Most of the students are afraid of history.

⇒ most students là hầu hết mọi học sinh

⇒ most of the students: hầu hết các học sinh đó (đã xác định) phạm vi hẹp hơn most students.

- Almost: hầu hết, gần như + adj

Almost: suýt nữa + V

Ex: Dinner is almost ready.

He fell from the tree and almost broke his leg.

Lưu ý: Nếu muốn dùng almost với danh từ thì phải có every, all...

Almost + every + Nđđ số ít	}	Động từ số ít
Almost everyone		

- Almost + all of the + Nđđ số nhiều + Vsố nhiều

Ex: - Almost every student is afraid of history.

- Almost all of the students are afraid of history.

5. 19. Mostly

Là trạng từ của từ most, đứng trước động từ

Ex: - We mostly go out on Sunday.

- We lost the game mostly because the goal keeper was injured.

5.20. Few/A few

- Few/A few + Nđđ số nhiều

Ex: Few people live to be 100 years old

I have read a few books written by Charles Dickens.

⇒ “Few” mang nghĩa tiêu cực là rất ít, hầu như không.

⇒ “A few” mang nghĩa tích cực, có nghĩa là một vài

- A few là đại từ:

Ex: Many people went there but a few survived.

I knew a few of his friends.

5.21. Little/A little

- Little/A little + N ko đđ + V số ít

Ex: We just have little time before the train leaves, so we can't go for a drink.

We have a little time before the train leave.

Let' s go for a drink.

⇒ “Little” mang nghĩa tiêu cực là rất ít, hầu như không.

⇒ “A little” nghĩa xác định.

- Little/A little là đại từ

Ex: He knows little about science.

There was a lot of food, but I only ate a little.

III. BÀI TẬP LUYỆN TẬP

Question 1. of them has been turned in stone.

- A. No one B. Not one C. none D. Even one

Question 2. Which thief got a fright? with the money.

- A. He B. him C. That D. The one

Question 3. Erna's friends will be on the coast. That's where of them will be.

- A. more B. the most C. most D. the more

Question 4. We are all very excited. are very excited.

- A. All me B. Us all C. All us D. All of us

Question 5. They didn't steal anything. They stole

- A. anything B. not anything C. not nothing D. nothing

Question 6. Which boxes contained clothing?

- A. The wooden B. The wood C. The woody ones D. The wooden ones

Question 7. He wasn't noticed by as he crept off the boat.

- A. no one B. none C. anyone D. not one

Question 8. John is a cousin of

- A. him B. his C. he D. himself

Question 9. John, what is that noise? Is there on the street?

- A. something B. nothing C. anything D. none thing

Question 10. Please take these papers and give..... to Mike.

- A. them B. it C. one D. that

Question 11. Tom asked Ann and about the new theatre.

- A. I B. my C. me D. self

Question 12. Janice and live in an apartment.

- A. I B. my C. me D. self

Question 13. Tom is going to lose job.

- A. him B. he C. his D. he's

Question 14. A very large snake killed victims.

- A. its B. his C. her D. it

Question 15. I don't want you to pay for me. I'll pay for.....

- A. me B. myself C. yourself D. mine

Question 16. It's our own fault. We blame

A. ours B. us C. ourselves D. our

Question 17. Tom and Ann stood in front of the mirror and looked at

A. each other B. themselves C. them D. herself

Question 18. Tom looked at Ann; Ann looked at Tom. They looked at

A. themselves B. them C. each other D. together

Question 19. Domestic cats often show loyalty to owners.

A. they B. he C. them D. their

Question 20. The United States and Canada have many trade agreements that benefit

A. on the other B. other C. other one D. each other.

Question 21. James is very interested in mathematics and applications.

A. its B. their C. them D. it

Question 22. My picture is different from

A. them B. theirs C. they D. themselves

Question 23. He asked to leave the office then.

A. our B. we C. us D. ours

Question 24. You and have to finish this before noon.

A. me B. my C. mine D. I

Question 25. Mr Scott has a garage. The garage is

A. to him B. of him C. of his D. his

Question 26. Everybody knows him. know him.

A. They all B. Each C. Every D. All they

Question 27. Did..... happen? No, nothing happened.

A. nothing B. anything C. any D. a thing

Question 28. Neither of us spoke. We

A. neither spoke B. either spoke
C. both didn't speak D. neither didn't speak.

Question 29. This note is only a reminder. It's

A. anything B. no one C. nothing extra D. nothing more

Question 30. is your favourite sport? Fishing.

A. Who B. Which C. Whom D. Whose

Question 31. He doesn't catch anything. He never catches.....

A. nothing B. anything C. something D. everything

Question 32. I am only interested in doing nothing. That's..... I'm interested in.

- A. only B. the one C. all D. the only

Question 33. girls write letters regularly now.

- A. Only B. The one C. All D. The only

Question 34. He could do nothing. He couldn't do.....

- A. something B. nothing C. anything D. everything

Question 35. The porter and I looked at each other both smiled

- A. I B. he C. we D. they

Question 36. Do you like my picture? It's.....

- A. a new B. one new C. new one D. a new one

Question 37. I doubt whether..... could read your letter; your hand writing is really terrible.

- A. somebody B. anybody C. nobody D. everybody

Question 38. They told..... there was nothing to be afraid of

- A. them B. their C. they D. themselves

Question 39. There isn't in the next room.

- A. nobody B. no one C. anyone D. someone

Question 40. Have you learned by heart all those five poems? I have learned

- A. both of them B. either of them C. either of them D. none of them

Question 41. The drive gave him a few biscuits; was given a few biscuits.

- A. to him B. him C. for him D. he

Question 42. There was nothing else he could do. That washe could do.

- A. the whole B. complete C. very D. all

Question 43. One is never too old to learn;are never too old to learn.

- A. we B. you C. they D. everyone

Question 44. Both men realized what was happening but could do anything about it.

- A. they neither B. neither of them C. neither they D. either of them

Question 45. They compete

- A. against one another C. each against the other
B. the one against the other D. against each one

Question 46. He gave..... which had not been written out.

- A. the copy to him B. him a copy
C. a copy to him D. his the copy

Question 47. It isthat he is very proud of.

- A. the fact B. something C. that which D. what

Question 48. He threatened to removeby force

- A. two B. them both C. two of them D. both them

Question 49. Can there bewho has not stood in awe at the sight?

- A. no one B. none C. someone D. anyone

Question 50. The telescope was designed to distinguish between random signals and..... which might be in code.

- A. these B. those C. ones D. them

Question 51. Those coats are.....

- A. them B. their C. theirs D. they

Question 52. John and his friend gave many books to

- A. each other B. others C. one another D. each another

Question 53. His friends are rich, butare poor.

- A. me B. friends of me C. mine D. my

Question 54. It is..... who says that you do not love her.

- A. she B. her C. hers D. herself

Question 55. They sent some books to my sister and

- A. I B. me C. myself D. mine

Question 56. My father said..... would invite our teacher to dinner on Saturday.

- A. of we B. so we C. we D. that if we

Question 57. of the students in my class could solve the problem yesterday.

- A. None B. Neither C. Either D. Not much

Question 58. Pick out the correct sentence.

- A. They fight each other everyday C. They fight against one another
B. They fight themselves. D. A and C are correct

Question 59. You said you were going to introduce a friend ofwho wanted to buy a new house.

- A. you B. yours C. yourself D. your

Question 60. John couldn't findone who knew English.

- A. no B. any C. none D. some

ĐÁP ÁN

1. B	2. D	3. C	4. D	5. D	6. D	7. C	8. B	9. A	10. A
11.C	12. A	13. C	14. A	15. B	16. C	17. B	18. C	19. D	20. D
21. A	22. B	23. C	24. D	25. D	26. A	27. B	28. C	29. D	30. B
31. B	32. C	33. C	34. C	35. C	36. D	37. B	38. D	39. C	40. D
41. D	42. D	43. B	44. B	45. A	46. B	47. B	48. B	49. D	50. B
51. C	52. A	53. C	54. A	55. B	56. C	57. A	58. C	59. B	60. B

B- LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1

Choose the best answer to complete these following sentences.

Question 1: I go to school with. . . everyday.

- A. he B. him C. his D. his

Question 2: I see. . . at the Union every Friday.

- A. she B. her C. herself D. hers

Question 3: She speaks to. . . every morning.

- A. we B. us C. ourselves D. our

Question 4: Your record is scratched and . . . is, too.

- A. mine B. it C. my D. myself

Question 5: John bought . . . a new coat.

- A. himself B. herself C. hisself D. he

Question 6: John . . . went to the meeting.

- A. himself B. his C. hisself D. he

Question 7: 'Can I take another biscuit' "Of course. Help '

- A. you B. you C. yourself D. ourselves

Question 8: I was too surprised to say. . .

- A. Somebody B. something C. anybody D. anything

Question 9: Does. . . mind if I open the window?

- A. somebody B. something C. anybody D. anything

Question 10: I wasn't feeling hungry, so I didn't eat. . .

- A. somebody B. something C. anybody D. anything

Question 11: You must be hungry. Would you like. . . to eat?

- A. somebody B. something C. anybody D. anything

Question 12: Mary can't speak French

- A. Either can Peter B. Neither can't Peter C. Neither can Peter D. Peter can't neither

Question 13: This machine is very easy to use. ... can learn to use it in a very short time.

- A. Somebody B. Something C. Anybody D. Anything

Question 14: I'm going out now. If. . . phones when I'm out, can you tell them I'll be back at 11:30?

- A. somebody B. something C. anybody D. anything

Question 15: . . . who saw the accident should contact the police

- A. Somebody B. Something C. Anybody D. Anything

Question 16: Some snakes lay eggs, but _____ give birth to live offspring.

- A. other B. the other C. others D. the others

Question 17: _____ have made communication faster and easier through the use of e-mail and the Internet is widely recognized.

- A. It is that computers B. That computers C. Computers that D. That it is computers

Question 18: "Which of the two boys is granted a scholarship?" - " _____ of them is ."

- A. All B. None C. Neither D. Both

Question 19: _____ that the company has shown rapid growth in the last two ears.

- A. It is reported B. They are reported C. The report was D. Reporting

Question 20: _____ of the students in my class could solve the problem yesterday.

- A. Not much B. No C. None D. Neither

Question 21: I think you should choose _____ color. This one is too dark.

- A. other B. another C. the other D. others

Question 22: Martin tried on three jackets, _____ fitted him.

- A. none B. none of which C. none of them D. not

Question 23: I have English classes _____ day ; on Mondays, Wednesdays and Fridays.

- A. all other B. each other C. every other D. any other

Question 24: _____ trying to make him change his mind.

- A. It's no point B. It's no hope C. It's useless D. It's no use

Question 25: _____ has right to vote.

- A. something B. everyone C. many people D. some people

Question 26: Both men _____ interested in this job in the interview yesterday.

- A. are B. was C. were D. is

Question 27: There are four books on the table . _____ has a different colour.

A. Every B. Each C. Many D. Some

Question 28: He has two bookstores. One is in Thac Mo. _____ is in Phuoc Binh

A. Other B. The others C. Another D. The other

Question 29: There are girls in our class.

A. no B. not C. none D. none of

Question 30: Did you take _____ photographs when you were on holiday?

A. some B. either C. much D. many

Question 31: The news has _____ information.

A. much B. many C. almost D. any

Question 32: We' ll hurry. We haven't got _____ time left.

A. some B. many C. much D. any

Question 33: I don't have _____ friends in Ha Noi

A. some B. any C. much D. no

Question 34: We didn't buy _____ flowers yesterday.

A. some B. a great deal of C. much D. any

Question 35: There _____ at the door.

A. is somebody B. is anybody C. is everybody D. isn't nobody

Question 36: _____ people in our country earn enough for a comfortable life.

A. Most of B. The most C. Almost all the D. Mostly

Question 37: There are _____ in the hall.

A. somebody B. anybody C. everybody D. some people

Question 38: I'm not hungry. I don't want _____ to eat.

A. everything B. anything C. something D. nothing

Question 39: She didn't take _____ money with her.

A. any B. many C. much D. A and C are right

Question 40: Has _____ seen my bags?

A. somebody B. any person C. anybody D. some people

Question 41: Can I have _____ sugar please.

A. any B. some C. much D. little

Question 42: Let me know if you need _____ help.

A. any B. many C. some D. A and B are right

Question 43: Some one has forgotten _____ umbrella.

A. them B. their C. they D. theirs

Question 44: This is my new shirt. - Oh, color is pretty.

- A. it B. its C. their D. they

Question 45: I don't have _____ relatives in these strange place.

- A. any B. some C. a little D. much

Question 46: I'm so hungry. I could eat _____.

- A. something B. anything C. nothing D. every things

Question 47: The exam was quite difficult. _____ passed.

- A. Someone B. Anybody C. Nobody D. Everybody

Question 48: He has _____ luck. Everything he does, he gains.

- A. any B. some C. a little D. much

Question 49: We have used _____ energy recently.

- A. too many B. many too C. too much D. much too

Question 50: He spoke _____ English, so it was difficult for him to communicate with people here.

- A. many B. some C. little D. much

Đáp án

1-B	2-B	3-B	4-A	5-A	6-A	7-C	8-D	9-C	10-D
11-B	12-C	13-C	14-C	15-C	16-C	17-B	18-C	19-A	20-C
21-B	22-B	23-C	24-D	25-B	26-C	27-B	28-D	29-A	30-D
31-A	32-C	33-B	34-D	35-A	36-C	37-D	38-B	39-D	40-C
41-B	42-A	43-B	44-B	45-A	46-B	47-C	48-D	49-C	50-C

LUYỆN TẬP 2

Question 1: Those coats are_____

- A. them B. their C. theirs D. they

Question 2: John and his friend gave many books to_____

- A. each other B. others C. one another D. one another

Question 3: His friends are rich, but_____ are poor.

- A. me B. friends of mine C. mine D. my

Question 4: It is_____ who says that you do not love her.

- A. she B. her C. hers D. herself

Question 5: They send some books to my sister and _____

- A. I B. me C. myself D. mine

Question 6: My father said _____ would invite our teacher to dinner on Saturday.

- A. of we B. so we C. we D. that if we

Question 7: _____ of the students in my class could solve the problem yesterday.

- A. none B. none C. either D. not much

Question 8: Pick out the correct sentence.

- A. They fight each other B. They flight themselves
C. They fight one another D. a and c are correct

Question 9: You said you were going to introduce a friend of _____ who wanted to buy a new house.

- A. you B. yours C. yourself D. your father

Question 10: John couldn't find _____ one who knew English.

- A. no B. any C. none D. some

Question 11: One of _____ has to take the responsibility for setting up the experiment.

- A. us B. him C. their D. your

Question 12: We have already filled in _____ application forms but Mary is still trying to complete _____.

- A. my - her B. our - hers C. her - your D. ours - his

Question 13: You can take _____ of these two elective courses; they are _____ very interesting.

- A. both - either B. both - all C. either - both D. neither - all

Question 14: Could you lend me _____ more? I've spent _____ money you gave me yesterday.

- A. any - some B. some - the C. the - the D. some-0

Question 15: There have been _____ innovative policies to combat traffic congestion, and as a result, traffic continues to be a major problem.

- A. another B. few C. most of D. a little

Question 16: If you want the job done well, you had better do _____ . .

- A. yourself - its own B. them - your own C. it - yourself D. your own - itself

Question 17: The group monitoring the election estimated that about ten percent of the ballots were not counted for _____ reason or _____.

- A. that - these B. whether - that. C. some --any D. one - another

Question 18: _____ who was arrested during the riots was released since it couldn't be proved that they had done _____ against the law.

- A. Somebody - anywhere B. Everyone – anything

C. Anyone – nothing

D. Some of - something

Question 19: I can't possibly allow _____ of you to enter the house with your shoes covered with _____ mud.

A. many - those

B. none - too much

C. any - so much

D. some - another

Question 20: You may not be impressed with _____ ideas, but are _____ any better?

A. mine - yourself

B. my own - your

C. us - hers

D. my - your own

Question 21: She found _____ without any friends after alienating _____ all with her unpleasant behavior.

A. him - theirs

B. herself - them

C. them - herself

D. her own - him

Question 22: Don't worry. After _____ rest she'll be all right.

A. a little

B. hardly any

C. just little

D. the little

Question 23: _____ who knows _____ about literature takes •Jeffrey Archer seriously as a novelist.

A. Somebody - anyone

B. No one - anything

C. Nowhere - everything

D. Everyone - someone

Question 24: _____ university in the country would like to have such _____ well-known academic on its staff.

A. All- the

B. Each - some

C. Most - 0

D. Every - a

Question 25: I spent the _____ day at the library trying to find the articles I needed for my research.

A. most

B. whole

C. all

D. every

Question 26: Take _____ things or you'll regret it; don't take _____ jewellery either.

A. a few - many

B. little - much

C. few - much

D. a little - many

Question 27: Couldn't you have answered _____ more questions on the exam? You have hardly answered _____ .

A. a lot of - some

B. a lot of - some

C. so many - a little

D. too much - one

Question 28: I was prepared to have to give my speech in an almost empty hall so it was something of a surprise to see that quite _____ students did in fact attend.

A. a few

B. few

C. some

D. many

Question 29: There will be _____ film festival in which _____ of the films come from Middle Eastern countries.

A. 0 - most

B. some - each

C. a - all

D. the - every

Question 30: Not _____ can be done to help her if she herself doesn't put in quite _____ effort to put her own life in order.

- A.** enough - many **B.** so much – any
C. many - a great deal of **D.** much - a lot of

Question 31: I'm not lazy but I think we have _____public holidays. We ought to have more.

- A.** too little **B.** rather a few **C.** fairly little **D.** too few

Question 32: The doctor told me I had to eat _____ sweets and drink_____wine if I wanted to lose_____ kilos.

- A.** less - fewer - a few **B.** fewer - less - a few
- C.** a few - a little - more **D.** fewer - less - a little

Question 33: He was an extremely entertaining speaker, so we all enjoyed_____ even more than we had expected to.

- A.** themselves **B.** themselves **C.** himself **D.** ourselves

Question 34: Though the cloakroom was very crowded, she managed to find _____ coat fairly quickly, but it took me a long time to find _____.

- A.** theirs - our **B.** her - mine **C.** our - us **D.** hers - theirs

Question 35: My books are still on the table where I left_____, but _____ have been stolen.

- A.** mine - they **B.** hers - mine **C.** them - hers **D.** those - these

Question 36: I am so lonely and bored in this town; _____ ever invites me_____

- A.** nobody - anywhere **B.** no one - nowhere **C.** anyone - nowhere **D.** anybody - anywhere

Question 37: They are worried that if the decline in the number of the Siberian tigers continues at this high rate, _____ of the species will be left in a few years.

- A.** none **B.** many **C.** most **D.** any

Question 38: "How much are those melons?" - "Two dollars _____"

- A.** any **B.** every **C.** some **D.** each

Question 39: The contract does not mean anything legally without the signatures of _____ sides.

- A.** both **B.** either **C.** each **D.** every

Question 40: We are _____ in search of happiness, but to _____ of us, it means a different thing.

- A.** some - any **B.** both - all **C.** either - none **D.** all- each

Question 41: His parents did not really give _____ support, yet he still managed to become successful in setting up his own business.

- A. theirs - him B. them - his C. him - their D. himself - theirs

Question 42: _____ of you is going to be questioned by the police about your whereabouts at the time of the crime.

- A. All B. Each C. Every D. Every

Question 43: You can see _____ people jogging along _____ side of the river in the morning:

- A. less.- each B. those - both C. other - all D. a lot of - either

Question 44: Almost _____ children love sweets, so it's unusual that' _____ no not eat them at all.

- A. each - they B. all - yours C. any - the others D. many - those

Question 45: Sam didn't know _____ fish had been in the bowl before the cat had got _____ of them.

- A. any - whole B. how many - some C. all - much D. more - anything

Question 46: _____ time he was a student, he did _____ but go to parties.

- A. Most of - everything B. Every – something
C. The whole - nothing D. All - whatever

Question 47: Colours can affect our emotions; _____ colours make us feel happy or excited, while _____ colours make us feel sad.

- A. several - the others B. many - another C. much - the other D. some - other

Question 48: _____ of the students in my class could solve the problem yesterday.

- A. none B. neither C. either D. not much

Question 49: Although _____ was angered by the changes to the schedule last week, _____ attempts have been made yet to put matters right.

- A. no one - several B. the others - many C. most - few D. everyone - no

Question 50: Every morning, millions of _____ waste _____ time reading the sports pages.

- A. they - my B. ours - our own C. us -our D. them - its

ĐÁP ÁN

1-C	2-A	3-C	4-A	5-B	6-C	7-A	8-D	9-B	10-B
11-A	12-B	13-C	14-B	15-B	16-C	17-D	18-B	19-C	20-D
21-B	22-A	23-B	24-D	25-B	26-C	27-B	28-D	29-C	30-D
31-D	32-B	33-D	34-B	35-C	36-A	37-A	38-D	39-A	40-D

41-C	42-B	43-D	44-B	45-B	46-C	47-D	48-A	49-D	50-C
------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------	------

Góc giải trí

Các em thân mến, hôm nay chúng ta sẽ cùng thử suy nghĩ một số câu đố tiếng Anh thú vị sau đây nhé:

1. What key does not lock the door?
2. Where does June come before May?
3. What is the best place to put the cake in?
4. Why is the letter A like twelve o'clock?
5. What is the difference between a soldier and a young girl?
6. Which can you keep after giving it to your friend?
7. What is it that was tomorrow and will be yesterday?
8. What comes twice in a moment, once in a minute and never in a hundred years?
9. What is it that larger the more you take from it?
10. Which letter of the alphabet goes round Great Britain?
11. When I eat, I live but when I drink, I die. What am I?
12. Why is the letter T like an island?
13. What word becomes shorter by the addition of a syllable?
14. What belongs only to you, and yet is used more by others than by yourself?
15. What goes up when the rain comes down?
16. What goes up but never comes down?
17. Which travels at greater speed, heat or cold?
18. Which 2 letters of alphabet have eyes?
19. Which 4 letter would frighten a thief?
20. Which can you keep after giving it to your friend?

Đáp án

1. A music key
2. In the dictionary
3. In the mouth
4. Because it is in the middle of day
5. One powders the face and the other faces the powder.
6. The promise

7. Today
8. letter M (What comes twice in a moment, once in a minute and never in a hundred years?)
9. A hole
10. letter C (the sea)
11. Fire
12. Because it is in the middle of water
13. The word short become shorter by the addition of a syllable
14. Your name
15. An umbrella.
16. Smoke, your age.
17. Heat, because you can catch cold.
18. A and B, because you say: ABCD (AB see D).
19. O, I, C, U (oh, I see you)
20. Your word.

BÀI 6: MẠO TỪ

A – LÝ THUYẾT

I. 25 QUY TẮC DÙNG A/AN/THE

❖ **QT1:** Cách sử dụng mạo từ không xác định a/an:

- a/an + Nđđ số ít
- "an" dùng cho danh từ bắt đầu bằng nguyên âm: u, e, o, a, i
Ex: an uncle, an apple, an onion, an egg...
- Danh từ bắt đầu bằng phụ âm dùng "a".
Ex: a dog, a book, a student....

Lưu ý: Việc dùng "a/an" là căn cứ vào "âm" chứ không phải vào chữ viết của từ theo sau.

Ex: a one-way street, a university, an hour...

Ví dụ: Điền "a, an" vào chỗ trống phù hợp

1. He is ...**an**....ugly man.
2. Vietnam is.....**a**...united country.
3. Could you tell me where I can find...**a**....good restaurant in this town?

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. "ugly" bắt đầu bằng một nguyên âm, nên dùng "an"

Dịch: Anh ấy là một người xấu xí.

2. Từ "united" khi phiên âm ra bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm/ju/, nên ta dùng "a"

Dịch: Việt Nam là một quốc gia thống nhất.

3. Từ "good" bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm, nên ta dùng "a"

Dịch: Bạn có thể chỉ cho tôi biết tôi có thể tìm nhà hàng tốt ở đâu trong thị trấn này không?

❖ **QT2:** Không dùng a/an với:

- danh từ số nhiều: Ex: brothers, books....
- danh từ không đếm được: Ex: water, air, information, news...
I'd like to drink a coffee X
I'd like to drink coffee ✓

Lưu ý: Để đếm được các danh từ không đếm được, ta thêm các từ chỉ sự đo lường vào trước danh từ đó

Ex: a cup of coffee

Ví dụ: Điền mạo từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống, nếu không cần mạo từ thì điền "ø"

1. ...**A**...calorie is.....**a**...unit of... **ø**....heat.
2. ... **ø**....snow and..... **ø**...ice are forms of.... **ø**...water.

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. “calorie” là một danh từ đếm được số t, bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm nên ta dùng “a”
“unit” phiên âm ra sẽ bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm “ju”, nên ta dùng “a”
“heat” là một danh từ không đếm được nên không dùng mạo từ

Dịch: Ca-lo là một đơn vị của nhiệt

2. “Snow, ice, water” là các danh từ không đếm được nên ta không dùng mạo từ

Dịch: Tuyết và đá là các dạng thức của nước

❖ **QT3:** Cấu trúc There + be + (a/an) + N (Không dùng “the” với “there + be”)

Ex: There is a cat on the table.

 There are cats on the table.

 There is water on the floor

Ví dụ: Điền mạo từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống, nếu không cần mạo từ thì điền “ø”

1. There is....**a**.....wonderful place that my children like to visit on... **ø**.....holidays.
2. I have an aunt and... **an**...uncle in America.

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. “wonderful place” bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm, nên ta dùng “a”
“holidays” là danh từ số nhiều nên ta không dùng mạo từ

Dịch: Có một nơi rất tuyệt mà các con của tôi thích đến thăm vào các ngày nghỉ lễ.

2. “uncle” là một danh từ đếm được số ít, bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm nên ta dùng “an”

Dịch: Tôi có một người cô và một người chú ở Mỹ

❖ **QT4:** - Một số danh từ có thể là danh từ đếm được trong một số trường hợp và là danh từ không đếm được trong các trường hợp khác.

Ex: Time is gold.

 We had ...a...great time at the beach last week.

 I’ve read this book 3 times

- Cách diễn đạt trong đo lường hay gặp: sixty miles an hour, forty hours a week, 70 cents a dozen, 20 miles a gallon ...

Ex: Eggs are just 70 cents a dozen

Ví dụ: Điền “a, an” vào chỗ trống thích hợp

1. When I was in college, I had a job that paid \$1.60... **an**hour
2. Land here costs \$30.000..... **an**....acre.

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. “hour” khi phiên âm bắt đầu bằng một nguyên âm nên ta dùng “an”

Dịch: Khi tôi đang học đại học, tôi có một công việc lương 1.60 đô một giờ

2. “Acre” bắt đầu bằng một nguyên âm nên dùng “an”

Dịch: Đất ở đây giá 30.000 đô một acre

❖ **QT5:** Sử dụng mạo từ xác định “the” khi:

- Vật đã được nhắc đến trước đó.

Ex: I have a cat. The cat is named Miu.

- Dùng trong các ngữ cố định: in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening..

Ex: In the morning, I usually have bread and milk.

Lưu ý: Không được dùng “the” trong cụm từ “at night”

Ex: I always watch television at night.

Ví dụ: Điền “the, ø” vào chỗ trống phù hợp.

1. My father comes home from work at five o’clock in.... **the**.....afternoon.

2. I caught a train in Nha Trang, but I was late because..... **the**.....train broke down.

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. “the” được dùng trong ngữ cố định: in the afternoon: vào buổi chiều

Dịch: Bố tôi thường đi làm về lúc 5 giờ chiều

2. Danh từ “train” được nhắc đến trong vế trước, nên ở đây ta dùng mạo từ xác định “the”

Dịch: Tôi đã bắt một chuyến tàu ở Nha Trang nhưng tôi bị muộn vì con tàu đó bị hỏng

❖ **QT6:** Dùng “the” khi người nói ngầm chỉ 1 vật nhất định nào đó

Ex: Be careful! You’re spilling coffee on the floor.

❖ **QT7:** The + N + prep + the + N

(Danh từ được bỏ nghĩa đằng sau bởi cụm giới từ thì phải dùng the)

Ex: The back of this room is dirty.

The man in the red shirt is my boss.

Lưu ý:

- Most/All/Some + N số nhiều: mang nghĩa chung chung

- Most/All/Some + of the + N số nhiều: mang nghĩa xác định

Ex: Most women like cosmetics.

Most of the women in my family like cosmetics.

❖ **QT8:** Danh từ được bỏ nghĩa đằng sau bởi mệnh đề quan hệ thì phải dùng “the”

Ex: The teacher that we had last semester was especially good.
The man that hired me yesterday left the company today.

❖ **QT9:** Không dùng a/an/the trước tên đường phố

Ex: I live on Phan Dinh Phung street.
I live on 9/1 Road.

Ví dụ: Điền mạo từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống, nếu không cần mạo từ thì điền “ø”

1. Cross.... ø.....Thirtieth Avenue and turn right on.... ø.....Elm.
2. Do.... ø...Pine Avenue and..... ø....34th Street run parallel to each other?

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. “Avenue”: đại lộ, Elm là tên đường nên không dùng mạo từ.

Dịch: Băng qua đại lộ 13 và rẽ phải trên đường Elm.

2. Không dùng mạo từ trước tên đường

Dịch: Có phải đại lộ Pine và đường số 34 chạy song song với nhau không?

❖ **QT10:** Sự khác biệt giữa danh từ đếm được số nhiều và the + danh từ đếm được số nhiều:

- N số nhiều: mang nghĩa chung chung, chỉ loài

Ex: Dogs are loyal.

- The + N số nhiều: mang nghĩa cụ thể, xác định

Ex: The dogs that my mum bought yesterday are nice.

Ví dụ: Điền mạo từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống

- 1... ø.....pigeons can find their way home from hundreds of miles away.
- 2.....**The**.....pigeons that we feed at the park are not afraid of people.

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. “pigeons” ở đây mang nghĩa chỉ loài, nên không dùng mạo từ.

Dịch: Những con chim bồ câu có thể tìm được đường về nhà từ hàng trăm dặm.

2. “Pigeons” ở đây được xác định bởi mệnh đề quan hệ “that we feed at the park” nên dùng mạo từ “the”.

Dịch: Những con chim bồ câu mà chúng ta cho ăn ở công viên thì không sợ người.

❖ **QT11:** Cách dùng the với tên trường:

- Foreign Trade University (Không có “the”)

- The University of Architecture

Ví dụ: Hoàn thành các câu sau với các mạo từ phù hợp

1. I work at a biology station for.... **the**.....University of Minesota.
2. **Ø**.....Utah State University and..... **the**.....University of Utah are different schools

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. Trước “university of” ta dùng mạo từ “the”

Dịch: Tôi làm việc ở một trạm sinh học cho trường đại học Minesota.

2. Trước tên trường đại học, ta không dùng mạo từ; dùng “the” trước “university of”

Dịch: Đại học bang Utah và Đại học Utah là các trường khác nhau.

❖ **QT12:** Mạo từ thường không được dùng với tên nước, tên thành phố hoặc bang.

Ex: I live in Hanoi

- Ngoại trừ một số trường hợp đặc biệt: The United States, The United Kingdom hay The Republic of South Africa, The Philippines, The United Arab Emirates

Ví dụ: Điền mạo từ vào chỗ trống thích hợp

1. The capital of... **Ø**.....Thailand is Bangkok.
2. **Ø**...Alabama is a southern state in ... **the**US.

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. Trước tên nước, ta không dùng mạo từ

Dịch: Thủ đô của Thái Lan là Băng Cốc

2. “Alabama” là tên một thành phố nên ta không dùng mạo từ.

Ta bắt buộc phải dùng “the US”

Dịch: Alabama là một bang ở phía Nam của Mỹ

❖ **QT13:** Dùng the trong so sánh nhất

• **The most + adj**

• **The + adj-est**

Ex: - Alaska is the biggest state in the U.S.

- The Graduate was one of the best movies I’ve ever seen.

Ví dụ: Điền mạo từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống

1. The porpoise is.... **a**....very intelligent animal.
2. The porpoise is one of.... **the**.....most intelligent animals.

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. Đây là một câu giới thiệu bình thường, nên ta dùng mạo từ “a”

Dịch: Cá heo là một động vật rất thông minh.

2. Trước so sánh hơn nhất ta dùng mạo từ “the”

Dịch: Cá heo là một trong những loài động vật thông minh nhất.

❖ **QT14:**

- Dùng “the” trong so sánh kép:

Ex: The hotter it is, the more comfortable I feel.

- Chỉ thứ tự: The first, the second, the last, the only....

Ex: The second semester begins in January.

I hope you enjoy the next song.

❖ **QT15:**

- Dùng “the” với tên sông, biển, đại dương, quần đảo...

Ex: + The Congo River is in Africa.

+ The Sargasso Sea is located in the Atlantic Ocean.

- Nếu tên núi, hồ đứng sau thì không cần “the”

Ex: Mount Everest, Lake Ba Be

❖ **QT16:** Dùng “the” khi nói về những sự vật chỉ có duy nhất.

Ex: The sun, the moon, the sky, the Earth...

❖ **QT17:** The + adj: Danh từ số nhiều chỉ người

Ex: the rich, the old, the blind, the English...

❖ **QT18:** Không dùng mạo từ với tên riêng sân vận động, công viên, bệnh viện

Ex: I was born in Hillsdale Hospital.

❖ **QT19:** Không dùng mạo từ với tên ngôn ngữ

Ex: English, Chinese....

Spanish is spoken in most Latin American countries.

❖ **QT20:**

- Dùng the + south, north, west...

Ex: - The wind is blowing from the north.

- To the north, you can see a range of mountains.

- Không dùng “the” nếu phương hướng đi kèm ngay sau một động từ chỉ hình động: “go, travel, turn, look, sail, fly, walk, move”.

Ex: We are considering going south next year.

When you get to 12th Street, turn north.

❖ **QT21:** the + nhạc cụ: play the guitar, the piano

Một số ngữ cố định không có “the”: go to bed, go to school...

❖ **QT23:** Không dùng “the” với tên bệnh và chia động từ số ít

Ex: Heart disease kills millions every year.

Cancer is not a contagious disease.

Lưu ý: Ta có thể dùng “the flu” hoặc “flu” đều đúng.

❖ **QT23:** Dùng “the” với các tên số nhiều ngụ ý “gia đình nh...”

Ex: the Smiths, the Phuongs....

❖ **QT24:** Dùng “the” với các danh từ chỉ lực lượng quân đội: the army, the police, the navy...

❖ **QT25:** Dùng “the” với từ “same”

Ex: - Kathy and I got the same grade.

- Twins often have the same interests.

II. TỔNG HỢP VỀ MẠO TỪ

Khái quát lại cách dùng a/an/the

1. Mạo từ không xác định a/an dùng với danh từ đếm được số ít

- “an” dùng trước danh từ bắt đầu bằng nguyên âm

Ex: an apple, an orange, an umbrella...

- “a” dùng trước danh từ bắt đầu bằng phụ âm

Ex: a book, a table, a lesson.....

Lưu ý: Dùng a hay an là theo phiên âm. Ví dụ: an hour, an heir, an SOS, an MP

2. Các trường hợp dùng a/an hay gặp

- A lot of = Lots of (Dùng với cả danh từ đếm được và không đếm được)

Ex: I have a lot of money

I have a lot of houses.

- A great deal of: Dùng với danh từ không đếm được
- A couple of. Ví dụ: a couple of times, a couple of things
- A dozen. Ví dụ: a dozen people...
- A half: một nửa, a third: 1/3, a fifth: 1/5

Ex: an hour and a half

- \$5 a kilo...
- A/one + hundred/thousand + Danh từ số nhiều.

Ex: The book has a/one hundred pages.

Lưu ý:

- a, one, two,...hundred/thousand (không có “s” ở cuối hundred/thousand).
- Hundreds/thousands + of khi không có số hoặc các từ chỉ lượng đứng trước.

Ex:

Four hundred people are expected to attend.

This vase is worth several hundred dollars.

There were thousands of people there.

3. Dùng “the” với danh từ đã được xác định

- Danh từ được xác định bởi cụm giới từ

Ex: The man in the red shirt is my boss.

- Danh từ được xác định bởi mệnh đề quan hệ đứng sau bổ nghĩa cho

Ex: The man who gave me a book is kind.

- Khi người nói và người nghe ngầm hiểu vật được nhắc đến là gì

Ex: There is a cat on the table.

- Được nhắc đến lần thứ 2

Ex: I have a dog. The dog is lovely.

❖ Các trường hợp dùng “the” hay gặp:

- The of the:

Ex: The product of the company

- “The” + first, second, only, last + N + to V

Ex: Neil Armstrong was the first man to walk on the Moon.

The only thing I want to do now is sleeping.

- In 1990 (Không có “the”)

Nhưng In the 1990s: Vào những năm 90 (có “the”)

- The + N số ít: để chỉ loài.

Ex: the whale, the dog....

Lưu ý: loài người thì ta không dùng “the man”.

Ex: What do you know about the origins of man?

- Dùng “The + adj” để chỉ người

Ex: the young, the old, the English, the Vietnamese....

❖ Phân biệt “go to the school/church/prison...” & “go to school/church/prison...”

- go to school/church/...: khi bạn đến trường để học, đến nhà thờ để cầu nguyện (theo đúng mục đích sử dụng của nơi đó)
- go to the school/church/prison...: khi bạn đến nhưng để làm việc khác. (mục đích khác)

Ex: I go to the prison to meet my uncle.

My mother go to the school to attend the parents meeting.

4. Các trường hợp dùng và không dùng “the”

Dùng “the”	Không dùng “the”
Dùng “the” với tên đại dương, biển, sông, kênh đào, sa mạc: The Red Sea, the Atlantic, the Amazon, the Sahara...	Không dùng “the” khi tên núi, hồ đứng sau: Lake Ba Be, Mountain Everest,..
Dùng “the” với các vật chỉ có duy nhất: The Sun, the Moon, the Earth,...	Không dùng “the” với tên các ngôi sao: Mars, Venus,...
Dùng “the” với các tên số nhiều của người, địa điểm: - The Rocky Mountains/the Rockies, the Andes, the Alps - Nhóm các đảo: the Canary Islands/the Canaries - Tên nước: The United States, the Philippines, the Netherlands - Tên người: The Smiths (= the Smith family)	
The University of Ohio,...	Foreign Trade University,...
The first World War,... The sixth gate,... The second chapter,...	Không dùng “the” trước danh từ + số. Ex: Gate 6, Chapter II, Room 126, size 43, World War I,...
The + tên nhạc cụ Ex: Play the guitar, play the violin...	Không dùng “the” với tên các dòng nhạc. Ex: I love Jazz,....
Dùng “the” trong các tên quốc gia có Republic, Kingdom, States, Union: The United States, the United Kingdom, the Soviet Union, the Czech Republic...	Không dùng “the” với hầu hết các tên quốc gia. Ví dụ: Vietnam, Singapore.....
	- Không dùng “the” với tên thành phố, đường. Ex: I live in Phan Dinh Phung street in Ha Noi
	Không dùng “the” với tên các môn học Ex: I hate chemistry,...
	Không dùng “the” khi khái quát hóa về các

	danh từ trừu tượng: happiness, freedom...
--	---

Ví dụ: Điền mạo từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống

1. My neighbour is ... **a** photographer; let's ask him for ... **ø**advice about colour films.
2. A: We had ... **ø**fish and ... **ø** ...chips for..... **ø**..lunch.
B: That doesn't sound...**a**...very interesting lunch.
3. A: . . . friend of mine is expecting . . . baby. If it's . . . girl she's going to be called Etheldreda.
B: What . . . name to give . . . girl!

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. Về thứ nhất là một câu giới thiệu bình thường, nên ta dùng mạo từ “a” “photographer” (nhiếp ảnh gia) là một danh từ đếm được số ít

Advice (lời khuyên) là một danh từ không đếm được, nên ta không dùng mạo từ. Hơn nữa ta có cụm “ask sb for advice”: hỏi lời khuyên của ai

Dịch: Hàng xóm của tôi là một nhiếp ảnh gia; hãy hỏi lời khuyên của ông ấy về phim màu

2. “fish” là danh từ không đếm được; “chips” là danh từ số nhiều nên ta không dùng mạo từ
Ta có cụm “have st for lunch”: ăn cái gì cho bữa trưa, không dùng mạo từ; trừ trường hợp bữa trưa đó đã xác định (rất hi hữu)

Dùng “a very interesting lunch”: một bữa trưa thú vị

Dịch: A: Chúng ta có cá và khoai tây rán cho bữa trưa

B: Nó có vẻ không phải một bữa trưa thú vị nhỉ.

3. “friend; baby; girl; name” là danh từ đếm được, ở dạng số ít nên ta dùng mạo từ “a”

A friend of mine: một người bạn của tôi

Dịch: A: Một người bạn của tôi đang mong chờ một đứa trẻ. Nếu nó là một đứa bé gái, cô ấy sẽ gọi nó là Etheldreda.

B: Thật là một cái tên thật hay để gọi một cô gái!

III. BÀI TẬP MẠO TỪ

Ex 1. Điền mạo từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống

1. There is.....interesting movie playing at the Valley Art Theater.
2. My parents live in a country where there are.....long cold winters.
3. The Airbus is made by.....European company.
4. What.....honor it is to meet the Queen!
5. I saw.....horrible accident last week.
6. The police often call.....unknown thief Mr. Joe.

7.whales breathe air.
8. Everything went wrong, we had.....terrible time.
9.time and space are related.
10. Wait a minute: I've got.....idea!

Ex 2: Điền mạo từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống

1. A snail moves only a few inches.....hour.
2. A storm struck the coast of Vietnam.....storm caused a lot of damage.
3. A thousand is ten times more than.....hundred.
4.eulogy is usually a speech about someone who has died.
5.unknown person stole a TV from my mother's home.
6. I know the melody of that song, but I don't know.....words.
7. I made some coffee.....coffee was too strong.
8. "E" looks like a "3" in a mirror.
9. My friend went fishing and fell into.....water.
10. My last name begins with..... "C".

Ex 3: Điền mạo từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống

1.oxygen is needed for all people.
2. I read.....book on geology last week.
3.members of that band are very talented.
4. A birthday cake usually has.....candles on it.
5. Many of.....airliners in the world are made in Washington State.
6. Most.....dogs hate cats.
7. All of.....fish in the river died.
8. I picked up the sugar bowl, and some of.....sugar fell on the floor.
9. Some.....movies are good, and others aren't.
10. Is this.....road to Santa Fe?

Ex 4: Điền mạo từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống

1. In.....town where I was born lived a man who sailed to sea.
2.blue whales are the largest animals that ever lived.
3. You don't have.....camera, do you?

4. I spend the day at the ocean sitting on...shore.
5. Our store is on the northwest corner of.....Main Street and Elm Road.
6. I saw.....exciting soccer game last week.
7. She looks down at.....papers lying on her desk.
8. I prefer apples to..... oranges.
9. They're tearing up.....street in front of my house.
10.unemployment is a growing problem.

Ex 5: Điền mạo từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống

1. Dr. Finley has a degree from.....University of the Americas in Mexico.
2.College of Design is no longer located in Hascall Hall.
3. How long have you been in.....U.S?
4.University of Green Village has over 10.000 students.
5. Mr. Smith liked Johnny's essay even though.....boy's spelling was poor.
6. Greenville is very old and many of.....town's buildings need repair.
7. That's.....worst movie I've ever seen!
8.Bay City University is well- known for its Drama Department.
9. Muhammad Ali was one of.....greatest boxers of all time.
10.Cochies College is also known as CC.

Ex 6: Điền mạo từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống

1. Borneo is.....third largest island in the world.
2. Don't drop that class, talk to the professor.....first.
3. I introduced Mary to Charles, and they got married.....next summer.
4. It rained on July 1st, and.....next day it snowed.
5. Ladies and gentlemen, please welcome.....next singer Ranger Joe!
6. Sharon wasn't at home when I went over last Sunday, so I went back.....next day.
7.easier a test is, the happier I am.
8.first class I have in the morning is algebra.
9.more I eat Thai food, the more I like it.
10. I watched.....exciting TV program last night.

Ex 7: Điền mạo từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống

1. At Port Pierre, South Dakota.....Missouri River is dam
2. Buddy Holly formed a musical group called..... “Crickets”.
3.Urals are a major range of mountains in Europe.
4. For centuries people have used.....horses as a beast of burden.
5.cotton gin, a device for removing seeds from cotton, was an important invention.
6. In the Navy, Gregg was stationed in.....Aleutians, a chain of Alaskan islands.
7.wheel is circular in shape.
8. Mary’s favorite baseball team is.....Orioles.
9. My uncle used to be.....New York taxi cab driver.
10. One of the most famous deserts is.....Sahara.

Ex 8: Điền mạo từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống

1. I’m working nights to make.....little extra money.
2. Because he did poorly on the first exam Vince began to study more. However, he did.....little better on the second exam.
3. Canadians, like Americans, speak.....English.
4. Manila is a city in.....Philippines.
5.camera was invented in the 1800s.
6.Lebanese speak Arabic.
7. I spilled.....tomato juice on my new shirt.
8.Lake Mono has very salty water.
9.Mount Fuji, an extinct volcano, is the highest mountain in Japan.
10. For centuries,.....chicken has been raised for its meat and eggs.

Ex 9: Điền mạo từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống

1. Where do you go to.....school?
2. Sam threw an apple. The apple hit Bill in.....nose.
3.measles can be a very serious disease.
4.typhus has sometimes killed more soldiers in wars than those who died in battle.
5.Chapter Five is longer than the rest.
6.late 1800’s were the years of the Wild West.
7. He received an honorable discharge from.....army.
8. Meat loaf again? We had.....same thing for dinner last night!

9. I have four dictionaries. Two are Japanese and.....others are English.

Ex 10: Điền mạo từ thích hợp vào chỗ trống

1. Between Italy and Greece lies.....Adriatic Seas.
2. Caroline Newman is majoring in.....Business at the university.
3.Art Museum is located in the James Fisher Building.
4. Coffee in this restaurant is only 25 cents.....cup.
5.Tokyo is one of the most populous cities in the world.
6. Everyone in the class missed.....question number 23 on the test.
7.University of Greenville is a good place to study.
8. For dessert, I'd like.....slice of that apple pie, please.
9.Chinese have a long history.
10. George Rawson owns a nightclub on.....Santo Monica Boulevard.

ĐÁP ÁN

Ex1	an	ø	a	an	a	an	ø	a	ø	an
Ex2	an	The	a	A	An	the	The	An	the	a
Ex3	ø	a	The	ø	the	ø	the	the	ø	the
Ex4	the	ø	a	the	ø	an	the	ø	the	ø
Ex5	the	The	the	The	the	the	the	ø	the	ø
Ex6	the	ø	the	the	the	the	The	The	The	an
Ex7	the	the	The	ø	The	the	A	the	a	the
Ex8	a	ø	ø	the	The	The	ø	ø	ø	the
Ex9	ø	the	ø	ø	ø	The	the	the	the	
Ex10	the	ø	The	a	ø	the	The	a	The	ø

B – LUYỆN TẬP

Choose the best answer to complete these following sentences.

LUYỆN TẬP 1

Question 1: There was _____ piano in the corner of the room.

- A. a B. an C. Ø D. the

Question 2: It is fun to learn English on _____ computer.

- A. a B. an C. Ø D. the

Question 3: Are they _____ students?

- A. a B. an C. Ø D. the

Question 4: Have you ever been to _____ British Museum.

- A. a B. an C. Ø D. the

Question 5: We only have _____ hour to complete the test.

- A. a B. an C. Ø D. the

Question 6: _____ Hyde Park is a very large park in central London.

- A. a B. an C. Ø D. the

Question 7: I would like _____ rice with my curry.

- A. a B. an C. Ø D. the

Question 8: He is _____ English man.

- A. a B. an C. Ø D. the

Question 9: He is _____ English.

- A. a B. an C. Ø D. the

Question 10: He is _____ English.

- A. Ø B. a C. the D. an

Question 11: Children usually begin to go to _____ school at _____ age of six.

- A. the, the B. a, a C. Ø, the D. the, a

Question 12: Finally we got to _____ house where our grandfather and grandmother had once lived.

- A. the B. an C. Ø D. an

Question 13: Sam is _____ man to speak at the conference tomorrow.

- A. Ø B. a C. the D. an

Question 14: Birds can fly in _____ sky.

- A. an B. the C. Ø D. a

Question 15: All work had to be done by _____ hand when there were no modern machines.

- A. an B. the C. Ø D. a

Question 16: She is _____ tallest girl in the school.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 17: Where is _____ pretty, pink sweater I bought last week?

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 18: I want to see _____ movie. I don't care which one we see. I just want to get out of the house tonight.

A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 19: Can you play _____ piano?

A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 20: Do you like _____ my new glasses?

A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 21: I want to introduce you to Sharon. She is _____ very nice person.

A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 22: She needs _____ water. She is really thirsty.

A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 23: Canada is one of _____ biggest countries in the world.

A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 24: Quick! Someone call _____ police. I need help right now.

A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 25: Do you like _____ my wedding dress?

A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 26: I need _____ new computer. I'm going to the electronics' store to pick one out today.

A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 27: I want to have _____ apple for _____ lunch.

A. a, the B. an, Ø C. the, Ø D. Ø, Ø

Question 28: _____ Grand hotel is in _____ Baker Street.

A. Ø, Ø B. the, the C. the, Ø D. Ø, the

Question 29: Can you give me _____ little more information about the house?

A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 30: I like _____ beautiful, brown coffee table in your living room. Where did you buy it?

A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 31: The largest landmass is divided into two "continents" along _____ Ural mountains.

A. an B. the C. Ø D. a

Question 32: There are only _____ few mistakes in your composition. Don't make _____ same ones any more.

A. the, the B. a, a C. Ø, Ø D. a, the

Question 33: What _____ day we are having today!

- A. an B. the C. Ø D. a

Question 34: Lisa met one of her old friends on his way _____ home from Vancouver.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 35: Spring is _____ best season of the year. Autumn is _____ busy season.

- A. the, a B. a, a C. a, the D. the, the

Question 36: My girl friend bought _____ dress _____ last weekend.

- A. a, the B. the, the C. a, Ø D. the, a

Question 37: Kent always have _____ lunch in a restaurant.

- A. Ø B. the C. a D. an

Question 38: Wendy is _____ eleven-year-old girl.

- A. a B. the C. an D. Ø

Question 39: _____ sun and the moon both set in _____ west.

- A. the, the B. Ø, Ø C. Ø, the D. the, Ø

Question 40: I will keep _____ eye on the baby when its father is away.

- A. an B. much C. the D. one

Question 41: "James is not coming tonight". "Oh, that is... bad news."

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 42: I'm not the man to give you... advice.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 43: I just want to ask you for... advice.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 44:advice he had got from most of his friends was to turn down.....offer.

- A. the, the B. the, an C. an, an D. Ø, Ø

Question 45:equipment from..... wrecked plane has to be saved

- A. the, the B. the, a C. a, a D. Ø, Ø

Question 46: It was nearly..... midnight, and Margaret rose to go.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 47: As... boy Herbert wanted to study... music.

- A. the, Ø B. the, a C. a, Ø D. Ø, Ø

Question 48: We got back to..... inn as..... night was falling.

- A. the, the B. the, a C. the, Ø D. Ø, Ø

Question 49: I paid my first visit to them on..... clear cold February night.

A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 50: Charles was in a hurry to get back home by... midnight.

A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Đáp án

1-A	2-D	3-C	4-D	5-B	6-C	7-C	8-B	9-B	10-B
11-C	12-A	13-C	14-B	15-C	16-C	17-C	18-A	19-C	20-D
21-A	22-D	23-C	24-C	25-D	26-A	27-B	28-C	29-A	30-C
31-B	32-D	33-D	34-D	35-A	36-C	37-A	38-C	39-A	40-A
41-D	42-D	43-D	44-A	45-A	46-D	47-C	48-C	49-A	50-D

LUYỆN TẬP 2

Question 1: Taiwan is _____ island. It is _____ largest island of _____ Republic of China.

A. an, a, Ø B. the, the, Ø C. a, the, the D. an, the, the

Question 2: It is hot in _____ summer, and _____ days are longer.

A. a, the B. Ø, the C. the, the D. the, Ø

Question 3: Where there is _____ will, there is _____ way.

A. the, a B. the, the C. a, the D. a, a

Question 4: _____ Vietnamese are _____ hardworking people.

A. the, a B. the, Ø C. Ø, Ø D. Ø, a

Question 5: Rose's hometown was in _____ south Sea and his father is in _____ Black Sea.

A. Ø, Ø B. the, a C. the, a D. the, the

Question 6: Jimmy has tried twice, and now he will give it _____ third try.

A. one B. another C. the D. a

Question 7: Henry is fond of listening to _____ radio while John is interesting in watching _____ TV

A. Ø, Ø B. the, a C. the, Ø D. Ø, the

Question 8: He works at night and sleeps during _____ day

A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 9: A robber is dangerous to _____ society

A. the B. an C. a D. Ø

Question 10: We elected Jessica _____ head of the club.

A. Ø B. the C. a D. one

Question 11: The invitation has been accepted by _____ dancer and _____ singer.

A. the, a B. the, a C. the, a D. the, Ø

Question 12: _____ morning, a stranger knocked at my door.

A. Ø B. a C. the D. one

Question 13: You will find the picture on _____ tenth page.

A. this B. Ø C. an D. the

Question 14: This is _____ only discount I can offer you.

A. Ø B. one C. an D. the

Question 15: The lion was shot in _____ nose

A. its B. that C. Ø D. a

Question 16: A sailor is _____ person who works on a ship.

A. one B. Ø C. a D. the

Question 17: I enjoy playing _____ soccer while Tom enjoys _____ music. He can play _____ trumpet very well.

A. the, the, Ø B. Ø, Ø, the C. the, the, the D. Ø, Ø, Ø

Question 18: The sun gives everyone light during _____ day.

A. one B. the C. a. D. Ø

Question 19: Lily is fond of listening to _____ music while Kevin is interested in playing _____ piano.

A. the, Ø B. Ø, Ø C. the, the D. Ø, the

Question 20: Beyond _____ stars, the astronaut saw nothing but _____ space

A. the, the B. the, the C. Ø, Ø D. the, Ø

Question 21: Many people are still in _____ habit of drawing silly paintings in _____ public places.

A. the, Ø B. the, the C. Ø, Ø D. Ø, the

Question 22: A lot of businessmen and businesswomen agree that _____ knowledge of English is a must in _____ international trade today.

A. the, the B. the, an C. Ø, the D. a, Ø

Question 23: Paper money was in _____ use in China when Marco Polo visited the country in _____ thirteenth century.

A. the, the B. Ø, the C. Ø, Ø D. the, Ø

Question 24: Most boys like playing basket ball, baseball or _____ football.

A. Ø B. a C. the D. an

Question 25: Let's go and watch those students play _____ cards.

A. an B. a C. Ø D. the

Question 26: _____ horse is bigger than _____ elephant.

A. Ø, Ø B. the, a C. a, an D. an, the

Question 27: Is Professor Su going to have _____ X-ray check.

A. Ø B. a C. the D. an

Question 28: Harry is a sailor. He spends most of his life at..... sea.

A. the B. one C. this D. a

Question 29: _____ man will bring _____ nature under control.

A. The , Ø B. Ø, Ø C. Ø, Ø D. The , the

Question 30: Do you know _____ Vietnamese word for "penguin"?

A. a B. the C. an D. Ø

Question 31: Jasmine is _____ most diligent of the five.

A. an B. Ø C. the D. a

Question 32: There is special care for _____ sick and _____ elderly in this medical center.

A. the, a B. the, the C. Ø, the D. Ø, Ø

Question 33: He is neither _____ African, nor _____ Asian. He is from _____ Europe.

A. an, an, Ø B. a, an, the C. a, a, Ø D. a, an, Ø

Question 34: I remember Steven was here in _____ spring of 2001, perhaps in _____ April of that year.

A. the, the B. Ø, Ø C. a, Ø D. Ø , the

Question 35: I remember Peter lives in _____ north, so we shouldn't be walking _____ east.

A. the, Ø B. Ø, Ø C. Ø, the D. the, the

Question 36: The minister returned from Rome by _____ ship.

A. the B. Ø C. a D. one

Question 37: Vivian is _____ Chairwoman of the Association of the English Department.

A. the B. a C. one D. Ø

Question 38: _____ Fords did manage to send _____ Ford to a music school.

A. The, Ø B. Ø, Ø C. An, an D. Ø, a

Question 39: _____ Republic of Panama lies between _____ Pacific Ocean and _____ Caribbean Sea.

A. Ø, Ø, Ø B. The, the, the C. The, Ø, Ø D. Ø, the, Ø

Question 40: One tenth of _____ thousand is _____ hundred.

A. a, the B. a, a C. one, an D. one, a

Question 41: The Liaos often have _____ dinner at home but last Sunday they had _____ good dinner at a restaurant.

- A. Ø, a B. Ø, Ø C. a, a D. a, Ø

Question 42: In the afternoon _____ heavy snow began to fall. Soon _____ streets were covered with _____ snow. The poor little girl walked in _____ snow, cold and hungry.

- A. Ø, Ø, Ø, B. a, the, the, Ø C. the, the, Ø, the D. a, the, the, the

Question 43: It was... night, but... street was brightly lit.

- A. the, the B. the, a C. the, a D. the, a

Question 44: I was surprised at... readiness with which she agreed to my suggestion.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 45: My father's hours became more irregular; sometimes he stayed in... house in morning and sometimes both he and my mother were out allday.

- A. a, Ø, Ø B. the, Ø, the C. Ø, the, the D. the, the, Ø

Question 46: I have... great admiration for him.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 47: I'll tell you all about it... tomorrow night.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 48: He was... bachelor with... small income.

- A. the, the B. the, a C. a, a D. Ø, the

Question 49: He was afraid he would be late for... lunch.

- A. a B. an C. the D. Ø

Question 50: She made... long telephone call from... lobby and ate... quick lunch.

- A. a, Ø, Ø B. the, Ø, the C. a, the, the D. a, the, a

ĐÁP ÁN

1-D	2-B	3-D	4-B	5-D	6-C	7-C	8-C	9-A	10-B
11-C	12-D	13-D	14-D	15-A	16-C	17-B	18-B	19-D	20-A
21-A	22-A	23-B	24-A	25-C	26-C	27-D	28-A	29-B	30-B
31-C	32-B	33-A	34-A	35-A	36-B	37-A	38-A	39-B	40-B
41-A	42-C	43-D	44-C	45-D	46-D	47-D	48-C	49-D	50-D

LUYỆN TẬP 3

Question 1: I want _____ apple from that basket.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 2: Miss Lin speaks _____ Chinese.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 3: One of the students said, “_____ professor is late today”

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 4: Eli likes to play _____ volleyball.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 5: I bought _____ umbrella to go out in the rain.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 6: My daughter is learning to play _____ violin at her school.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 7: Please give me _____ pen that is on the counter.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 8: Albany is the capital of _____ New York state.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 9: Our neighbour has _____ cat and _____ dog.

A. a/ a B. an/ a C. the/ the D. X/ X

Question 10: _____ ink in my pen is red.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 11: It is _____ funniest book that I have ever read.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 12: Can anyone give me _____ hand, please because I have just fallen over?

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 13: She always said that when she grew up she wanted to be _____.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 14: I have left my book in _____ kitchen and I would like you to get it for me.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 15: Please meet me at the train station in _____ hour from now.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 16: I like to watch tennis on the television. It is _____ very good game.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 17: _____ president of the United States will be visiting Australia next week.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 18: July goes to _____ work on the bus.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 19: _____ golf is my favourite sport. I play once or twice _____ week if I can, but I'm not _____ very good player.

- A. X/ a/ a B. The/ a/ a C. The/ the/ the D. X/ a/ the

Question 20: I don't know what to do. It's _____ problem.

- A. quite difficult B. a quite difficult C. quite a difficult D. the quite difficult

Question 21: _____ starts at seven o'clock.

- A. School B. A school C. The school D. The schools

Question 22: We can finish the rest of the bread for _____ breakfast.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 23: We need to protect _____ environment from pollution.

- A. some B. a C. an D. the

Question 24: We often go to school by _____ bicycle.

- A. some B. a C. an D. the

Question 25: I need _____ time to think about _____ offer you made me.

- A. the/ the B. a/ the C. X/ an D. X/ the

Question 26: _____ book you ordered _____ last week is now in stock.

- A. the/ X B. a/ the C. X/ an D. X/ the

Question 27: _____ dancing is _____ more interesting activity than _____ reading.

- A. X/ X/ X B. The/ a/ the C. X/ a/ X D. X/ the/ X

Question 28: _____ recipe for _____ success is _____ hard work.

- A. The/ X/ X B. The/ a/ the C. X/ a/ X D. X/ the/ X

Question 29: _____ people who live in _____ glass houses shouldn't throw stones.

- A. the/ X B. the/ the C. X/ X D. X/ the

Question 30: I have two brothers: _____ older one is training to be _____ pilot with British Airways, _____ younger one is still at _____ school.

- A. The/ X/ the/ X B. The/ a/ the /X C. an/ a/ the/ X D. the/ the/ the/ X

Question 31: I won't be home for _____ dinner this evening. I'm meeting some friends after _____ work and we're going to _____ cinema.

- A. The/ X/ X B. X/ the/ the C. X/ X/ the D. X/ the/ X

Question 32: Danny wanted _____ new bicycle for Christmas.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 33: Jennifer tasted _____ birthday cake her mother had made.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 34: The children have _____ new teacher called Mr. Green.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 35: Dad turned on _____ radio to listen to _____ news.

- A. a/a B. a/the C. the/the D. the / a

Question 36: Alex is in Boston studying for _____ MBA.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 37: The teacher read _____ interesting article from the newspaper.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 38: There was _____ huge crowd of people outside the church.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 39: Julie talked for _____ hour about her school project.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 40: _____ European expert was invited to speak to the committee.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 41: The Mississippi river is in _____ United States of America.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 42: It would help us if you gave _____ honest opinion.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 43: I like _____ blue T-shirt over there better than _____ red one.

- A. a/a B. the / the C. the/ a D. X/X

Question 44: Their car does 150 miles _____ hour.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 45: Where's _____ USB drive I lent you last week?

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 46: Do you still live in _____ Bristol?

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 47: Carol's father works as _____ electrician.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 48: The tomatoes are 99 pence _____ kilo.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 49: What do you usually have for _____ breakfast?

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 50: Ben has _____terrible headache.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

ĐÁP ÁN

1-B	2-D	3-C	4-D	5-B	6-C	7-C	8-D	9-A	10-C
11-C	12-A	13-B	14-C	15-B	16-A	17-C	18-D	19-A	20-C
21-C	22-D	23-D	24-D	25-D	26-A	27-C	28-A	29-B	30-B
31-C	32-A	33-C	34-A	35-C	36-B	37-B	38-A	39-B	40-A
41-C	42-B	43-B	44-B	45-C	46-D	47-B	48-A	49-D	50-A

LUYỆN TẬP 4:

Question 1: Jason's father bought him bicycle that he had wanted for his birthday.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 2: Statue of Liberty was a gift of friendship from France to United States.

A. the / X B. X / the C. the / the D. X / X

Question 3: Rita is studying..... English andmath this semester.

A. the / X B. X / the C. the / the D. X / X

Question 4: Please give mecup of coffee with..... cream and sugar.

A. a / X/ X B. a / the / the C. X/X/X D. X / X/ a

Question 5: When you go to..... store, please buy..... bottle ofchocolate milk and..... dozen oranges.

A. a / X/ X/a B. a / the / the/ a C. the / the / X / a D. the / a / X / a

Question 6: John and Mary went to..... school yesterday and then studied in library before returning home.

A. the / X B. X / the C. the / the D. X / X

Question 7: There are onlyfew seats left for tonight's musical atuniversity.

A. a / X/ the B. a / the / the C. X/X/X D. X / X/ a

Question 8:Lake Erie is one of five Great Lakes in North America

A. a / X/ the B. a / the / the C. X/X/X D. X / X/ a

Question 9: What did you eat for..... breakfast this morning.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 10: Louie played..... basketball and..... baseball atBoy's Club this year.

- A. a / X/ the B. a / the / the C. a / the / the D. X / X/ a

Question 11: Rita plays violin and her sister plays guitar.

- A. the / X B. the / X C. the / the D. X / X

Question 12: David attended Princeton University.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 13: Harry has been admitted toSchool of Medicine at Midwestern university.

- A. the / X B. the / X C. the / the D. X / X

Question 14: Phil can't go to movies tonight because he has to write essay.

- A. the / X B. the / X C. the / the D. X / X

Question 15: Last night there was singing outside my house.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 16: chair which you are sitting in is broken.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 17: Every year, thousands of tourists visit Nile River.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 18: Scientists sent expedition to Mars during 1990s.

- A. an / X/ the B. an / the / the C. X / X/ the D. X / X/ X

Question 19: Mel's grandmother is in..... hospital, so we went to visit her last night.

- A. the / X B. X / the C. the / the D. X / X

Question 20: I'm on night duty. When you go tobed, I go to work.

- A. the / X B. X / the C. the / the D. X / X

Question 21: Sorry, I can't find the number. I remember writing it on back of an envelop.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 22:gold is perhaps most highly treasured metal.

- A. the / X B. X / the C. the / the D. X / X

Question 23: Mekong River islongest river in..... Vietnam.

- A. the / X/ the B. the / the / the C. X / X/ the D. the/ the/ X

Question 24: winter is usually cold, but winter of this year is warm.

- A. the / X B. X / the C. the / the D. X / X

Question 25: money you gave me is not enough to buybicycle.

- A. the / X B. X / the C. the / the D. X / X

Question 26: Look at..... sun. It is rising.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 27: We watch television after dinner.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 28: Mr. Brown boughtnew carlast week.

A. an / X B. a / X C. the / the D. X / X

Question 29: He usually travels to.....Philadelphia by..... train.

A. the / X B. X / the C. the / the D. X / X

Question 30: Miss Linda speaks..... Chinese very well although she is from..... UK.

A. the / X B. X / the C. the / the D. X / X

Question 31: swimming is good sport.

A. the / X B. X / a C. the / the D. X / the

Question 32: Please opendoor.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 33:United States isworld's biggest consumer of energy.

A. the / X B. X / a C. the / the D. X / the

Question 34: Peter likes to playvolleyball, but he is not..... good player.

A. the / X B. X / a C. the / the D. X / the

Question 35: My daughter is learning to play.....violin at school.

A. the / X B. X / a C. the / the D. X / the

Question 36: I told Mom we would behome inhour or so.

A. the / X B. X / an C. the / the D. X / a

Question 37: You can see moon in sky at nigh.

A. a / X/ the B. the / the / X C. X/X/X D. X / X/ the

Question 38:her children play in street all day.

A. the / X B. X / a C. the / the D. X / the

Question 39: blue is color I like.

A. the / X B. X / a C. the / the D. X / the

Question 40:January isfirst month of the year.

A. the / X B. X / a C. the / the D. X / the

Question 41: You frequently see this kind of violence on television.

A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 42:AIDS is incurable disease.

A. the / an B. X / an C. the / the D. X / the

Question 43: Not everyone believes thattechnology has improved quality of people's lives.

- A. the / X B. X / a C. the / the D. X / the

Question 44: Sue works as teacher inschool for blind in Ireland.school has over a thousandpupils.

- A. a / X/ the/ the B. the / the / the/ the C. the/X/the/the D. a/ a/ the/ the

Question 45: Would you show me shortest way to airport

- A. the / X B. X / a C. the / the D. X / the

Question 46: He went to England and boughthouse inLondon.

- A. X / X/ the B. the / a / X C. X/X/X D. X / a / X

Question 47: He understands French, but he speaks it badly.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 48: It is estimated that about 640 women remain illiterate in world, mostly in developing countries.

- A. a B. an C. the D. X

Question 49: Did you readbook I lent you last week.

- A. a / the B. the / the C. the / X D. X / X

Question 50:big books ontable are for my history class.

- A. the / X B. X / the C. the / the D. X / X

ĐÁP ÁN

1-C	2-C	3-D	4-A	5-D	6-B	7-A	8-B	9-D	10-C
11-C	12-D	13-A	14-C	15-D	16-C	17-C	18-A	19-D	20-D
21-C	22-B	23-D	24-B	25-D	26-C	27-D	28-B	29-D	30-B
31-B	32-C	33-C	34-B	35-A	36-B	37-B	38-D	39-D	40-D
41-D	42-B	43-D	44-D	45-C	46-D	47-D	48-C	49-C	50-C

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 3: THÌ CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ

Giới thiệu các thì trong tiếng Anh

Tiếng Anh có 12 thì cơ bản:

Quá khứ

Hiện tại

Tương lai

- **Đơn:** Quá khứ đơn/ Hiện tại đơn/ Tương lai đơn
- **Tiếp diễn:** Quá khứ tiếp diễn/ Hiện tại tiếp diễn/ Tương lai tiếp diễn
- **Hoàn thành:** Quá khứ hoàn thành/ Hiện tại hoàn thành/ Tương lai hoàn thành
- **Hoàn thành tiếp diễn:** Quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn/ Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn/ Tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn.

BÀI 1: THÌ HIỆN TẠI TIẾP DIỄN (PRESENT CONTINUOUS)

A- LÝ THUYẾT

I. CẤU TRÚC

- Khẳng định: S + be (am/is/are) + V-ing (I + am; he/she/it + is; you/we/they + are)
- Phủ định: S + am not/is not = isn't/are not = aren't + V-ing
- Câu hỏi khẳng định: Am/Is/Are + S + V-ing?
- Câu hỏi phủ định: Am + I + not + V-ing? hoặc Aren't + I + V-ing? (dạng này phổ biến hơn)
Isn't + he/she/it + V-ing?
Aren't they/you V-ing?

Ví dụ: I am giving a lecture.

The students are listening to the lecturer.

Are you working now?

Aren't you working now?

Why's he working now? (Tại sao anh ta đang làm việc?)

Where're you working now? (Anh đang làm việc ở đâu vậy?)

II. CÁCH VIẾT ĐÚNG CHÍNH TẢ CỦA HIỆN TẠI TIẾP DIỄN

1. Thông thường ta thêm "ing" vào sau động từ ở hầu hết các trường hợp

Listen → listening read → reading

2. Khi động từ tận cùng bằng một e đơn thì bỏ e trước khi thêm ing

give → giving argue → arguing (tranh cãi)

use → using promote → promoting

gaze → gazing (nhìn chăm chăm, nhìn ngây người)

observe → observing stare → staring (nhìn chăm chăm)

Ngoại trừ:

age (già đi) → ageing

dye (nhuộm) → dyeing

singe (làm cháy sém) → singeing

Và những động từ tận cùng bằng ee: agree → agreeing (đồng ý)

3. Động từ kết thúc bằng 1 phụ âm và trước đó là một nguyên âm duy nhất thì gấp đôi phụ âm cuối trước khi thêm ing

Ví dụ: hit → hitting (đánh), run → running (chạy),

stop → stopping (dừng lại), put → putting.

Động từ có hai âm tiết mà âm tiết thứ 2 kết thúc bằng 1 phụ âm và trước đó là một nguyên âm, và trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ 2 thì gấp đôi phụ âm cuối trước khi thêm ing.

Ví dụ:

admit → admitting (thừa nhận) begin → beginning (bắt đầu),

prefer → preferring (thích).

Nhưng:

budget → budgeting (dự thảo ngân sách)

enter → entering (vào) (Trọng âm không ở âm tiết cuối)

Đặc biệt: signal → signalling/signaling (ra dấu)

travel → travelling/traveling (đi, du hành)

III. CÁCH DÙNG CỦA THÌ HIỆN TẠI TIẾP DIỄN

1. Diễn tả một hành động đang xảy ra tại thời điểm nói

Thường đi với các trạng từ: now, at the moment, right now, currently, presently, at present, for the time being (lúc này)

Ví dụ: It is raining now. (Trời đang mưa).

I am not wearing a coat as it isn't cold. (Tôi không mặc áo khoác vì trời không lạnh).

Why are you sitting at my desk? (Tại sao anh ngồi ở bàn của tôi?)

What's the baby doing at the moment? – He's tearing up a £5 note.

(Đứa bé đang làm gì lúc này vậy? Nó đang xé tờ giấy bạc 5 bảng).

2. Chỉ một hành động đang xảy ra vào thời điểm hiện tại nhưng không cần thiết ở ngay lúc nói

I am reading a play by Shaw. (Dạo này tôi đang đọc một vở kịch của Shaw) [không hẳn ngay lúc nói].

He is teaching French and learning Greek. (Ông ta đang dạy tiếng Pháp và học tiếng Hy Lạp) [không hẳn ngay lúc nói].

Khi hai thì tiếp diễn có cùng chủ ngữ được liên kết bởi “and” thì trợ động từ có thể được bỏ trước động từ thứ hai như ở ví dụ trên. Điều này áp dụng cho tất cả các cặp của các thì kép.

She was knitting and listening to the radio. (Cô ta đang vừa đan vừa nghe radio).

3. Chỉ một sự sắp đặt trong tương lai gần

I'm meeting Peter tonight. He is taking me to the theatre.

(Tôi sắp sửa gặp Peter tối nay. Anh ta sẽ đưa tôi đi xem hát).

Are you doing anything tomorrow afternoon? – Yes, I'm playing tennis with Ann.

(Trưa mai anh sẽ làm gì không? – Có, tôi sẽ chơi tennis với Ann).

We are holding a conference next week. (Chúng tôi sẽ tổ chức một hội thảo tuần tới.)

Dùng thì tiếp diễn chỉ tương lai để chỉ hành động đã được lên kế hoạch từ trước và chắc chắn sẽ xảy ra.

4. Các cách dùng khác của hiện tại tiếp diễn

Với *always*:

- He is always coming home late. (Anh ấy lúc nào cũng về nhà muộn)

- She is always losing her keys. (Cô ta luôn làm mất chìa khóa)

Chỉ một hành động lặp đi lặp lại theo thói quen, thường là khi thói quen này làm phiền người nói hay người nói cho là không hợp lý.

a) we + always + thì tiếp diễn cũng có thể dùng được ở đây. Hành động lặp lại thường có tính ngẫu nhiên:

I'm always making that mistake. (Tôi luôn luôn phạm lỗi đó).

b) Chỉ một hành động mà nó xuất hiện liên tục:

He's always working. = He works the whole time. (Anh ta luôn làm việc).

Loại hành động này thường hay làm phiền người nói nhưng không nhất thiết phải như thế.

He's always reading. (Anh ta đọc sách luôn) Câu này ngụ ý anh ta tốn nhiều thời gian để đọc sách.

IV. NHỮNG ĐỘNG TỪ KHÔNG THƯỜNG DÙNG Ở THÌ TIẾP DIỄN

Thì tiếp diễn chủ yếu được dùng cho những hành động có chủ đích. Vì thế, một số động từ thường không được dùng ở thì tiếp diễn và chỉ dùng ở một thì hiện tại đó là hiện tại đơn. Những động từ này có thể ở trong các nhóm sau:

- **Những động từ chỉ cảm giác:** feel (cảm thấy), hear (nghe), see (thấy), smell (ngửi), notice (chú ý), và observe (quan sát) và feel (cảm thấy), look (xem), taste (nếm)
- **Các động từ diễn đạt tình cảm và cảm xúc** như admire (khâm phục), adore (kính yêu), appreciate (đánh giá cao), care for (thích), loathe (ghê tởm), love (yêu), mind (quan tâm), respect (kính trọng), value (đánh giá), want (muốn), wish (ao ước)
- **Các động từ chỉ hoạt động thuộc tinh thần như:** agree, appreciate (hiểu), assume (ra vẻ), believe (tin), expect (nghĩ), feel (cảm thấy), feel sure/certain (cảm thấy chắc chắn), forget (quên), know (biết), mean (nghĩa), perceive (nhận thức), realize (nhận thức), recall (nhắc), recognize (nhận ra), recollect (nhớ lại), remember (nhớ), see (hiểu), see through (nhìn thấy), suppose, think (nghĩ), trust (tin), understand (hiểu).
- **Các động từ chỉ sự sở hữu:** belong (thuộc về), own (sở hữu), possess (sở hữu), owe (nợ). How much do I owe you? (Tôi nợ anh bao nhiêu?)
- **Các trợ động từ, trừu tượng và have ở một số cách dùng nhất định**
I have (got) a dog. (have chỉ sở hữu và không dùng tiếp diễn)
Where are you now?
We are having a party at home. (Chúng tôi đang ăn tiệc tại nhà, have không có nghĩa là sở hữu)
- appear (hình như), concern (có liên quan), consist (gồm), contain (chứa), hold (chứa) (nhưng nếu hold mang nghĩa là tổ chức thì vẫn dùng được tiếp diễn, ví dụ: We are holding a meeting right now), keep (tiếp tục), matter, seem, signify (biểu hiện), sound (nghe có vẻ)
It concerns us all. (Nó liên quan đến tất cả chúng ta)
This box contains explosives. (Cái hộp này chứa chất nổ).

BÀI 2: THÌ HIỆN TẠI ĐƠN (SIMPLE PRESENT)

A – LÝ THUYẾT

I. CẤU TRÚC

- Khẳng định: S + to be (am/is/are) + adj/noun/adv
I/you/we/they + V-inf
He/she/it + V(s/es)
- Phủ định: S + am not/isn't/aren't + adj/noun/adv
S + don't + V-inf
S + doesn't + V-inf
- Nghi vấn: Am/Is/Are + S + adj/noun/adv?
Do/Does + S + V-inf?
Don't/Doesn't + S + V-inf?

Ví dụ:

I learn English every Tuesday, Thursday and Saturday.

He doesn't work on Sunday.

Do you often go to library?

When do you learn English?

II. CÁCH THÊM “S, ES”

* Thông thường ta thêm “s” vào hầu hết các trường hợp

play → plays work → works learn → learns

* Những động từ tận cùng bằng “ss, ch, sh, x và o” thì thêm es, thay vì thêm s ở ngôi thứ ba số ít:

miss → misses kiss → kisses rush → rushes
watch → watches wash → washes do → does go → goes

* Khi y đứng sau một phụ âm thì chúng ta đổi y thành i và thêm es:

carry → carries copy → copies
try → tries study → studies

* Nhưng những động từ tận cùng bằng y mà trước nó là một nguyên âm thì theo qui luật thông thường:

obey → obeys say → says

III. CÁCH DÙNG THÌ HIỆN TẠI ĐƠN

1. Hiện tại đơn dùng để diễn đạt những hành động thường xuyên diễn ra ở thời điểm hiện tại, thường được dùng với các trạng từ chỉ tần suất: *always, never, occasionally, often/frequently, sometimes, usually, hardly, seldom, rarely, scarcely, every week* (hàng tuần), *on Mondays* (vào những ngày thứ hai), *twice a year* (một năm hai lần) v.v...

How often do you wash your hair? (Bạn thường gội đầu bao nhiêu lần?)

I go to church on Sundays. (Tôi đi lễ vào những ngày Chủ nhật).

It usually rains in winter. (Trời mưa vào mùa đông).

2. Cách dùng chính của thì hiện tại đơn là để diễn đạt những hành động theo thói quen.

He smokes. (Anh ấy hút thuốc).

Dogs bark. (Chó sủa).

Cats drink milk. (Mèo uống sữa).

I never tell lies. (Thề hiện những hành động luôn luôn đúng, mang tính bản chất)

Thì này không cho chúng ta biết hành động đang diễn ra ở lúc nói hay không. Và nếu chúng ta muốn làm rõ ràng điều này thì chúng ta phải thêm một động từ trong thì hiện tại tiếp diễn:

He's working. He always works at night.

(Anh ta đang làm việc. Anh ta luôn làm việc vào ban đêm).

My dog barks a lot, but he isn't barking at the moment.

(Con chó của tôi sủa nhiều, nhưng lúc này nó không sủa).

→ Thì hiện tại đơn mang tính chất bền vững hơn, đều đặn hơn, thường xuyên diễn ra; còn thì hiện tại tiếp diễn mang tính chất tạm thời, ở một thời điểm nhất định.

3. Thì hiện tại đơn được dùng với các mệnh đề thời gian diễn đạt các hành động thói quen hay nề nếp; thường có các trạng từ *“every + day/week/month/year...; weekly; annually; once/twice/three times...a week.....”*

Đặc biệt là hay dùng “whenever và when”

Whenever it rains, the roof leaks. (Bất cứ khi nào trời mưa thì mái nhà lại dột).

When you open the door, a light goes on. (Lúc nào bạn mở cửa thì ánh sáng tràn vào).

4. Nó phải được dùng thay cho thì hiện tại tiếp diễn của những động từ không được dùng ở thì tiếp diễn như *love, see, believe v.v...*

Vì thế dùng chúng ta nói: I love you (Tôi yêu em) chứ không nói “I am loving you.”

5. Các cách dùng khác của thì hiện tại đơn.

a) Nó có thể dùng trong các tựa báo:

MASS MURDERER ESCAPES (TÊN SÁT NHÂN HÀNG LOẠT ĐÃ TRỐN THOÁT)

PEACE TALKS FAIL (CUỘC ĐÀM PHÁN HÒA BÌNH THẤT BẠI)

b) Thì này chủ yếu dùng với động từ say (nói) khi chúng ta đang hỏi về trích dẫn sách, ở thông báo hay ở những lá thư mới nhận được:

What does that notice say? – It says, “No parking”.

What does the book say? – It says, “Cook very slowly”.

Shakespeare says: Neither a borrower nor a lender be”.

Các động từ khác chỉ sự truyền thông cũng có thể dùng được.

A notice at the end of the road warns people not to go any further.

(Một thông báo ở cuối đường khuyến cáo mọi người không được đi xa hơn nữa).

c) Nó có thể được dùng cho một cuộc hành trình, lịch trình.

We leave London at 10.00 next Tuesday and arrive in Paris at 13.00. We spend two hours in Paris and leave again at 15.00. We arrive in Rome at 19.30, spend four hours in Rome...

(Chúng tôi rời London lúc 10 giờ sáng thứ Ba tới và đến Paris lúc 13 giờ, chúng tôi trải qua hai tiếng đồng hồ ở Paris và lại ra đi lúc 15 giờ. Chúng tôi đến Rome lúc 19 giờ 30, trải qua bốn tiếng đồng hồ ở Rome...)

d) Sự thật hiển nhiên; chân lí ko thể phủ nhận.

Ví dụ: The sun rises in the East.

e) Nó được dùng trong các câu điều kiện loại 1

Ví dụ: Phân biệt hiện tại đơn hay hiện tại tiếp diễn:

1. Cuckoos (not build) nests. They (use) the nests of other birds.

2. - I'm afraid I've broken one of your coffee cups.

- Don't worry. I (not like) that set anyway

3. How you (get) to work as a rule? - I usually (go) by bus but tomorrow I (go) in Tom's car

Đáp án

1. don't build - use

Câu này chỉ thói quen của chim cú cu nên ta dùng thì hiện tại đơn.

Dịch: Chim cú cu không xây tổ. Chúng sử dụng tổ của các loài chim khác

2. don't like

Không dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn cho từ “like”

Dịch: - Tôi e rằng tôi đã làm vỡ một trong những cốc cà phê của bạn

- Đừng lo lắng. Tôi cũng không thích bộ đó lắm

3. do you get - go - am going

Ta có cụm “As a rule”: thông thường, nên dùng thì hiện tại đơn. Đây là câu hỏi nên đảo trợ động từ lên trước chủ ngữ

Có trạng từ chỉ tần suất “usually” nên chia “go”

Dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn để diễn tả hành động ở thì tương lai mà đã có kế hoạch trước và chắc chắn xảy ra

Dịch: Thông thường bạn đi làm bằng gì? - Tôi thường đi xe buýt nhưng mai tôi sẽ đi bằng xe của Tom.

BÀI 3: THÌ QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN (SIMPLE PAST) & QUÁ KHỨ TIẾP DIỄN (PAST CONTINUOUS)

A – LÝ THUYẾT

I. QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN

1. Hình thức

* Động từ to be

Khẳng định: I/he/she/it + was

You/we/they + were

Phủ định: I/he/she/it + wasn't

You/we/they + weren't

Nghi vấn was + I/he/she/it + O?

Were + you/we/they + O?

Ví dụ:

- It was in 1998 that she was born.
- They weren't good men.
- Were you the best student in your class?

* Động từ thường

Khẳng định: S + V_ed/irregular verbs

Phủ định: S + didn't + V_inf

Nghi vấn: Did + S + V_inf?

Ví dụ:

- She studied hard to pass the exam.
- Last Sunday I didn't play football. I went swimming.
- Did she do her homework?

2. Lưu ý về chính tả

a) Động từ bất qui tắc (Irregular): Xem danh sách những động từ bất qui tắc ở Phụ lục.

Hình thức quá khứ đơn của những động từ bất qui tắc thì rất khác:

Ví dụ:

write → wrote see → saw eat → ate

Vì thế phải học thuộc các hình thức quá khứ đơn của động từ bất qui tắc.

b) Cách thêm “-ed” vào sau động từ

Thông thường ta thêm “-ed” vào sau động từ trong hầu hết trường hợp:

play → played learn → learned/learnt

Quy luật về gấp đôi phụ âm khi thêm *_ing* cũng được áp dụng khi thêm *ed*:

admit → admitted stop → stopped travel → travelled.

Những động từ tận cùng bằng *y* mà trước nó là một phụ âm thì đổi *y* thành *i* trước khi thêm *ed*:

carry → carried try → tried.

Nhưng trước *y* là một nguyên âm thì không đổi: *obey* → *obeyed* (vâng lời).

3. Cách dùng

Dùng diễn tả các hành động diễn ra ở quá khứ và không còn liên quan đến hiện tại, thường dùng để kể lại các câu chuyện.

Các trạng từ thường sử dụng với quá khứ: *Yesterday; two days ago, the day before; ago; already; last (last week, last month, last summer holiday...); in + mốc thời gian trong quá khứ (in 1999,...)*.

a) Thì quá khứ đơn được dùng cho những hành động đã hoàn tất trong quá khứ ở một thời điểm nhất định.

Vì thế nó được dùng:

* Cho một hành động quá khứ khi nó chỉ rõ thời điểm:

I met him yesterday. (Tôi đã gặp hắn hôm qua).

Pastuer died in 1895. (Pasteur đã chết năm 1895).

* Khi thời điểm được hỏi đến:

When did you meet him? (Anh đã gặp hắn lúc nào?)

* Khi hành động xảy ra một cách rõ ràng ở một thời điểm nhất định ngay cả khi thời điểm này không được đề cập đến:

The train was ten minutes late. (Xe lửa đã trễ mười phút).

How did you get your present job? (Anh đã có được việc làm hiện nay bằng cách nào?)

I bought this car in Montreal. (Tôi đã mua chiếc xe hơi này ở Montreal).

b) Thì quá khứ đơn hay được dùng khi trong câu có “for + khoảng thời gian trong quá khứ”

Ví dụ: He worked in that bank for your years.

(Anh ta đã làm việc ở ngân hàng đó được bốn năm). [Bây giờ anh ta không còn làm ở đó nữa].

She lived in Rome for a long time.

(Cô ta đã sống ở Rome một thời gian dài). [Bây giờ cô ta không còn sống ở đó nữa].

Những điều này sẽ rõ ràng hơn khi so sánh với hiện tại hoàn thành (present perfect)

c) Thì quá khứ đơn cũng dùng cho thói quen ở quá khứ:

used to + V_inf: I used to play football on Sunday.

She never came to visit me in 2002.

He always carried an umbrella. (Ông ta luôn luôn mang theo một cái dù).

They never drank wine. (Họ không bao giờ uống rượu).

II. QUÁ KHỨ TIẾP DIỄN

1. Hình thức

Khẳng định: I/he/she/it + was + V.ing

You/we/they + were + V-ing

Phủ định: I/he/she/it + wasn't + V.ing

You/we/they + weren't + V-ing

Nghi vấn: Was I/he/she/it + V-ing?

Were you/we/they + V-ing?

Ví dụ:

- She was learning at 8 p.m yesterday.
- They weren't studying when I came home.
- What were you doing this morning?

2. Cách dùng của thì quá khứ tiếp diễn

a) Diễn tả một hành động xảy ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ

At 10 a.m yesterday, I was at home. I was cleaning the house.

When he came, I was cleaning the house.

*** Sự kết hợp giữa quá khứ đơn + quá khứ tiếp diễn để chỉ một hành động đang xảy ra thì hành động khác xen vào. Sự kết hợp của hai thì quá khứ đơn thường chỉ những hành động liên nhau, tuần tự.**

Ví dụ:

- When I saw him, he was talking on the phone.

(Một hành động đang diễn ra: Anh ta đang nói chuyện điện thoại, thì hành động khác xen vào: Tôi nhìn thấy anh ta)

- When he saw me, he put the receiver down.

(2 hành động xảy ra liên nhau, tuần tự: Khi anh ta nhìn thấy tôi, anh ta đặt ống nghe xuống.)

b) Cấu trúc: While + QKTD, QKTD (quá khứ tiếp diễn) để diễn tả 2 hành động xảy ra song song tại một thời điểm trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: While my mother was cooking, my father was watching TV.

c) Dùng để chuyển từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp

Trực tiếp (direct speech)

Gián tiếp (indirect speech)

He said that "I am leaving tomorrow" → He said that he was leaving the following day.

He said that "I am living in London" → He said he was living in London.

d) Cũng như thì hiện tại tiếp diễn thì quá khứ tiếp diễn có thể để diễn tả một hành động đã sắp xếp, có dự định từ trước.

- I'm living tonight. I've got my plane ticket. (Tôi sẽ đi tối nay. Tôi đã mua vé máy bay rồi).

- He was busy packing, for he was leaving that night. (Anh ta bận rộn đóng gói đồ đạc vì anh ta sẽ rời đi tối đó.)

e) Quá khứ tiếp diễn cũng được dùng với always:

He was always ringing me up. (Anh ta luôn luôn gọi điện cho tôi).

He was always working. (Anh ta luôn làm việc).

Ví dụ: Chia động từ ở thì quá khứ đơn hay quá khứ tiếp diễn?

1. Sally.....was *eating*.....(eat) dinner last night when someone *knocked*..... (knock) on the door

2. Yesterday Tom and Janice *went*.....(go) to the zoo around one. They.....*saw*..... (see) many kinds of animals. They stayed at the zoo for two hours. While they.....*was walking*.....(walk) home, it.....*began*.....(begin) to rain, so they *stopped*.....(stop) at a small cafe and ...*had*.....(have) a cup of coffee.

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. Quá khứ tiếp diễn + when + quá khứ đơn: diễn tả một hành động đang diễn ra thì hành động khác xen vào.

Dịch: Tối qua, Sally đang ăn tối thì ai đó gõ cửa

2. Câu 1, 2: Đây là một câu kể bình thường nên ta dùng thì quá khứ đơn: "went; saw"

While + quá khứ tiếp diễn, quá khứ đơn: diễn tả một hành động đang xảy ra thì hành động khác xen vào, nên chỗ này chia là "was walking - began - stopped"

Dịch: Hôm qua Tom và Janice đến sở thú. Họ nhìn thấy rất nhiều loài động vật. Họ ở sở thú khoảng 2 tiếng. Trong khi họ đang đi bộ về nhà, trời bắt đầu mưa, vì thế họ dừng lại ở một quán cà phê nhỏ và uống một tách cà phê.

BÀI 4: THÌ HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH**A – LÝ THUYẾT****I. CẤU TRÚC**

Khẳng định	Phủ định	Nghi vấn
He/she/it has + PII (V_ed/Irregular verbs)	S+ haven't/hasn't + PII have not = haven't has not = hasn't	Have/Has + S + PII (ever)?
I/You/we/they have + PII (V_ed/Irregular verbs)		

Ví dụ: I have seen this film twice.

He has studied English for three years now.

II. CÁCH DÙNG

Diễn tả một hành động bắt đầu trong quá khứ và kéo dài đến hiện tại, và có thể vẫn tiếp tục trong tương lai.

1. Hiện tại hoàn thành dùng với “just” chỉ những hành động vừa mới hoàn tất trước đó.

He has just gone out = He went out a few minutes ago. (Anh ta vừa đi ra ngoài).

Đây là cách dùng đặc biệt của thì này. “Just” phải được đặt ở giữa trợ động từ và động từ chính. Sự kết hợp này được dùng chủ yếu trong xác định, mặc dù vẫn có thể dùng ở nghi vấn.

Has he just gone out? (Phải anh ta vừa đi ra ngoài không?)

Thường thì nó không được dùng ở phủ định.

2. Diễn tả những hành động mới diễn ra và để lại kết quả ở hiện tại

The road is wet. It has (just) rained.

He hasn't come yet. (Anh ta vẫn chưa đến). [Vì thế chúng tôi vẫn còn đợi].

My hands are covered with flour. I have made a cake.

It's 3 o' clock. I have been waiting for 3 hours now.

3. Phân biệt hiện tại hoàn thành với quá khứ đơn

Ví dụ 1:

- Have you had breakfast? – No, I haven't had it yet. (Anh đã ăn sáng chưa? Chưa, tôi chưa ăn).

- Yes, I had breakfast with my father. (Đã ăn)

** Câu hỏi có thể ở hiện tại hoàn thành nhưng câu trả lời ở quá khứ.*

Ví dụ 2:

Nếu người đưa thư thường đến khoảng giữa 9 giờ và 10 giờ, thì từ 9 giờ đến 10 giờ chúng ta sẽ nói:

- Has the postman come yet/this morning? (Sáng nay người đưa thư đã đến chưa?)

Nhưng sau giai đoạn từ 9 giờ đến 10 giờ thì chúng ta sẽ nói:

- Did the postman come this morning?

Ví dụ 3:

- He has slept for 2 hours. (Hành động ngủ được 2 tiếng này khá gần hiện tại)

- He slept for 2 hours. (Hành động này cách khá xa hiện tại)

4. Hiện tại hoàn thành hay đi với các trạng từ: just; recently; lately; ever; never; already; yet; since; for; until now; so far = up to now = until now; up to present.

Ví dụ:

- I have already seen this film twice.

- I have never been to London.

- I have never told lies. (Từ trước đến nay tôi không bao giờ nói dối)

(Lưu ý: Nếu nói: "I never tell lies." → "Tôi luôn luôn không bao giờ nói dối")

- Have you ever met Ms Phuong in person?

- This is the best film I have ever seen.

- I have finished a report lately. (Gần đây tôi đã hoàn thành một bản báo cáo)

- I have finished a report so far. (Cho đến nay tôi đã hoàn thành một bản báo cáo)

5. For & since

a) *Since* được dùng với một mốc thời gian hoặc một mệnh đề, và có nghĩa là từ thời điểm đó cho đến lúc nói.

I have studied English since 2000.

She has lived here since I met her.

I have been here since last week.

We've been friends since our schooldays. (Chúng tôi là bạn bè từ những ngày còn đi học).

b) *For* được dùng với một khoảng thời gian: *for six days* (trong sáu ngày), *for a long time* (một thời gian dài).

I have studied English for 13 years now. (Tôi học tiếng Anh được 13 năm nay.)

I have studied French for the past/last two years. (Tôi đã học tiếng Pháp trong 2 năm vừa qua)

6. Trường hợp đặc biệt

* *So sánh hơn nhất* + *Hiện tại hoàn thành*

* *This is the first/second/only time* + *Hiện tại hoàn thành*

Ví dụ:

This is the best wine I have ever drunk. (Đây là rượu ngon nhất mà tôi đã từng uống).

This is the worst book I have ever read. (Đây là cuốn sách dở nhất mà tôi đã từng đọc).

This is the first time/the only time I've eaten Sushi.

This is the only book he has written. (Đây là cuốn sách duy nhất mà anh ta đã viết).

* *Các thành ngữ chỉ thời gian bao gồm for, since (all day/night/week, all my life, all the time)*

We have waited all day. (Chúng tôi chờ suốt ngày) [Vẫn còn đang chờ].

He has lived here all his life. (Ông ta đã sống ở đây suốt cuộc đời) [Hiện vẫn còn ở đây]

He has always worked for us. (Ông ta vẫn luôn làm việc cho chúng tôi) [Vẫn còn làm]

* *It is + khoảng thời gian + since + thì quá khứ*

Ví dụ: It is three years since I last saw him. (Ba năm rồi kể từ khi tôi gặp anh ta lần cuối)

BÀI 5: THÌ HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN

A – LÝ THUYẾT

I. CẤU TRÚC

Khẳng định	Phủ định	Nghi vấn
have/has + been + V_ing	haven't/hasn't + been + V_ing	Have/Has + S + been + V_ing?

Ví dụ: I have been studying English for 3 years now.

She hasn't been waiting for a long time.

Have you been waiting for a long time?

What have you been studying for 3 years now?

Lưu ý: Không có dạng bị động của thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn.

II. CÁCH DÙNG

* Giống thì hiện tại hoàn thành nhưng nhấn mạnh tính liên tục, tiếp diễn của hành động

Ví dụ: It began raining two hours ago and it is still raining.

→ *How long has it been raining?*

→ *It has been raining for two hours.*

* Lưu ý: Hiện tại hoàn thành nhấn mạnh kết quả của hành động còn hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn nhấn mạnh tính liên tục của hành động.

Ví dụ 1:

Her clothes are covered in paint. She has been painting the ceiling.

The ceiling was white. Now it is red. She has painted the ceiling.

Ví dụ 2:

Joe has been eating too much recently. He should eat less.

Somebody has eaten all my chocolates. The box is empty.

* Những động từ mang tính quá trình thường được dùng với thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn là: learn, study, live, rain, sleep, drive, sit, snow (tuyết rơi), stand, stay, wait, work, play.

Ví dụ: - I have been waiting for 2 hours.

- It has been raining all day.

* Lưu ý: Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn và hiện tại hoàn thành thường có thể dùng qua lại lẫn nhau. Ví dụ:

How long have you learnt English?

How long have you been learning English?

It has snowed for a long time. (Trời đã có tuyết được một lúc lâu).

It has been snowing for a long time.

Tuy nhiên, có một số động từ không được dùng ở tiếp diễn (xem lại bài động từ P1) tức là hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn không thể thay hiện tại hoàn thành.

Ví dụ:

- How long have you known each other? (Bạn biết nhau bao lâu rồi?)

- He's been in hospital since his accident. (Anh ta đã ở bệnh viện từ lúc xảy ra tai nạn).

Ở câu chủ động, không có hình thức tiếp diễn của to be.

Lưu ý: Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn diễn đạt một hành động mang tính liên tục, quá trình nên ta không dùng nó khi đề cập số lần.

Ví dụ: - *I have seen this film twice. (Không dùng: I have been seeing this film twice)*

- *I've knocked 5 times. I don't think anybody's in. (Tôi đã gõ cửa 5 lần. Tôi không nghĩ là có ai ở trong nhà cả).*

Nhưng nếu không dùng cách đếm số lần thì ta dùng hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn:

I've been knocking. I don't think anybody's in.

BÀI 6: THÌ QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH & QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN A – LÝ THUYẾT

I. QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH (THE PAST PERFECT TENSE)

1. Hình thức

- Khẳng định: had + PII (V_ed/irregular verbs)

Ví dụ: *When I arrived, she had left.*

(Diễn tả một hành động xảy ra trước một hành động khác trong quá khứ.)

- Phủ định: had not = hadn't + PII

Ví dụ: *I hadn't finished my homework before my mother came back home.*

- Nghi vấn: Had + S + PII

Nghi vấn phủ định: Hadn't + S + PII?

Ví dụ: *Why hadn't he finished it before 6 p.m yesterday?*

2. Cách dùng

Diễn tả một hành động xảy ra trước một hành động khác hoặc trước một mốc thời gian trong quá khứ.

➤ **Cấu trúc: Mệnh đề ở quá khứ hoàn thành, before/by/by the time + Mốc thời gian hoặc mệnh đề ở quá khứ**

➤ **Cấu trúc: After + Mệnh đề ở quá khứ hoàn thành, mệnh đề ở quá khứ**

Ví dụ: *I had brushed my teeth before I went to bed. = Before going to bed, I had brushed my teeth*

After I had brushed my teeth, I went to bed. = After having brushed my teeth, I went to bed.

I had brushed my teeth by the time I went to bed.

➤ **Các mệnh đề với When:**

- Quá khứ hoàn thành được dùng sau when khi chúng ta muốn nhấn mạnh rằng hành động thứ nhất đã hoàn tất trước khi hành động thứ hai bắt đầu:

When I arrived, the lesson had already started. (Khi tôi đến, bài học đã bắt đầu rồi)

- When có thể dùng với quá khứ đơn, quá khứ tiếp diễn hoặc quá khứ hoàn thành.

Ví dụ: *When I arrived, the lecturer was writing something on the board.*

(Khi tôi đến, giáo viên đang viết trên bảng.)

When I arrived, the lesson started. (Hai hành động tuần tự: Tôi đến rồi bài học bắt đầu)

➤ **Phân biệt hiện tại hoàn thành và quá khứ hoàn thành**

- *She has been waiting for 2 hours.*

(Một hành động kéo dài liên tục từ quá khứ cho đến hiện tại)

- *She had been waiting for 2 hours when he came.*

(Khi anh ta đến cô ta đã đợi được 2 tiếng và có thể đợi hơn nữa)

- *I had lived in Hanoi for 20 years before I moved to HCM city.*

(Dùng quá khứ hoàn thành để nhấn mạnh kết quả của hành động: đã sống được ở Hà Nội 20 năm)

➤ **Chuyển từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp:**

He said: "I have been in England for 10 years."

→ *He said that he had been in England for 10 years.*

➤ **Sự khác biệt: When + QK, QK & When + QK, QKHT**

When I opened the window, the bird flew out. (2 hành động xảy ra liên tiếp)

When I opened the window, the bird had slept. (Một hành động xảy ra trước một hành động khác)

* Ví dụ:

- *She heard voices and realized that there were three people in the the next room.*

(Cô ta đã nghe những tiếng nói và nhận ra rằng có ba người ở phòng bên cạnh).

- *She saw empty glasses and cups and realized that people had been in the room.*

(Cô ta đã nhìn thấy những ly tách rỗng và nhận ra đã có người ở trong phòng). (Họ không còn ở đó nữa).

➤ **Quá khứ hoàn thành có thể được dùng với as soon as, till/until**

I went out as soon I had finished my work.

I didn't go out until I had finished my work.

II. THÌ QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN (THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE)

1. Hình thức

Khẳng định: *had been + V_ing.*

Phủ định: *hadn't been + V_ing.*

Nghi vấn: *Had + S + been + V_ing*

Lưu ý: Không có bị động của thì quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn.

2. Cách dùng

Quá khứ hoàn thành và quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn được dùng để diễn tả những hành động xảy ra trước một thời điểm trong quá khứ. Quá khứ hoàn thành nhấn mạnh kết quả của hành động, quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn nhấn mạnh tính quá trình, tính liên tục của hành động.

Các lưu ý về cách dùng của quá khứ hoàn thành tiếp diễn cũng tương tự như cho thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn:

Thường dùng với các động từ thể hiện tính quá trình (learn, study...), không dùng với động từ to be hoặc các động từ không đi với thì tiếp diễn (xem lại)...

Ví dụ: He had been painting the door when I came.

(Hành động sơn cái cửa khá gần hành động tôi đến). [Có lẽ nước sơn vẫn còn ướt].

Nhưng: He had painted the door when I came. (Anh ta đã sơn xong cái cửa)

[Có lẽ hành động sơn của anh ta đã xảy ra trước hành động tôi đến khá lâu].

BÀI 7: THÌ TƯƠNG LAI ĐƠN**A – LÝ THUYẾT****I. HÌNH THỨC**

Khẳng định (Affirmative)	Phủ định (Negative)	Nghi vấn (interrogative)
will + V_inf (động từ nguyên mẫu không 'to') (I/we + will/shall + V_inf)	will not (= won't) + V_inf shan't + V_inf	Will + S + V_inf? Won't + S + V_inf?

Lưu ý: Ta ít khi dùng “shall” mà hay dùng “will” với “I/we”. Tuy nhiên, “shall” được dùng trong một số trường hợp sau:

- Trong câu hỏi đuôi sau let's:

Let's go, shall we? (Đi nào, phải không?)

- Shall dùng cho ý quyết tâm:

Quyết tâm thường được diễn tả bởi will. Nhưng “shall” mang tính chất nhấn mạnh hơn:

We shall fight and we shall win. (Chúng ta sẽ đánh và chúng ta nhất định thắng).

II. CÁCH DÙNG

- Thường dùng với các trạng từ chỉ tương lai: tomorrow, next (week, month, year, summer, Sunday...), in + một quãng thời gian (Ví dụ: in two years --> trong 2 năm tới)

Lưu ý: “in the last two years” = trong 2 năm vừa qua --> dùng với hiện tại hoàn thành

Ví dụ: I will (= I'll) meet him tomorrow.

I shall be 26 next week.

- Cấu trúc: When + Mệnh đề 1 ở hiện tại, Mệnh đề 2 ở tương lai

Ví dụ: When she finishes her work, I'll go out with her.

1. Để diễn tả ý kiến, ý giả định, ước đoán của người nói về tương lai. Những ý nghĩa này có thể được trình bày bởi các động từ như: assume (cho là), be afraid (e ngại), be/feel sure (tin chắc), believe (tin), doubt (ngghi ngờ), expect (mong chờ), hope (hi vọng), know (biết), suppose (giả sử), think (nghĩ), wonder (tự hỏi)

I hope that you'll get good marks.

I'm afraid that he won't come.

(I'm sure) he'll come back. (Tôi tin chắc rằng hắn ta sẽ trở lại).

(I suppose) they'll sell the house. (Tôi cho là họ sẽ bán căn nhà).

- Đi kèm với các trạng từ chỉ khả năng như perhaps (có lẽ), will + possibly (có thể được)/probably (có thể)/certainly/surely (chắc chắn) + V_inf:

(Perhaps) we'll find him at the hotel. (Có lẽ chúng ta sẽ gặp anh ấy ở khách sạn).

I will certainly come to help you.

2. Thì tương lai đơn được dùng tương tự cho các hành động theo thói quen ở tương lai mà ta cho là sẽ xảy ra

Spring will come again. (Mùa xuân sẽ lại về).

Birds will build nests. (Chim sẽ xây tổ).

3. Thì tương lai đơn được dùng trong câu điều kiện loại 1 chỉ các giả thiết có thể xảy ra trong tương lai

If I drop this glass, it will break. (Nếu tôi làm rơi cái ly này nó sẽ bể ngay).

When it gets warmer the snow will start to melt. (Khi trời ấm hơn thì tuyết sẽ bắt đầu tan).

I'm putting this letter on top of the pile so that he'll read it first.

(Tôi để lá thư này trên cùng của chồng giấy tờ để ông ta sẽ đọc nó trước tiên).

III. SO SÁNH: Will với want/wish/would like

I will buy a car = I want to buy it = I intend to buy it

(Tôi sẽ mua nó/Tôi muốn mua nó/Tôi dự định mua nó).

Thì tương lai đơn nói về một quyết định mà không có kế hoạch trước và không chắc chắn sẽ diễn ra.

want = wish = would like + to + V_{inf}: diễn tả mong muốn, không có dự định từ trước.

Lưu ý: Cách dùng “would like” trong câu mời:

- Would you like a cup of coffee?

- No, thanks. I won't have anything.

IV. SO SÁNH 3 CÁCH DÙNG SAU:

- Tương lai gần: “be going to V_{inf}”

- Hiện tại tiếp diễn dùng như một hình thức tương lai “be V_{ing}”

- Tương lai đơn: “will”

Ví dụ:

- I'm meeting Tom at the station at six. (Đã có kế hoạch từ trước, Tom và tôi đã dàn xếp trước, chắc chắn sẽ diễn ra)

- I'm going to meet Tom at the station at six. (Tôi sẽ gặp Tom tại ga lúc 6 giờ)

→ Hành động có kế hoạch ngay lúc nói, chắc chắn sẽ diễn ra. Nhưng không có dàn xếp với Tom nên Tom có thể sẽ ngạc nhiên.

- *I'll meet Tom at the station at six. (Hành động không có kế hoạch, không chắc chắn sẽ diễn ra)*

V. “ BE GOING TO”

* Be going to dùng khi có dấu hiệu khiến người nói tin chắc một hành động sẽ diễn ra

Look at those clouds! It's going to rain. (Trông mây kia kìa ! Trời sắp đổ mưa rồi đấy).

* were/was + going to + verb: tôi đã định làm gì đó

I was going to meet Tom at the station but I got an accident.

* Be going to có thể được dùng với các mệnh đề chỉ thời gian khi chúng ta muốn nhấn mạnh chủ ý của chủ thể:

He is going to be a dentist when he grows up. (Khi lớn lên anh ta sẽ trở thành nha sĩ).

What are you going to do when you get your degree? (Khi nhận bằng cậu sẽ làm gì?)

Tuy nhiên, thông thường thì tương lai đơn will/shall được dùng với các mệnh đề thời gian.

BÀI 8: THÌ TƯƠNG LAI TIẾP DIỄN
TƯƠNG LAI HOÀN THÀNH
& TƯƠNG LAI HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN

A – LÝ THUYẾT

I. THÌ TƯƠNG LAI TIẾP DIỄN

1. Hình thức

Khẳng định: S + will + be + V-ing.

Phủ định: S + will not (= won't) + be + V-ing.

Nghi vấn: Will + S + be + V-ing?

Nghi vấn phủ định: Won't + S + be + V-ing

Dùng với các từ hỏi: What, when....

Ví dụ: What will you be studying tomorrow?

2. Cách dùng

Thì này có hai cách dùng:

- Dùng như một thì tiếp diễn thông thường.
- Diễn tả một tương lai không có ý định.

a) Thì tương lai tiếp diễn được dùng như một thì tiếp diễn thường.

Giống như các thì tiếp diễn khác, nó thường được dùng với một thời điểm trong tương lai.

Ví dụ: Hãy tưởng tượng ra một lớp học vào thời điểm 9.30 sáng, ta có thể nói:

Now they are sitting in their classroom. They are listening to a tape. This time tomorrow they will be sitting in the cinema. They will be watching a film. On Saturday there is no class. So on Saturday they will not be sitting in the classroom. They will be doing other things. Bill will be playing tennis. Ann will be shopping. George will still be having breakfast.

(Bây giờ họ đang ngồi trong lớp học. Họ đang nghe băng cassette. Vào giờ này ngày mai họ sẽ đang ngồi trong rạp xi-nê. Họ sẽ xem một bộ phim. Không có giờ học vào ngày thứ Bảy. Vì thế vào ngày thứ Bảy họ sẽ không ngồi trong lớp học. Họ sẽ làm các việc khác. Bill sẽ chơi tennis. Ann sẽ đi mua sắm. George vẫn sẽ đang ăn sáng).

b) Thì tương lai tiếp diễn được dùng để diễn tả tương lai không có ý định:

Ví dụ: I will be helping Mary tomorrow. (Ngày mai tôi sẽ giúp Mary).

Câu này không có ý nói rằng người nói đã sắp xếp để giúp Mary hoặc anh ta có ý muốn giúp Mary. Nó chỉ nói lên rằng hành động này sẽ xảy ra. Thì tương lai tiếp diễn dùng theo cách này hơi giống với thì hiện tại tiếp diễn, nhưng khác ở các điểm sau: Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn ám

chỉ một hành động có chủ ý trong tương lai. Thì tương lai tiếp diễn thường ám chỉ một hành động sẽ xảy ra theo xu hướng thông thường của sự việc. Do đó nó ít xác định hơn và có tính tình cờ hơn thì hiện tại tiếp diễn:

I'm seeing Tom tomorrow. (Tôi định ngày mai gặp Tom).

I'll be seeing Tom tomorrow. (Ngày mai tôi sẽ gặp Tom).

Câu đầu tiên ám chỉ Tom hoặc người nói đã có chủ ý gặp nhau, còn câu thứ hai ám chỉ rằng Tom và người nói sẽ gặp nhau như lệ thường (có lẽ họ làm việc chung với nhau).

c) So sánh giữa thì tương lai tiếp diễn với tương lai đơn.

- Giống: Đều diễn tả các hành động không có kế hoạch từ trước

I'll meet him tomorrow. → Tương lai đơn: thể hiện ý định, không có kế hoạch từ trước.

I'll be meeting him tomorrow. → Tương lai tiếp diễn: chỉ sự thường lệ, mang tính chất kế, không có ý định.

I am meeting him tomorrow. → Tương lai gần: Có sắp xếp, kế hoạch từ trước.

Ví dụ:

Tom won't cut the grass: có nghĩa là Tom từ chối và không muốn cắt cỏ, trong khi: Tom won't be cutting the grass: chỉ là một câu kể không có ý nói về cảm nghĩ của Tom. Có lẽ Tom đi vắng, hoặc bị bệnh, hoặc đang làm việc khác.

* Đối với câu hỏi, thường dùng thì tương lai tiếp diễn để hỏi về những hành động mang tính chất thường lệ.

d) Các ví dụ về các hình thức tương lai khác nhau:

Hãy tưởng tượng ra rằng chúng ta hỏi năm người về các kế hoạch của họ cho ngày thứ Bảy kế tiếp, ta nói:

What are you doing/going to do on Saturday? (Các cậu sẽ làm gì vào ngày thứ Bảy?)

(1) Peter đã dự định chơi gôn với George, vì thế anh ta sẽ nói:

I'm playing/going to play golf with George. (Tôi sẽ chơi gôn với George).

(2) Mary đã quyết định ở nhà và làm mứt, vì thế cô ta sẽ nói:

I'm staying/going to stay at home. I'm going to make jam. (Tôi sẽ ở nhà. Tôi sẽ làm mứt).

(3) Kế hoạch của Andrew tùy thuộc vào thời tiết, vì thế anh ta có thể nói:

If it's fine I'll work/I'm going to work in the garden. (Nếu trời đẹp tôi sẽ làm vườn)

(4) Ann chưa có kế hoạch gì cả, nhưng cô ta có thể nói:

Perhaps I'll take/I expect I'll take/I'll probably take/I suppose/I'll take my children for a walk. (Có lẽ tôi sẽ/Tôi mong là tôi sẽ/có thể tôi sẽ/Tôi cho là tôi sẽ đưa mấy đứa nhỏ đi dạo).

(5) Bill luôn luôn phải làm việc vào ngày thứ Bảy; vì thế anh ta sẽ nói:

Oh, I'll be working as usual. (Ồ, tôi sẽ làm việc như thường lệ).

(Không có hình thức nào khác cho nghĩa này cả).

II. THÌ TƯƠNG LAI HOÀN THÀNH (FUTURE PERFECT) & TƯƠNG LAI HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN (FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS)

1. Thì tương lai hoàn thành

❖ Hình thức:

- Khẳng định: will + have + PII (Ved - irregular verb)
- Phủ định: won't + have + PII (Ved - irregular verb)
- Nghi vấn: Will + S + have + PII?

Ví dụ: By this time next year, I'll have finished the course.

❖ Cách dùng:

Thì tương lai hoàn thành thường được dùng với thành ngữ thời gian với by đi đầu: by then, by this time (trước lúc đó), by the 24th (trước ngày 24), by the time + Mệnh đề ở hiện tại chỉ tương lai.

By the time he comes here, I'll have finished my work.

By the end of next month he will have been here for then years.

(Vào cuối tháng tới nó đã ở đây được 10 năm).

Nó được dùng cho một hành động mà tại một thời điểm trong tương lai nó đã là quá khứ hoặc vừa mới hoàn tất.

Hãy tưởng tượng rằng hôm nay là ngày 3 – 12 và David đang rất lo lắng về bài thi mà anh ta sẽ làm vào ngày 13-12. Một ai đó lập kế hoạch mở tiệc, có thể nói:

We'd better wait till December 14th. David will have had his exam by then, so he'll be able to enjoy himself.

(Chúng ta nên đợi đến ngày 14 – 12. Lúc đó David đã thi xong, vì vậy cậu ta sẽ có thể vui sướng dự tiệc).

Cũng cần lưu ý:

I save £50 a month and I start in January. So by the end of the year I will/shall have saved £ 600.

(Mỗi tháng tôi để dành được 50 bảng và tôi đã bắt đầu hồi tháng Giêng. Vì thế đến cuối năm tôi sẽ để dành được 600 bảng).

2. Thì tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn

❖ **Hình thức:**

- Khẳng định: will + have been + Ving.
- Khẳng định: will not (= won't) + have been + Ving.
- Nghi vấn: Will + S + have been + Ving.

❖ **Cách dùng:**

Giống như thì tương lai hoàn thành, nó được dùng với một thành ngữ chỉ thời gian với “by” đi đầu:

By the end of this year he'll have been acting for thirty years.

(Cuối năm nay ông ấy sẽ làm diễn viên được khoảng 30 năm).

Mối quan hệ giữa thì tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn với thì tương lai hoàn thành cũng giống như thì hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn với thì hiện tại hoàn thành nghĩa là thì tương lai hoàn thành tiếp diễn có thể được dùng thay cho thì tương lai hoàn thành:

a) Khi hành động tiếp diễn liên tục:

By the end of the month he will have been living/working/studying here for ten years.

(Đến cuối tháng này anh ta đã sống/làm việc/học tập ở đây được 10 năm).

b) Khi hành động được diễn tả như một hành động liên tục.

By the end of the month he will have been training horses/climbing mountains for twenty years.

(Đến cuối tháng này ông ta đã huấn luyện ngựa/leo núi được 20 năm).

Nhưng nếu ta đề cập đến số lượng ngựa, hoặc núi, hoặc chia hành động này ra theo bất cứ phương diện nào, ta phải dùng thì tương lai hoàn thành:

By the end of the month he will have trained 600 horses/climbed 50 mountains.

(Đến cuối tháng này ông ta sẽ huấn luyện được 600 con ngựa/leo được 50 ngọn núi).

B – LUYỆN TẬP CÁC THÌ CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ

LUYỆN TẬP 1

Choose the best answer to complete these following sentences.

Question 1: Early signs of the rebirth of civilization in Western Europe.....to appear in the 11th century as tradeagain in Italy.

A. were beginning / will start

B. began / started

C. would begin / starts

D. began / would be starting

Question 2: The author.....quite annoyed when shethat the publisher was very dishonest.

A. will be / will determine

B. was / determines

C. would be / will determine

D. was / determined

Question 3: He and his family at our home in Canada when he to a conference, and that was a great experience, too.

A. were staying / come B. will stay / came C. stayed / would come D. stayed / came

Question 4: When he that his nomination would mean competing with his closest friend he to withdraw.

A. realizes / will be decided

B. realized / was deciding

C. will realize / decides

D. realized / decided

Question 5: The immune system.....by distinguishing between the body's own materials and things that foreign to the body.

A. works / is

B. will be working / are

C. works / are

D. was working / will be

Question 6: Women and children.....a right to live their lives free from all forms of violence and abuse, and society..... a duty to recognize and defend this right.

A. would have / has

B. have / has

C. will have / would have

D. have / had

Question 7: For a long time people that the world was fiat and that people could fall off the edge.

A. may think

B. thought

C. are thought

D. will be thinking

Question 8: The robber sure that no one before he crept through the window.

A. made / is looking

B. makes / looks

C. will make / is looking

D. made / was looking

Question 9: Make sure you the electricity before youmending this light switch.

A. disconnect / start

B. are disconnecting / were starting

C. disconnect / started

D. disconnect / will start

Question 10: Because anxiety often more than one cause and is experienced in highly individual ways, its treatment usually.....more than one type of therapy.

A. will have / was requiring

B. has / requires

C. had / will be requiring

D. has / had required

Question 11: The workers.....to go on strike when the management their demand for higher wages.

A. decide / will refuse

B. decided / refused

C. will decide / will refuse

D. would decide / refuse

Question 12: Most peoplebeing disturbed while they

A. don't like / are working

B. would like / worked

C. like / worked

D. don't like / didn't like

Question 13: In public pools, there ---- a much higher level of safety with trained lifeguards on duty whenever they ---- open.

A. will be / were

B. was / are

C. is / are

D. would be / are

Question 14: The Internet ---- computer users easily to connect to other computers and information stores wherever they ---- across the world.

A. allows / are

B. allowed / will be

C. will allow / would be

D. were allowing / will be

Question 15: ColumbusAmerica more than 400 years ago.

A. discovered

B. has discovered

C. had discovered

D. he has gone

Question 16: He fell down when hetowards the church.

A. run

B. runs

C. was running

D. had run

Question 17: Wethere when our father died.

A. still lived

B. lived still

C. was still living

D. were still living

Question 18: Iin the room now.

A. am being

B. was being

C. have been being

D. am

Question 19: Ito New York three times this year.

A. have been

B. was

C. were

D. had been

Question 20: I will come and see you before Ifor America.

A. leave

B. will leave

C. have left

D. shall leave

Question 21: John..... a book when I saw him.

A. is reading

B. read

C. was reading

D. reading

Question 22: He said he.....return later.

A. will

B. would

C. can

D. would be

Question 23: Jackthe door.

A. has just opened

B. open

C. will have opened

D. opening

Question 24: WeDoris since last Sunday.

A. don't see

B. haven't seen

C. didn't see

D. hadn't seen

Question 25: When I last saw him, he.....in London.

A. has lived **B.** is living **C.** was living **D.** has been living

Question 26: The man got out the car ,round to the back and opened the boot.

A. walking **B.** walked **C.** walks **D.** walk

Question 27: For several years his ambitionto be a pilot.

A. is **B.** has been **C.** was **D.** had been

Question 28: Henry..... into the restaurant when the writer was having dinner.

A. was going **B.** went **C.** has gone **D.** did go

Question 29: He will take the dog out for a walk as soon as hedinner.

A. finish **B.** finishes **C.** will finish **D.** shall have finished

Question 30: Oil..... if you pour it on water.

A. floated **B.** floats **C.** will be floated **D.** float

Question 31: While her husband was in the army, Janet..... to him twice a week.

A. was writing **B.** wrote **C.** was written **D.** had written

Question 32: According to this newspaper, John is saida new record for the long jump.

A. to have established **B.** establishing **C.** to establish **D.** established

Question 33: I come from Canada.Whereyoufrom?

A. do/come **B.** did/ come **C.** are/ coming **D.** have/come

Question 34: When I last..... Jane,sheto find a job.

A. see/was trying **B.** saw/was trying **C.** have seen/tried **D.** saw/tried

Question 35: Iat 8 o'clock every morning.

A. was getting up **B.** got up **C.** is getting up **D.** get up

Question 36: I have never played badminton before.This is the first time Ito play.

A. try **B.** tried **C.** have tried **D.** am trying

Question 37: Since.....,I have heard nothing from him.

A. he had left **B.** he left **C.** he has left **D.** he was left

Question 38:you go to the dentist?

A. how often are **B.** how often do **C.** how often does **D.** how are

Question 39: I don't understand this sentence.What?

A. does mean this word **B.** have this word mean
C. means this word **D.** does this word mean

Question 40: Johntennis once or twice a week.

A. usually play **B.** is usually playing **C.** usually plays **D.** have usually played

Question 41: It was noisy next door. Our neighborsa party.

- A. had B. were having C. had had D. have had

Question 42: Itdark. Shall I turn on the light?

- A. is getting B. get C. got D. has got

Question 43: Ifor Christine. Do you know where she is?

- A. look B. looked C. am looking D. looks

Question 44: At 5 o'clock yesterday evening, I..... my clothes.

- A. am ironing B. have ironed C. ironed D. was ironing

Question 45: "Are you ready, Ann?" "Yes,I..... "

- A. am coming B. come C. came D. have came

Question 46: Whyat me like that? What's the matter?

- A. do you look B. have you looked C. did you look D. are you looking

Question 47: Ialong the street when I suddenly heard footsteps behind me.

- A. was walking B. am walking C. walk D. walked

Question 48: SheGerman for two years.

- A. has learnt B. is learning C. learn D. learns

Question 49: I usuallyaway at weekends.

- A. have gone B. goes C. am going D. go

Question 50: The earthround the sun.

- A. go B. has gone C. went D. goes

ĐÁP ÁN

1-B	2-D	3-D	4-D	5-C	6-B	7-B	8-D	9-A	10-B
11-B	12-A	13-C	14-A	15-A	16-C	17-D	18-D	19-A	20-A
21-C	22-B	23-A	24-B	25-C	26-B	27-B	28-B	29-B	30-B
31-B	32-A	33-A	34-B	35-D	36-C	37-B	38-B	39-D	40-C
41-B	42-A	43-C	44-D	45-A	46-D	47-A	48-A	49-D	50-D

LUYỆN TẬP 2

Choose the best answer to complete these following sentences.

Question 1: When I last saw him, hein London.

- A. has lived B. is living C. was living D. has been living

Question 2: Who food in your family when your Mom is away?

- A. cooks B. is cooking C. has been cooking D. cooked

Question 3: The trainhalf an hour ago.

- A. has been leaving B. left C. has left D. had left

Question 4: Jack the door.

- A. has just painted B. paint C. will have painted D. painting

Question 5: My sister for you since yesterday.

- A. is looking B. was looking C. has been looking D. looked

Question 6: I Texas State University now.

- A. am attending B. attend C. was attending D. attended

Question 7: He has been selling motorbikes.....

- A. ten years ago B. Since ten years C. for ten years ago D. for ten years

Question 8: Where is John? – He his car in the garage.

- A. repairs B. is repairing C. has repaired D. repaired

Question 9: I love this film. I it four or five times already.

- A. see B. have seen C. had seen D. will see

Question 10: Have you visited any European countries?

Yes. I Spain and Italy two years ago.

- A. visited B. have visited C. had visited D. will visit

Question 11: They table tennis when their father comes back home.

- A. will play B. will be playing C. play D. would play

Question 12: By Christmas, Ifor Mr. Smith for six years.

- A. shall have been working B. shall work
C. have been working D. shall be working

Question 13: She the living room when she heard a strange noise in the kitchen.

- A. has cleaned B. has been C. cleaning D. was cleaning

Question 14: I envy you. At five tomorrow you some tan on the beach at the seaside.

- A. will get B. will be getting
C. will have gotten D. will have been getting

Question 15: You arrived two days ago. You are going to leave next Sunday. By the time you leave, you nine days here.

- A. spend B. have spent C. are spending D. will have spent

Question 16: Where is he? I for him since three o'clock!

- A. am waiting B. have been waiting C. was waiting D. had been waiting

Question 17: I went to Belgium last month. I there before. It's a beautiful country.

A. have never been B. had never been C. never was D. never been

Question 18: He said that his mother would be very upset when she that he had lost his job.

A. learns B. learned C. had learned D. would learn

Question 19: I can't leave now. I for an important telephone call.

A. wait B. am waiting C. had been waiting D. was waiting

Question 20: I have been waiting for you

A. since early morning B. since 9a.m C. for two hours D. All are correct

Question 21: Almost everyone for home by the time we arrived.

A. leave B. left C. leaves D. had left

Question 22: By the age of 25, he two famous novels.

A. wrote B. writes C. has written D. had written

Question 23: What does she do? – She the piano in a local orchestra.

A. plays B. played C. has played D. is playing

Question 24: I couldn't cut the grass because the lawn mower a few days previously.

A. broke down B. has been broken C. had broken down D. breaks down

Question 25: He must be very hungry. He anything in three days.

A. didn't eat B. hasn't eaten C. hadn't eaten D. wasn't eating

Question 26: First he as a salesman, then as a night clerk, and after that he quit his job and became a writer.

A. worked B. has worked C. had worked D. had been working

Question 27: After Ilunch, I looked for my bag.

A. had B. had had C. have has D. have had

Question 28: By the end of next year, George English for two years.

A. will have learned B. will learn C. has learned D. would learn

Question 29: I usually to work by bus. It takes me about forty minutes to get to work by bus.

A. go B. am going C. have gone D. have been going

Question 30: Yesterday my daughter flew in an airplane for the first time in her life. She..... in an airplane before.

A. has never flown B. was never flying C. had never flown D. had flown

Question 31: Are you going to Lena's party? – No. I home tonight. I'm a little tired.

A. stay B. am staying C. stayed D. stayed

Question 32: When the first child was born, theyfor three years.

- A. have been married B. had been married
C. will be married D. will have been married

Question 33: I think the weathernice later.

- A. will be B. be C. had D. has been

Question 34: Shevery angry when she knows this.

- A. shall be B. has been C. will have been D. will be

Question 35: Tom and Mary for Vietnam tomorrow.

- A. leave B. are leaving C. leaving D. are left

Question 36: He alwaysfor a walk in the evening.

- A. go B. is going C. goes D. going

Question 37: Tomorrow Imy grandparents.

- A. am going to visit B. will have visited C. have visited D. visit

Question 38: I to the same barber since last year.

- A. am going B. have been going C. go D. had gone

Question 39: Her father when she was a small girl.

- A. dies B. died C. has died D. had died

Question 40: I'm going on holiday on Saturday. This time next week Ion a beach in the sea.

- A. will lie B. am lying C. will be lying D. should be lying

Question 41: Pasteurin the 19th century.

- A. was living B. lived C. had lived D. has lived

Question 42: He ... to school when he had a puncture.

- A. shall drive B. am driving C. drove D. was driving

Question 43: There ... some good news about my family lately.

- A. is B. were C. has been D. have been

Question 44: Since 1980, scientists all over the world ... a lot of things to fight against AIDS.

- A. have done B. are going C. did D. had done

Question 45: At present, they ... at their office.

- A. have worked B. are going to work C. are working D. have been working

Question 46: Whenever my little sister ..., all of us will run to her.

- A. cries B. will cry C. would cry D. cried

Question 47: Yesterday I ... in the park when I saw Dick playing football.

- A.** was walking **B.** is walking **C.** has walked **D.** has been walking

Question 48: I ... a film for two years up to now.

- A.** don't see **B.** haven't seen **C.** won't see **D.** didn't see

Question 49: Peter ... for her wife's letter since last Friday. Now he hasn't received yet.

- A.** was waiting **B.** waits **C.** waited **D.** has been waiting

Question 50: I'm feeling sick. Iso much chocolate last night.

- A.** needn't to eat **B.** did not eat
C. musn't eat **D.** shouldn't have eaten

ĐÁP ÁN

1-C	2-A	3-B	4-A	5-C	6-A	7-D	8-B	9-B	10-A
11-B	12-A	13-D	14-B	15-D	16-B	17-B	18-B	19-B	20-D
21-D	22-D	23-A	24-C	25-B	26-A	27-B	28-A	29-A	30-C
31-B	32-B	33-A	34-D	35-B	36-C	37-A	38-B	39-B	40-C
41-B	42-D	43-C	44-A	45-C	46-A	47-A	48-B	49-D	50-D

LUYỆN TẬP 3

Choose the correct sentence among A, B, C or D which has the same meaning as the given one.

Question 1: Eight years ago we started writing to each other.

- A.** We have rarely written to each other for eight years.
B. Eight years is a long time for us to write to each other.
C. We wrote to each other eight years ago.
D. We have been writing to each other for eight years.

Question 2: My father is tired of seeing any violent films.

- A.** My father hasn't seen a violent film.
B. My father has enjoyed all the violent films he has ever seen.
C. My father is worried about missing the next violent film.
D. My father never wants to see another violent film.

Question 3: As soon as he waved his hand, she turned away.

- A.** He saw her turn away and he waved his hand.
B. No sooner had he waved his hand than she turned away.
C. She turned away because he waved his hand too early.
D. Although she turned away, he waved his hand.

Question 4: My father hasn't smoked cigarettes for a month.

- A. It's a month since my father last smoked cigarettes.
- B. It's a month ago that my father smoked cigarettes.
- C. It's a month that my father hasn't smoked cigarettes.
- D. It's a cigarette that my father smoked a month ago.

Question 5: Having finished their work, the workers expected to be paid.

- A. The workers expected to be paid because they had finished their work
- B. Having their work finished, the workers expected to be paid.
- C. Having expected to be paid, the workers finished their work.
- D. Having been finished their work, the workers expected to be paid.

Question 6: Mr. Brown bought this car five years ago.

- A. Mr. Brown started to buy this car five years ago.
- B. It has been five years when Mr. Brown bought this car
- C. Mr. Brown has had this car for five years.
- D. It is five years ago since Mr. Brown bought this car.

Question 7: I haven't enjoyed myself so much for years.

- A. It's years since I enjoyed myself so much.
- B. It's years since I have enjoyed myself so much.
- C. It was years since I had enjoyed myself so much.
- D. It has been years since I have enjoyed myself so much.

Question 8: Have you heard the good news?.....

- A. Carol in March had a baby.
- B. In March, Carol had a baby.
- C. Carol had in March a baby.
- D. In March, had Carol a baby.

Question 9: This is my tenth year working in this bank.

- A. By the end of this year, I will work in this bank for ten years.
- B. I have worked in this bank for ten years by the end of this year.
- C. By the end of this year, I will have worked in this bank for ten years.
- D. I had been working in this bank for ten years by the end of this year.

Question 10: The famous actor was last seen in 2000.

- A. The famous actor has not been able to see since 2000.
- B. No one has seen the famous actor since 2000.
- C. The famous actor didn't see anyone in 2000.
- D. No one saw the famous actor until 2000.

Question 11: I came to live here three months ago.

- A. It was three months since I lived here.
- B. I've been living here for three months.
- C. I lived here for three months.
- D. I didn't live here for three months.

Question 12: She is sitting in a hotel room. Through the window, she sees a fat man.

- A. She looks through the window and sees the fat man.
- B. She and the fat man are in a hotel room.
- C. The fat man wants to open the window and come in.
- D. The fat man is looking in through the window.

Question 13: She goes to the shops every Friday.

- A. She goes every day to the shop but not on Friday.
- B. It's not Friday, but she's going to the shops.
- C. She always goes to the shops on Friday.
- D. She never goes to the shops on Friday.

Question 14: We started working here three years ago.

- A. We worked here for three years.
- B. We have no longer worked here for three years.
- C. We have worked here for three years.
- D. We will work here in three years.

Question 15: It's a long time since we last went to the cinema.

- A. We have been to the cinema for a long time.
- B. We haven't been to the cinema for a long time.
- C. We don't go to the cinema as we used to.
- D. We wish we went to the cinema now.

Question 16: I haven't finished this book yet.

- A. I'm still reading this book.
- B. I have read this book before.
- C. The book I'm reading hasn't finished.
- D. I will read this book some day.

Question 17: He used to jog every morning.

- A. He enjoys jogging every morning.
- B. He never fails to jog every morning.
- C. He doesn't now jog every morning.
- D. He intended to jog every morning.

Question 18: He last had his eyes tested ten months ago.

- A. He hasn't had his eyes tested for ten months.
- B. He had not tested his eyes for ten months then.
- C. He had not tested his eyes for ten months then.

D. He didn't have any test on his eyes in ten months.

Question 19: Someone knocked on the door during my lunchtime.

A. I had lunch when someone knocked on the door.

B. When I had had lunch, someone knocked on the door.

C. I was having lunch when someone was knocking on the door.

D. I was having lunch when someone knocked on the door.

Question 20: Steve left before my arrival.

A. When I arrived, Steve had already left.

B. Steve left as soon as I arrived.

C. While Steve was leaving I arrived.

D. Steve hadn't left until t arrived.

Question 21: I haven't been here before.

A. Being here is a pleasant experience.

B. This is the first time I have been here.

C. I have wished to be here for long.

D. Before long I will be here.

Question 22: My mother ... very happy when she ... her old friend again two days ago.

A. was / met

B. had been / met

C. has been / meets

D. has been / met

Question 23: I ... many people since I came here in June.

A. met

B. has met

C. was meeting

D. have met

Question 24: He ... football since he was a boy.

A. plays

B. is playing

C. has played

D. played

Question 25: We ... maths at this time last week.

A. were learning

B. are learning

C. learnt

D. was learning

Question 26: When I ... the door, she was reading a newspaper.

A. opens

B. opened

C. was opening

D. was opening

Question 27: She was playing games while he ... a football match.

A. watched

B. watches

C. was watching

D. watching

Question 28: She ... to Ho Chi Minh city last year.

A. goes

B. has gone

C. go

D. went

Question 29: Lee ... her shirt made one month ago.

A. has

B. have

C. will have

D. had

Question 30: Nowadays my mother ... to work on foot.

A. has gone

B. used to go

C. went

D. goes

Question 31: ... he playing football now?

A. Will

B. Does

C. Was

D. Is

Question 32: ... you to London with him tomorrow?

A. Does your father take

B. Is your father take

C. Your father takes

D. Will your father take

Question 33: Every morning, I often sit in my garden and ... to my nightingale sing.

A. listening

B. listen

C. listened

D. listens

Question 34: Keep quiet! We ... to the music.

A. are listening

B. listen

C. were listening

D. is listening

Question 35: Maria ... here since last week.

A. has been

B. was

C. were

D. have been

Question 36: My sister ... in Paris at the moment.

A. will study

B. studies

C. is studying

D. has been studying

Question 37: When water freezes, it ... into ice.

A. turns

B. has turned

C. would turn

D. is turning

Question 38: At the moment, Ann ... a letter to her parents.

A. is writing

B. writes

C. was writing

D. has written

Question 39: ... usually have boiled rice and meat for lunch?

A. Are you

B. Have you

C. Have you

D. Had you

Question 40: She ... in Nha Trang from 1995 to 1997.

A. was living

B. lived

C. had lived

D. has lived

Question 41: Bad driving oftenmany accidents.a

A. caused

B. had caused

C. causes

D. has cause

Question 42: The Olympic Games every four years.

A. take place

B. takes place

C. took place

D. is taking place

Question 43: What timethe banks close in Britain?

A. do

B. did

C. does

D. can

Question 44: Look!That man to open the door of your car.

A. try

B. tried

C. is trying

D. has tried

Question 45: When I was young,I to be a singer.

A. want

B. was wanting

C. wanted

D. had wanted

Question 46: They me about it last week.

A. was telling

B. told

C. had told

D. would tell

Question 47: I here at the end of the month.

A. will leave

B. would leave

C. would have left

D. is leaving

Question 48: She probably her keys while she was walking in the park.

- A. lost B. has lost C. had lost D. losts

Question 49: Will the rain ever stop? It all day.

- A. had been raining B. has been raining C. is raining D. was raining

Question 50: I writing my report in an hour or so. Then we can go to a movie.

- A. finish B. finished C. have finished D. will finish

ĐÁP ÁN

1-D	2-D	3-B	4-A	5-A	6-C	7-A	8-B	9-C	10-B
11-B	12-A	13-C	14-C	15-B	16-A	17-C	18-A	19-D	20-A
21-B	22-A	23-D	24-C	25-A	26-B	27-C	28-D	29-D	30-D
31-D	32-D	33-B	34-A	35-A	36-C	37-A	38-A	39-C	40-B
41-C	42-A	43-A	44-C	45-C	46-B	47-A	48-A	49-B	50-D

LUYỆN TẬP 4

Choose the best answer to complete these following sentences.

Question 1: I never you that I loved her; I only said that I liked her.

- A. told B. have told C. was telling D. had told

Question 2: I to Greece until Sally and I went there last summer.

- A. have never been B. had never been C. was never being D. were never

Question 3: By the time I'm 50, I a million dollars.

- A. will make B. would C. make D. will have made

Question 4: I want the exercises for advanced students.

- A. try B. to try C. to have tried D. trying

Question 5: Hey, you at the computer all day. You should really take a break now.

- A. have been sitting B. were sitting C. did sit D. had sat

Question 6: He claimed that he had never seen that man, but I know that

- A. he did B. he had C. he was D. he is

Question 7: What to her about last night?

- A. have you spoken B. you spoke C. did you speak D. did you spoke

Question 8: He his granddaughter daily.

- A. calling B. calls C. is calling D. call

Question 9: She lunch when someone rang the doorbell.

- A. was preparing B. prepared C. has been preparing D. has prepared

Question 10: She never when someone leaves her a message.

A. has called back **B.** calls back **C.** will call back **D.** called back

Question 11: Ronnie, I _____ you in a long time. How have you been?

A. was seen **B.** saw **C.** haven't seen **D.** hadn't seen

Question 12: Yesterday I _____ to see my grandparents.

A. go **B.** have gone **C.** gone **D.** went

Question 13: Some people say that it is better to _____ for today.

A. is living **B.** living **C.** lives **D.** live

Question 14: Have you ever _____ to Canada?

A. being **B.** be **C.** been **D.** have been

Question 15: Albert doesn't like _____ on weekends.

A. working **B.** to work
C. work **D.** Answers 1 and 2 are correct

Question 16: He occasionally _____ a headache in the morning.

A. having **B.** has **C.** has **D.** is having

Question 17: The time on the clock _____ correct.

A. is **B.** should be **C.** might be **D.** All the above are correct

Question 18: I _____ all the requirements for the job already.

A. am meeting **B.** meet **C.** have met **D.** will meet

Question 19: Marsha sometimes _____ her homework.

A. doesn't do **B.** hasn't done **C.** has been done **D.** do

Question 20: When you _____ the Lotto, be sure to call me.

A. are going to win **B.** will win **C.** are winning **D.** win

Question 21: What time _____ up every day?

A. are you waking **B.** have you working
C. have you working **D.** All the above are correct

Question 22: Don't bother me now. I _____ the movie.

A. be watching **B.** am watching
C. have to watch **D.** Both answer 2 and 3 are correct.

Question 23: Jimmy _____ his homework before the teacher comes.

A. needs to finish **B.** needs to finish
C. will complete **D.** All the above answers are correct.

Question 24: We never _____ Mr. Barrientos anymore. He's too busy.

A. won't see **B.** see **C.** sees **D.** sees

Question 25: Did you _____ early today?

- A. will leave B. left C. are going to leave D. want to leave

Question 26: I have _____ to travel throughout Brazil.

- A. always wanted B. wanted always
C. always been wanted D. None of the above are correct.

Question 27: Choose the correct sentence.

- A. Have you been exercising with Glen? B. Has Glen exercised lately?
C. Is Glen exercising right now? D. All the answers are correct.

Question 28: She _____ six days a week.

- A. usually works B. works usually C. is usually works D. is working usually

Question 29: Charley _____ telling silly jokes.

- A. is always B. always is C. has always D. had always

Question 30: When it _____ hot tomorrow, the fans will turn on automatically.

- A. is going to get B. will get C. gets D. is gets

Question 31: By the time I got to the hotel, _____ any rooms left.

- A. there weren't B. there hadn't been C. there isn't D. there wasn't

Question 32: I was afraid to ask her out because she _____ me before.

- A. was rejecting B. had rejected C. rejected D. has rejected

Question 33: I _____ to music when she came in.

- A. was listening B. listened C. have been listening D. am listening

Question 34: P1: What have you been doing?

P2: I _____ a lot.

- A. have worked B. worked C. have been working D. work

Question 35: Last night I _____ that I was living in Norway.

- A. dreammed B. have dreamed C. dreamt D. had dreamt

Question 36: I don't know why you insist on _____ to Cambodia.

- A. going B. to go C. to be going D. will go

Question 37: The movie that we _____ last Monday was really awful.

- A. have seen B. saw C. were seeing D. had seen

Question 38: He _____ his son to the zoo last Sunday.

- A. taking B. took C. is taking D. is taking

Question 39: I already read the book that you gave me. Could you _____ me another one?

A. to lend B. will lend C. lend D. lent

Question 40: He _____ her if she hadn't waved to him.

A. didn't see B. would not have seen C. will not have D. doesn't see

Question 41: Albert _____ many classes at this school.

A. taken B. take C. takes D. taking

Question 42: He usually _____ early in the morning.

A. works B. work C. working D. worked

Question 43: I _____ breakfast when I heard the birds singing.

A. was ate B. ate C. was eating D. had eat

Question 44: We _____ all our make up work next week.

A. will B. doing C. will do D. does

Question 45: While I _____ to work this morning, I _____ an accident.

A. was going.....saw B. goes.....seen

C. going.....saw D. was going.....seen

Question 46: I _____ to Europe many times.

A. been B. going C. been going D. have been

Question 47: Listen! Someone _____ in the shower!

A. is sing B. singing C. sings D. is singing

Question 48: I knew I _____ the book before.

A. reading B. read C. have read D. had read

Question 49: I _____ that song three or four times on the radio today.

A. have heard B. hearing C. have hear D. hear

Question 50: We _____ all our school work by tomorrow.

A. finish B. finishing C. be finishing D. will have finished

ĐÁP ÁN

1-A	2-B	3-D	4-B	5-A	6-B	7-C	8-B	9-A	10-B
11-C	12-D	13-D	14-C	15-D	16-B	17-D	18-C	19-A	20-D
21-C	22-D	23-D	24-B	25-D	26-A	27-D	28-A	29-A	30-C
31-A	32-B	33-A	34-C	35-C	36-A	37-B	38-B	39-C	40-B
41-C	42-A	43-C	44-C	45-A	46-D	47-D	48-D	49-A	50-D

LUYỆN TẬP 5

Choose the best answer to complete these following sentences.

- Question 1:** My wife _____ just as I _____ the house.
A. arrived/leave **B.** arrive/leave **C.** arrived/was leaving **D.** arrive/was leaving
- Question 2:** The rooster _____ loudly when I got up this morning.
A. crow **B.** crows **C.** was crowing **D.** crowing
- Question 3:** Our class _____ on time every day.
A. start **B.** starts **C.** starting **D.** starting
- Question 4:** Sometimes the class _____ late.
A. end **B.** ending **C.** ends **D.** ended
- Question 5:** Someone's phone _____.
A. be ringing **B.** rings **C.** ring **D.** is ringing
- Question 6:** I _____ any classes so far this year.
A. haven't failed **B.** fail **C.** fail **D.** not fail
- Question 7:** We _____ many new things this year.
A. have learned **B.** have learn **C.** learn **D.** learns
- Question 8:** Jorge _____ to Brazil earlier this year.
A. went **B.** gone **C.** gone **D.** goes
- Question 9:** My in-laws _____ to visit us next week.
A. come **B.** are coming **C.** comes **D.** is coming
- Question 10:** When you called, I _____.
A. is eating **B.** was ate **C.** was ate **D.** was ate
- Question 11:** While we _____, we _____ someone yelling.
A. were talking/hear **B.** were talking/heard **C.** was talking/hear **D.** was talking/heard
- Question 12:** Jane _____ on her raincoat on when it _____ raining.
A. put/start **B.** puts/started **C.** put/starting **D.** put/started
- Question 13:** When John got home, he found that someone _____ and _____ a message.
A. has called/leave **B.** had called/leave **C.** had called/left **D.** has called/left
- Question 14:** When I _____ Spence yesterday, he _____.
A. saw/working **B.** seen/was working **C.** see/works **D.** saw/was working
- Question 15:** I _____ for seven hours last night.
A. was slept **B.** slept **C.** has slept **D.** sleep
- Question 16:** I _____ that you were here.
A. wasn't knowing **B.** didn't knew **C.** didn't know **D.** know

Question 17: When I came to this city, I _____ anyone.

- A. haven't known B. didn't know C. wasn't knowing D. didn't knew

Question 18: You know where I live - I _____ in the same place for the past three years.

- A. have been living B. had lived C. was living D. live

Question 19: You _____ my brother, have you?

- A. haven't seen B. didn't see C. didn't saw D. don't see

Question 20: Where _____ last night?

- A. have you gone B. did you went C. did you go D. are you

Question 21: Did you just _____ me a liar?

- A. call B. called C. have called D. calls

Question 22: She is a mean person. I don't like _____ to her.

- A. talk B. talking C. have talk D. talks

Question 23: I don't know how _____.

- A. dance B. dancing C. to dance D. dancing

Question 24: I _____ (take) a shower when you called.

- A. was taking B. took C. was taken D. were taking

Question 25: My brother _____ (have) never been to Europe until he went there last year.

- A. has B. had C. hadn't D. have

Question 26: I _____ in bed when I heard the accident outside.

- A. was lying B. lay C. have lain D. am laying

Question 27: Diane _____ (feel) very sick, but she decided to go out anyway.

- A. was feeling B. has been feeling C. has felt D. feels

Question 28: I _____ (want) to go swimming, but the water was too cold.

- A. have wanted B. wanted C. am want D. want

Question 29: I _____ (be) able to sleep well for a week now.

- A. didn't was B. was not C. haven't been D. been

Question 30: When I first saw her, she _____ (stand) on the balcony.

- A. was standing B. has stood C. has been standing D. stood

Question 31: Every time I looked at her, she _____.

- A. has smiled B. smiled C. smiles D. is smiling

Question 32: I _____ (stop) smoking a long time ago.

- A. have stopped B. have been stopping C. stopped D. stopt

Question 33: Really? You moved to a new apartment? How long _____ (live) at the new apartment?

- A. have you been living B. did you live
C. did you living D. do you live

Question 34: John _____ in San Diego for the past 3 years (and he still lives there).

- A. lived B. has lived C. was lived D. lives

Question 35: My brother _____ in San Diego up until last year.

- A. was lived B. has lived C. was living D. is living

Question 36: I worked as a graphic designer before I _____ to England.

- A. have come B. came C. did come D. had came

Question 37: _____ reading the paper yet?

- A. Have you finished B. Were you finished C. Are you finishing D. Do you finish

Question 38: I _____ in love three times in my life.

- A. have been B. was being C. was D. have been being

Question 39: I _____ in love with Mary, but she left me for another man.

- A. have been B. was being C. was D. were

Question 40: Frank _____ tennis for three years when he was at school.

- A. have played B. played C. has played D. was play

Question 41: _____ me last night?

- A. Did you call B. Have you called C. Were you called D. Do you call

Question 42: I was at the club yesterday, but I _____ you.

- A. haven't seen B. did not see C. did not saw D. hadn't seen

Question 43: I _____ this upset in many years!

- A. was not B. was not being C. haven't been D. haven't been being

Question 44: By the end of the year, she ____ with a degree in business.

- A. already graduates B. will have already graduated
C. has already graduated D. will graduate

Question 45: As soon as I ____ home, it started to rain heavily.

- A. get B. got C. will have gotten D. had get

Question 46: We ____ the chance to visit many museums in Paris last vacation.

- A. had B. had had C. have had D. have

Question 47: I ____ on this project for days without success.

- A. have been worked B. have been working C. had being worked D. was working

Question 48: Don't worry. She ____ by herself.

- A.** is used to living **B.** is used to live **C.** used to living **D.** is used to lives

Question 49: I ____ hard until I pass the TOEFL.

- A.** will study **B.** study **C.** have studied **D.** had studied

Question 50: Respect your parents always.

- A.** Let your parents be always respected. **B.** Let your parents always respected.
C. Let your parents always be respected. **D.** No answer is correct

ĐÁP ÁN

1-C	2-C	3-B	4-C	5-D	6-A	7-A	8-A	9-B	10-C
11-B	12-D	13-C	14-D	15-B	16-C	17-B	18-A	19-A	20-C
21-A	22-B	23-C	24-A	25-B	26-A	27-A	28-B	29-C	30-A
31-B	32-C	33-A	34-B	35-C	36-B	37-A	38-A	39-C	40-B
41-A	42-B	43-C	44-B	45-B	46-A	47-B	48-A	49-A	50-C

LUYỆN TẬP 6

Choose the best answer to complete these following sentences.

Question 1: 1. They (build) _____ a new power station at the moment.

- A.** are building **B.** build **C.** built **D.** will build

Question 2: When I was buying the stamps somebody (call) _____ my name.

- A.** was calling **B.** called **C.** call **D.** Has called

Question 3: 'What time (Kevin come)_____?' 'An hour ago.'

- A.** Kevin came **B.** has Kevin come **C.** did Kevin come **D.** Will Kevin come

Question 4: I (not go) _____ to the cinema last night. I was too tired.

- A.** didn't go **B.** don't go **C.** won't go **D.** Not go

Question 5: Carol invited us to the party but we (not go)_____. We had other things to do.

- A.** did not go **B.** didn't go **C.** don't go **D.** A&B

Question 6: I saw Bridget at the museum when I was going to the restaurant but she (not see) _____ me.

- A.** don't see **B.** wasn't seeing **C.** didn't see **D.** Didn't saw

Question 7: 'Where (your parents live)_____?' 'In a village near London. They have always lived there.'

- A.** do your parents live **B.** did your parents live

C. are your parents live

D. Are your parents living

Question 8: Jeff is from London. He (live) _____ there all his life.

A. lives

B. live

C. lived

D. Has lived

Question 9: My favourite country is Canada. I (be) _____ there four times.

A. have been

B. am

C. was

D. Will be

Question 10: I (never eat) _____ bananas.

A. never eat

B. have never eaten

C. never have eaten

D. Have never ate

Question 11: 'I love your photos. How long (you study) _____ photography?' 'For one year.'

A. did you study

B. have you studied

C. have you been studying

D. are you studying

Question 12: 'Where are you going on holiday?' 'I don't know. We (not decide) _____ yet.'

A. have not decided

B. didn't decide

C. don't decide

D. Will not decide

Question 13: Who (invent) _____ the washing machine?

A. invent

B. invents

C. has invented

D. Invented

Question 14: 'Where's Jill?' 'She (have) _____ lunch at the moment.'

A. has

B. is having

C. is haveing

D. Had

Question 15: (Terry work) _____? No, he is on holiday.

A. Do Terry work

B. Terry works

C. is Terry working

D. Will Terry work

Question 16: Somebody (steal) _____ my sunglasses at the swimming pool last week.

A. stealed

B. steals

C. has stolen

D. Stole

Question 17: (she wear) _____ the nice jacket when you saw her?

A. is she wearing

B. did she wear

C. was she wearing

D. Wear she

Question 18: Where (be) _____ you yesterday?

A. were

B. was

C. are

D. Is

Question 19: If I (find) a good job, I'll move to Madrid.

A. will find

B. find

C. found

D. A&B

Question 20: He met his wife when he (work) in Brussels.

A. is working

B. works

C. was working

D. Were working

Question 21: You can turn off the radio. I (not listen) to it.

A. don't listen

B. am not listening

C. didn't listen

D. Won't listen

Question 22: Where (you / have) dinner yesterday?

A. did you have

B. do you have

C. are you having

D. Have you had

Question 23: This exercise is difficult. I (help) you to do it.

- A. help B. am helping C. helped D. Will help

Question 24: What (you / cook) tonight?

- A. are you going to cook B. do you cook
C. are you cooking D. Have you cooked

Question 25: (you / finish) your homework yet?

- A. did you finish B. do you finish C. have you finished D. Will you finish

Question 26: My father (go) to the bank. He'll be back soon.

- A. went B. gone C. has gone D. Have gone

Question 27: What (they / do) at 9.00 last night?

- A. did they do B. are they doing C. have they done D. Were they doing

Question 28: It (snow) when we (leave) the library.

- A. was snowing – left B. was snowing – leave
C. snowed – left D. Is snowing – is leaving

Question 29: listening

- A. listening B. listen C. listen D. listened

Question 30: My cousin is a writer. He (write) three novels.

- A. write B. writes C. wrote D. Has written

Question 31: Be careful! The baby (put) those keys in his mouth!

- A. is puting B. put C. puts D. Is putting

Question 32: When (Barack Obama / become) president of the USA?

- A. did Barack Obama become B. has Barack Obama become
C. Barack Obama became D. Does Barack Obama become

Question 33: My students (not listen) when I gave the instructions.

- A. were not listening B. didn't listen C. was not listening D. Doesn't listen

Question 34: Gonzalo is thirsty! I (get) him a glass of water!

- A. get B. will get C. am getting D. Got

Question 35: If it (not rain) we'd lie on the beach.

- A. does not rain B. will not rain C. didn't rain D. Hasn't rained

Question 36: It's my birthday next week- Don't worry! I (not forget) it.

- A. won't forget B. will forget C. am not forgetting D. Don't forget

Question 37: I think it (rain) this afternoon.

- A. is raining B. rains C. is going to rain D. Rain

Question 38: John (speak) to Susan a minute ago.

- A. speak B. spoke C. is speaking D. Did speak

Question 39: If you ask him nicely, he (help) you.

- A. will help B. helps C. would help D. Would have helped

Question 40: Would you like a coffee? No, thanks. I (already / have) four cups today.

- A. already had B. already have had C. have already had D. Already have

Question 41: (you /ever / have) an argument with your parents about clothes?

- A. Ever you have had B. did you ever have C. Have you ever had D. Do you ever have

Question 42: I'm sure they (lose) the match.

- A. lose B. loses C. are going to lose D. Will lose

Question 43: My neighbour has broken his leg. He (not play) tennis this weekend.

- A. is not going to play B. isn't going to play
C. didn't play D. A&B

Question 44: If I had the receipt, I (return) these jeans.

- A. would return B. will return C. would have returned D. return

Question 45: What would you like? I (have) some orange juice.

- A. have B. had C. will have D. Am having

Question 46: If my brother (not arrive) soon, I'll send him a text message.

- A. won't arrive B. doesn't arrive C. don't arrive D. Isn't arriving

Question 47: I (not see) my grandparents since last summer.

- A. haven't seen B. don't see C. didn't see D. Haven't saw

Question 48: If you found a purse, (you / give) it to the teacher?

- A. will you give B. would you give
C. would have you given D. Do you give

Question 49: As you (see / can)____, I (become) _____a real London fan already.

- A. can see – have become B. can see – had became
C. can see – become D. Can see - became

Question 50: She speaks English but she (not speak) _____French.

- A. don't speak B. doesn't speak C. isn't speak D. Not speaks

ĐÁP ÁN

1-A	2-B	3-C	4-A	5-D	6-C	7-A	8-D	9-A	10-B
11-C	12-A	13-D	14-B	15-C	16-D	17-C	18-A	19-B	20-C
21-B	22-A	23-D	24-A	25-C	26-C	27-D	28-A	29-C	30-D

A. never used to B. got used to C. are used to D. wouldn't

Question 13: Could you tell me,sir,what you in the park at three in the morning ?

A. have done B. have been doing C. were doing D. had done

Question 14: I was angry when you saw me because I with my sister

A. have been arguing B. argued C. had been arguing D. had been arguing

Question 15: The Black Pirate over a million copies already this year

A. had sold B. has sold C. had been selling D. was selling

Question 16: Don't throw the paper away because I it yet

A. haven't read B. hadn't read
C. haven't been reading D. hadn't been reading

Question 17: By the time we arrived , the film

A. has already started B. would already start C. already started D. had already started

Question 18: We had to walk home in the end because Jimmy his car keys.

A. has been losing B. had lost C. was losing D. had been losing

Question 19: It took Edward a long time to living in Canada

A. be used to B. used to C. get used to D. be used

Question 20: I'd love to have lived in the old days,when people to market by horse and carriage

A. have been travelling B. would travel
C. got used to travelling D. had been travelling

Question 21: I much preferred it when we to Wales every summer on holiday.

A. used to go B. were used to going C. had gone D. have been going

Question 22: Your teacher called me today and said that you in the playground again.

A. had been fighting B. used to fight C. would fight D. have fought

Question 23: Let's take our travel chess set in case we _____ bored on the train

A. get B. are getting C. got D. have got

Question 24: The boy _____ the narrow canal in ten minutes to find himself in the base,out of danger

A. swum B. has swum C. swam D. had swam

Question 25: Melanie _____ her hand.It's bleeding heavily

A. has cut B. is cutting C. cut D. cuts

Question 26: We can win only if we remain united , and so we must support them the moment they _____ on strike

- A. will have gone B. will go C. go D. went

Question 27: Although at that time my knowledge of German was very poor, I _____ most of what they said.

- A. did understand B. have understood
C. managed understand D. didn't understand

Question 28: Don't try to stop him.The sooner he _____ the better . I certainly won't miss him

- A. had resigned B. will resign C. will have resigned D. resigns

Question 29: What great joy it was to receive the news he _____ such a long time !

- A. had been waiting for B. has been waiting
C. has been waiting for D. has waited

Question 30: I agree that while the soup was OK,the meat was too dry – we _____ - it about 20 minutes too long

- A. had roasted B. roast C. had roast D. have been roasting

Question 31: The alarm was raised too late because when the emergency crew arrived no less than 10,000 gallons of oil _____ into the stream

- A. has gushed B. gushed C. had gushed D. did gush

Question 32: I'm afraid we will not get our money back.As long as Deniel Ash _____ his seat in the Senate, he is protected by law

- A. will keep B. won't keep C. will have kept D. keeps

Question 33: I wouldn't have bought it anyway, because it _____ too much

- A. has cost B. had cost C. cost D. would cost

Question 34: All through the trial , she _____ some signs of sympathy from her friends.Most of the time in vain

- A. sought B. seeked C. has sought D. has been seeking

Question 35: The students seem rather determined that the rent strike should go on until the university _____ its policy on student hostels

- A. will modify B. has modified C. had modified D. will have modified

ĐÁP ÁN

1-A	2-B	3-B	4-B	5-A	6-B	7-D	8-A	9-B	10-D
11-D	12-A	13-C	14-C	15-B	16-A	17-D	18-B	19-C	20-B

21-A	22-A	23-A	24-C	25-A	26-C	27-A	28-D	29-A	30-A
31-C	32-D	33-C	34-A	35-B					

GÓC GIẢI TRÍ

Hôm nay, chúng ta sẽ cùng đọc một số câu danh ngôn nổi tiếng Anh - Việt về nụ cười các em nhé. Đây là các câu cô viết trong một cuốn sổ để đầu giường và mỗi sáng khi thức dậy, cô đều đọc chúng đây nhé.

Don't cry because it's over, smile because it happened. Dr. Seuss

Đừng khóc vì điều gì đó đã kết thúc, hãy cười vì nó đã đến.

Sometimes your joy is the source of your smile, but sometimes your smile can be the source of your joy. Thích Nhất Hạnh

Có lúc, niềm vui khiến bạn mỉm cười, nhưng cũng có khi, mỉm cười lại chính là niềm vui.

Use your smile to change the world; don't let the world change your smile.

Hãy để nụ cười của bạn thay đổi thế giới, đừng để thế giới thay đổi nụ cười của bạn.

Wear a smile and have friends; wear a scowl and have wrinkles. George Eliot

Cười có thêm bạn, cau có thêm nếp nhăn.

Don't cry for a man who's left you; the next one may fall for your smile. Mae West *Đừng khóc vì người đàn ông đã rời bỏ bạn, bởi biết đâu người tiếp theo sẽ phải lòng nụ cười của bạn.*

I love the man that can smile in trouble, who can gather strength from distress, and grow brave by reflection. Leonardo da Vinci

Tôi yêu những người có thể cười khi gặp khó khăn, mạnh mẽ lúc phiền muộn và dũng cảm trước những lời chê trách..

BÀI 9: SỰ HÒA HỢP GIỮA CÁC THÌ

A – LÝ THUYẾT

Trong tiếng Anh có 4 loại câu cơ bản:

- Câu đơn: I went to the supermarket yesterday.
- Câu ghép: His father is a doctor, and his mother is a writer.
- Câu phức: When I came, they were watching TV.
- Câu phức tổng hợp: Although I like camping, I haven't had the time to go lately, and I haven't found anyone to go with.

I. ĐỊNH NGHĨA CÂU PHỨC

Câu phức (Complex Sentence) là câu có một hoặc nhiều mệnh đề phụ.

Thì của động từ của mệnh đề phụ tùy thuộc thì của động từ của mệnh đề chính.

- Ex: - She says that she is a film star.
- When I went to the door, the phone rang.

II. CÁC QUY TẮC HÒA HỢP GIỮA THÌ

Ex1:

- She says that she is a film star.
- She says that she was a film star in 1999.
- She says that she has been a film star for 2 years.
- She says that she will become a star.

→ Trong câu có “say that”, mệnh đề sau “that” có thể chia được ở tất cả các thì

Ex2:

- She said that she was a film star. (Chuyển từ câu trực tiếp: “I’m a film star” said she)
- She said that she had been a film star for 2 years.
- She said that she would become a star.

→ Trong câu có “said that”, mệnh đề sau “that” không chia thì hiện tại, tương lai.

III. SỰ PHỐI HỢP GIỮA CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ TRONG CÂU PHỨC CÓ MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ CHỈ THỜI GIAN

1. Các liên từ trong mệnh đề trạng ngữ

- when/as: khi
- just as: ngay khi
- while: trong khi
- before: trước khi

- after: sau khi

- since: từ khi

2. Sự phối hợp thì

2.1 Mệnh đề chính ở thì Hiện tại đơn, mệnh đề trạng ngữ ở thì Hiện tại đơn: chỉ một thói quen, sự thật hiển nhiên.

Ex:

- We always take our umbrella with us when/in case it rains.

- If we put ice under the sun, it melts.

2.2 Mệnh đề chính ở thì Hiện tại đơn, mệnh đề trạng ngữ ở thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn: nhấn mạnh hành động đang diễn ra

Ex: I usually read books while I'm waiting for the bus.

2.3 Mệnh đề chính ở thì Hiện tại đơn, mệnh đề trạng ngữ ở thì Hiện tại hoàn thành: nhấn mạnh tính hoàn thành của hành động

Ex: - He never goes home before he has finished his work.

- Don't go out before you have finished your homework.

2.4 Mệnh đề chính ở thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn, mệnh đề trạng ngữ ở thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn (QKTD-QKTD): nhấn mạnh 2 hành động xảy ra song song ở hiện tại (quá khứ)

Ex: - We are studying while they are going out.

- I was learning while my father was watching TV.

2.5 Mệnh đề chính ở thì Hiện tại hoàn thành, mệnh đề trạng ngữ ở thì Quá khứ đơn: nhấn mạnh hành động xảy ra từ quá khứ đến hiện tại.

Ex: - She has studied English since she was 4 years old.

- He has been studying English since he came here.

2.6 Mệnh đề chính ở thì Quá khứ đơn, mệnh đề trạng ngữ ở thì Quá khứ đơn: nhấn mạnh thói quen trong quá khứ, hành động trong quá khứ

Ex: - I sat near the window whenever I took a bus.

- He saw 10 mice when he came into the room.

2.7 Mệnh đề chính ở thì Quá khứ đơn, mệnh đề trạng ngữ ở thì Quá khứ hoàn thành: nhấn mạnh hành động xảy ra khi một hành động khác đã kết thúc

Ex: - He came after/when everyone had left.

- He left as soon as he had finished his work.

2.8 Mệnh đề chính ở thì Quá khứ tiếp diễn, mệnh đề trạng ngữ ở thì Quá khứ đơn: nhấn mạnh hành động đang xảy ra thì hành động khác xen vào

Ex: - It was raining when we arrived there.

- He was watching TV when I came.

2.9 Mệnh đề chính ở thì Quá khứ hoàn thành, mệnh đề trạng ngữ ở thì Quá khứ đơn: nhấn mạnh hành động xảy ra trước một hành động trong quá khứ.

Ex: - The train had already left when I arrived at the station.

- He had lived in New York for 4 years before he moved to Ha Noi.

2.10 Mệnh đề chính ở thì Tương lai đơn, mệnh đề trạng ngữ ở thì Hiện tại đơn: nhấn mạnh thời điểm

Ex: - I will call you if I need any help.

- I won't leave until I have your answer.

2. 11 Mệnh đề chính ở thì Tương lai đơn, mệnh đề trạng ngữ ở thì Hiện tại hoàn thành: nhấn mạnh tính hoàn thành.

Ex: - We'll go home as soon as/once we have finished our work.

- We are going to send a report as soon as/once we have finished our work.

Lưu ý: “be going to” mang nghĩa chắc chắn, có kế hoạch

2.12 Mệnh đề chính ở thì Tương lai hoàn thành, mệnh đề trạng ngữ ở thì Hiện tại đơn: nhấn mạnh tính hoàn tất của một hành động trong tương lai.

Ex: - I will have lost all my hair before I'm 40.

- We will have already finished that work by the time/when you get back.

Lưu ý: Không dùng thì tương lai trong mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian

Ex: - Please wait here until he will come back. X

Please wait here until he comes back. ✓

1., I will give him report.

A. When he will return

B. When he returns

C. Until he will return

D. Until he have return

2. We saw many beautiful birdsin the lake.

A. when we are fishing

B. while fishing

C. while fished

D. fishing

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. A, C sai vì chúng ta không được phép chia thì tương lai ở mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian.

D không hợp nghĩa “ Tôi sẽ đưa anh ta bản báo cáo cho tới khi anh ta đã quay lại”

Đáp án B. Mệnh đề chính ở thì tương lai, mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian ở thì hiện tại đơn

Dịch: Tôi sẽ đưa anh ta bản báo cáo khi anh ta quay lại

2. A sai vì về trước chia ở thì quá khứ, về sau chia ở thì hiện tại tiếp diễn (không hòa hợp về thì)
D sai vì nếu dùng “fishing” thì từ “fishing” này sẽ bỏ nghĩa cho danh từ “birds” đứng liền kề trước nó, mà “birds”: những con chim thì không thể thực hiện được hành động “fishing”- câu cá
B, C là hiện tượng giản lược mệnh đề bằng phân từ. V.ing mang nghĩa chủ động, P2 mang nghĩa bị động

Đáp án B

Dịch: Chúng tôi nhìn thấy rất nhiều con chim đẹp khi đang câu cá ở hồ.

B – LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1

Choose the best answer to complete these following sentences.

Question 1: Although they —————, they did not lose heart.

- A.** Defeated **B.** Were defeated **C.** Had defeated **D.** Have defeated

Question 2: Our holy books tell us that man ————— mortal.

- A.** Is **B.** Was **C.** Were **D.** Has

Question 3: He spoke so fast that I ————— understand anything.

- A.** Could **B.** Could not **C.** Cannot **D.** Had not

Question 4: His health has improved since he ————— from the hills.

- A.** Return **B.** Returned **C.** Would return **D.** Returning

Question 5: He declared that he ————— it even if he saw it with his own eyes.

- A.** Would not believe **B.** Believe **C.** Did not believe **D.** Had not believed

Question 6: The manager _____ the store before I arrived.

- A.** closed **B.** had closed **C.** has closed **D.** was closing

Question 7: When the alarm rang, Hai _____ out of bed quickly.

- A.** was jumping **B.** has jumped **C.** had jumped **D.** jumped

Question 8: When we see Mr. Minh tomorrow, I ____ him of that.

- A.** will remind **B.** remind **C.** have reminded **D.** reminded

Question 9: When I got home I found that water _____ down the kitchen walls

- A.** ran **B.** was running **C.** has run **D.** had been running

Question 10: After he _____ his English course, he went to England to continue his study

- A.** has finish **B.** had finished **C.** was finished **D.** would finish

Question 11: How _____ since we _____ college?

- A.** are you/left **B.** were you/left

C. have you been/have left

D. have you been/have left

Question 12: The Chinese_____ spaghetti dishes for a long time before Marco Polo_____ back to Italy

A. made – brought

B. have made – brought

C. made - had brought

D. had been making - brought

Question 13: When I arrived at the meeting the first speaker_____ speaking and the audience_____

A. just finished - were clapping

B. had just finished - had clapped

C. had just finished - were clapping

D. just finished - had clapped

Question 14: He_____ his job last month and then he_____ out of work

A. lost - was

B. was lost- had been

C. has lost - was

D. lost - has been

Question 15: In the past, the trip_____ very rough and often dangerous, but things_____ a great deal in the last hundred and fifty years

A. was- have changed

B. is- change

C. had been- will change

D. has been- changed

Question 16: When Carol_____ last night, I_____ my favorite show on television

A. was calling- watched

B. called- have watched

C. called- was watching

D. had called- watched

Question 17: Right now, Jim_____ the newspaper and Kathy_____ dinner

A. reads- has cooked

B. is reading- is cooking

C. has read- was cooking

D. read- will be cooking

Question 18: Sam_____ to change a light bulb when he_____ and_____

A. was trying-slipped- fell

B. tried- was slipping- falling

C. had been trying- slipped- was falling

D. has tried- slips- falls

Question 19: Every day I _____ up at 6 o'clock, _____ breakfast at seven o'clock and _____ for work at 8o'clock

A. get- eat- leave

B. have got- eating- leaving

C. got- ate- left

D. will get- have eaten- left

Question 20: I_____ for this company for more then thirty years, and I intend to stay here until I_____ next year

A. am working- will retire

B. am going to work- am retiring

C. work- am going to retire

D. have been working- retire

Question 21: By the time you receive this letter, I _____ for the USA

A. have left B. will leave C. will have left D. am leaving

Question 22: While I _____ along the road, I saw a friend of mine.

A. was cycling B. have cycled C. cycled D. am cycling

Question 23: By the time I _____ this report, I will give you a ring.

A. type B. will type C. have typed D. will have typed

Question 24: While my mother _____ a film on TV, my father was cooking dinner. It was March 8th yesterday.

A. watched B. was watching C. had watched D. watches

Question 25: When we came, a party _____ in the hall.

A. is being held B. had being held C. will be held D. was being held

Question 26: When I came to visit her last night, she _____ a bath.

A. is having B. was having C. has D. had

Question 27: When we arrived at the restaurant, the others _____.

A. left B. have left C. had left D. are leaving

Question 28: I learned that the college _____ in 1900.

A. found B. was founded C. founded D. had been founded

Question 29: He said that he _____ a lot of money on advertising to expand his business.

A. spends B. has spent C. spending D. had spent

Question 30: The train _____ when we got to the station.

A. just left B. just leaves C. had just left D. will leave

Question 31: Tom told me he _____ call me at the airport when I _____.

A. would/ arrived B. will/ arrive C. will have/ arriving D. would be/ arriving

Question 32: - _____ before? – Yes, I _____ my holidays here last year.

A. have you ever been / spent B. have you ever been / spend

C. Did you ever be / spending D. were you ever / spend

Question 33: _____ I was working in the garden, John was repairing the washing machine.

A. as soon as B. because of C. while D. until

Question 34: Peter said he _____ a test the following day.

A. had had B. will have C. has had D. would have

Question 35: After she _____ at the hospital for 2 years, she _____ to give up the job yesterday.

A. had been working/ decides B. had been working/ decided

C. working / had decided D. is working/ will decide

Question 36: Tom _____ before we arrive there.

- A. has left B. had left C. will leave D. leaves

Question 37: In 1970, the Canadian scientist George Kelly _____ that warm water _____ more quickly than cold water.

- A. prove/freeze B. proves / breezed C. proving / freezing D. proved/freezes

Question 38: After we _____ our work, we _____ for lunch.

- A. having finish/ went B. have finished/ went C. had finished/went D. having finish/ going

Question 39: After he _____ his English course, he went to England to continue his study .

- A. will finish B. has finished C. had finished D. will have finished

Question 40: They _____ a lot of preparation before the match started.

- A. has made B. had made C. will be made D. are making

Question 41: I _____ in the US for one year, but I still find it difficult to communicate with the American.

- A. am B. was C. have been D. had been

Question 42: American women may _____ conversations with men or even _____ them to dance.

- A. to start/ to ask B. start/ ask C. starting / asking D. started/ asked

Question 43: As soon as she arrived in London, she found that the English people spoke English differently from what she _____.

- A. will learn B. is learning C. has been learning D. had learnt

Question 44: Don't go anywhere until I _____ back.

- A. come B. will come C. have come D. came

Question 45: I _____ the book by the time you come tonight.

- A. will be finishing B. finished C. have finishing D. will have finished

Question 46: Who _____ when I came ?

- A. were you talking to B. are you talking to C. you were talking to D. you are talking to

Question 47: Please send us a postcard as soon as you _____ in London.

- A. will arrive B. is going to arrive C. arrive D. arrived

Question 48: I will give you this book _____ I meet you tomorrow.

- A. when B. until C. since D. for

Question 49: Jane _____ her house all the morning before the guest arrived.

- A. is cleaning B. was cleaning C. has been cleaning D. had been cleaning

Question 50: We _____ for going home when it began to rain.

- A. are preparing B. were preparing C. will be preparing D. have prepared

Đáp án

1-B	2-A	3-B	4-B	5-A	6-B	7-D	8-A	9-D	10-B
11-D	12-D	13-C	14-D	15-A	16-C	17-B	18-A	19-A	20-D
21-C	22-A	23-C	24-B	25-D	26-B	27-C	28-B	29-D	30-C
31-A	32-A	33-C	34-D	35-B	36-C	37-D	38-C	39-C	40-B
41-C	42-B	43-D	44-A	45-D	46-A	47-C	48-A	49-D	50-B

LUYỆN TẬP 2:

Choose the best answer to complete these following sentences.

Question 1: Tom said everything _____ ready when the match _____.

- A. A will be/ starts B. would be/ started C. is / started D. will be/ started

Question 2: I _____ in the waiting room when I heard someone _____ me.

- A. am sitting/ to call B. was sitting/ call C. am sitting/ called D. have sat / called

Question 3: Our grandfather _____ as an engineer for 30 years before he retired in 1980.

- A. worked B. was working C. has been working D. had been working

Question 4: Miss Hoa always takes her umbrella when she _____ to school.

- A. has gone B. goes C. is going D. will go

Question 5: Never talk to the driver while he _____.

- A. will be driving B. will drive C. drives D. is driving

Question 6: I'll marry her as soon as she _____ all her problems.

- A. solves B. has solved C. had solved D. solve

Question 7: I'll wait until you _____ crying.

- A. have stopped B. will stop C. stop D. stopped

Question 8: I bought Romano whenever I _____ Maximart.

- A. had gone B. has gone C. went D. would go

Question 9: My son was sleeping when I _____ home.

- A. went B. has gone C. had gone D. would go

Question 10: I was compiling this book while my son _____.

- A. slept B. would sleep C. had slept D. was sleeping

Question 11: Lan has learnt English since she _____ a small girl.

- A. has been B. had been C. was D. would be

Question 12: She won't get married until she _____ 25 years old.

- A. is B. will be C. had been D. was

Question 13: Yesterday when I _____ at the station, the train _____ for 15 minutes.

- A. arrived/ had left B. arrives/ has left C. arrived/ left D. had arrived/ left

Question 14: While I _____ in the street, I saw my old friend.

- A. was walking B. am walking C. walk D. walked

Question 15: The house was quiet when I _____ home. Everyone _____ to bed.

- A. got/ went B. got/ had gone
C. had got / went D. was getting/ was going

Question 16: Alice _____ for Washington as soon as she had finished her exam.

- A. will leave B. would leave C. leaves D. left

Question 17: He died after he _____ ill for a long time.

- A. was B. had been C. has been D. is

Question 18: Last week, my professor promised that he _____ today.

- A. would come B. will come C. comes D. coming

Question 19: I _____ in Quang Ngai before I moved to Binh Thuan.

- A. have been living B. have lived C. had lived D. had been living

Question 20: I suddenly remembered that I _____ to bring my keys.

- A. having forgotten B. have forgotten C. had forgotten D. forgot

Question 21: The phone _____ for several minutes before I heard it.

- A. had been ringing B. has been ringing C. was ringing D. have been ringing

Question 22: Fifty years ago, people thought we _____ able to control the weather by the 21st century, but it's still not possible.

- A. will have been B. will be C. would be D. are going to be

Question 23: Russell Crowe has been my favorite actor _____ I saw him in Gladiator.

- A. after B. when C. since D. as soon as

Question 24: David! I think someone _____ at the door!

- A. will knock B. knocked C. knocks D. is knocking

Question 25: The preparation _____ by the time the guest _____

- A. had been finished- arrived B. have finished- arrived
C. had finished-were arriving D. have been finished- were arrived

Question 26: When I _____ to the party, Tom and David _____, John _____.

- A. was coming/ had danced/ singing B. had come/ danced/ sang
C. came/ were dancing/ was singing D. have come/ are dancing/ is singing

Question 27: The boy fell while he _____ down the stairs.

A. run B. was running C. running D. runs

Question 28: From the time he arrived home, he _____ a lot of silly questions.

A. ask B. asks C. has asked D. asked

Question 29: She _____ him until he introduced his name.

A. didn't realize B. hasn't realized C. doesn't realize D. hadn't realized

Question 30: A thief broke into Harry's flat and _____ his TV.

A. stealed B. stolen C. stole D. steal

Đáp án

1-B	2-B	3-D	4-B	5-D	6-B	7-C	8-C	9-A	10-D
11-C	12-A	13-A	14-A	15-B	16-D	17-B	18-A	19-C	20-C
21-A	22-C	23-C	24-D	25-A	26-C	27-B	28-C	29-D	30-C

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 4: CÁC VẤN ĐỀ VỀ ĐỘNG TỪ

BÀI 1: PHÂN TỪ

A – LÝ THUYẾT

I. BẢN CHẤT

Phân từ = động/tính từ

Danh động từ = danh từ

II. HÌNH THỨC

HIỆN TẠI PHÂN TỪ PRESENT PARTICIPLE	QUÁ KHỨ PHÂN TỪ PAST PARTICIPLE
V_ing Ví dụ: working, loving, sitting	- Quá khứ phân từ của động từ có quy tắc được tạo thành bằng cách thêm đuôi -ed hoặc -d vào nguyên mẫu. Ví dụ: worked, loved. - Các động từ bất qui tắc Ví dụ: Spent, built.

III. CHỨC NĂNG

❖ Chức năng 1:

Be + V-ing/P2 tạo thành thì của động từ

➤ Present participle (V-ing)

- Active: V-ing/Having Vpp

Ex: I'm studying English

- Passive: Being Vpp/Having been Vpp

Ex: The bridge is being built.

➤ Past participle (Vpp)

- V-ed

- Irregular verbs

Ex: English is being spoken.

❖ Chức năng 2: V-ing/Vpp + N

Chủ động: V-ing	Bị động: Vpp
The leaking pipes	The updated news
Running water	Stolen money
Floating wreckage	Broken glass
Dripping taps	Blocked roads

❖ Tính từ đuôi -ing và -ed

Chủ động: V. ing

Bị động: 2

- The book is interesting

(Chủ động- gây hứng thú)

→ The book interests me.

→ I am interested in the book. (Bị động- bị hứng thú)

- He is a boring man

(Chủ động- gười gây chán)

→ He bores me.

→ I'm bored with him

(Bị động- Bị chán bởi)

❖ Những cặp tính từ đuôi -ing và -ed thường gặp

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| • Interested/interesting | • Tired/tiring |
| • Frightened/frightening | • Surprised/surprising |
| • mused/amusing | • Excited/exciting |
| • mazed/amazing | • Shocked/shocking |
| • Exhausted/exhausting | • leased/pleasing |
| • ored/boring | • Disappointed/disappointing |
| • Frustrated/frustrating | • nnoyed/annoying |

❖ Chức năng 3: Giảm mệnh đề có cùng chủ ngữ

1. HIỆN TẠI PHÂN TỪ V-ing- CHỦ ĐỘNG

- Hành động diễn ra liên tục.
Ex: She opened the door. She saw him crying.
→ Opening the door, she saw him crying.
(1) (2)

(Having opened the door, she saw him crying. → nhấn mạnh hành động open xảy ra trước)

- Nhấn mạnh dạng hoàn thành, xảy ra trước một hành động khác.

They finished their homework, they went out.

(1) (2)

→ Having finished their homework, they went out.

2. QUÁ KHỨ PHÂN TỪ Vpp - BỊ ĐỘNG

She was punished by her father. She cried.

(1) (2)

→ Punished by her father, she cried.

(Being punished by her father, she cried.

Having been punished by her father, she cried.)

❖ **Chức năng 4: V-ed, V-ing/V-ing, V-ed**

- She stayed at home all day, watching TV.

She stayed at home all day and watched TV.

- He fell, striking his head against the door.

He fell and stroke his head against the door.

- The plane crashed, its bombs exploding as it hit the ground.

- Knowing that he wouldn't be able to buy food on his journey, he took large supplies with him

= As/Because/Since he knew...

❖ **Chức năng 5: iảm mệnh đề quan hệ**

a) CHỦ ĐỘNG → V-ING

- The man who is sitting over there is my father

→ The man sitting over there is my father.

- The flowers which give off a fragrant perfume are not very expensive.

→ The flowers giving off a fragrant perfume are not very expensive.

b) BỊ ĐỘNG → P2

- Have you ever read any novel which was written by Marc Levy?

→ Have you ever read any novel written by Marc Levy?

- The newspaper which was edited by Jane was well-known.

→ The newspaper edited by Jane was well-known.

IV. PHÂN BIỆT PHÂN TỬ VỚI DANH ĐỘNG TỪ

Phân tử	Danh động từ
The leaking pipes → Cái ống nước (pipes) chủ động làm ra hành động rò rỉ (leaking)	The sleeping bag → sleeping không phải hành động chủ động của "bag" Sleeping ở đây mang nghĩa chỉ mục đích (cái túi để ngủ).
Chức năng của phân tử 1. Tạo thành các thì	Chức năng của danh động từ 1. Làm chủ ngữ

I am studying English. 2. Đóng vai trò tính từ updated news leaking pipes 3. Rút gọn mệnh đề • Washing his car, he sang happily • The girl lending me this book is my best friend	Studying English is very useful. 2. Theo sau động từ She enjoys watching cartoons. 3. Sau giới từ I'm interested in watching films 4. Tạo danh từ ghép cooking oil, reading lamp
---	--

B – LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1

Question 1: Nam's success is really _____ to us.

- A. surprisingly B. surprise C. surprised D. surprising

Question 2: His funny story is so _____ that we can't help laughing.

- A. amusement B. amused C. amuse D. amusing

Question 3: John and Mary are engaged. They are going to get _____.

- A. marry B. to marry C. marrying D. married

Question 4: We met a lot of _____ people while we were traveling in Ho Chi Minh city.

- A. interesting B. interest C. interestingly D. interested

Question 5: At the end of the day's work, she often finds _____.

- A. exhausted B. exhaust C. exhaustedly D. exhausting

Question 6: Children are _____ with these horror films.

- A. terrify B. terrifying C. terrified D. terribly

Question 7: All of us were _____ in the film on TV last night.

- A. interest B. interesting C. interestingly D. interested

Question 8: The film was so _____ that they all saw it through.

- A. interestingly B. interested C. have interested D. interesting

Question 9: The news sounds _____. We are happy to hear it.

- A. interesting B. interest C. interested D. interestingly

Question 10: The weather is truly _____ today.

- A. depressed B. depressingly C. depressing D. depression

Question 11: The children are _____ with watching the same programme every day.

- A. bored B. boring C. bore D. boredom

Question 12: We were all _____ at his progress.

- A. surprise B. surprise C. surprised D. surprising

Question 13: We got _____ after we had worked for four hours in the field.

- A. exhausted B. to exhaust C. exhaust D. exhausting

Question 14: Lan is really _____ about going to Singapore.

- A. exciting B. excited C. excitedly D. excitement

Question 15: I have never met one of the most _____ people like that.

- A. boring B. bored C. bore D. boredom

Question 16: His parents' _____ made him work harder.

- A. disappointingly B. disappointed C. disappointing D. disappointment

Question 17: I find horror films really _____.

- A. terrify B. terrifying C. terrified D. terribly

Question 18: Tom felt so _____ that he went bed early.

- A. tirelessly B. tire C. tiring D. tired

Question 19: It will be an _____ experience for us to discover the formation of the stone.

- A. excitedly B. excitement C. exciting D. excited

Question 20: Tam is very _____ with his school result.

- A. disappointment B. disappoint C. disappointed D. disappointing

Question 21: We didn't see it through because of the _____ film.

- A. bore B. bored C. boring D. boredom

Question 22: The audience soon got _____ because of the boring performance.

- A. boring B. bored C. to bore D. bore

Question 23: Hoa was amused at my _____ story.

- A. invent B. invented C. inventing D. invention

Question 24: Huong teaches small children. She often finds her job _____.

- A. exhausted B. exhaustedly C. exhausting D. exhaust

Question 25: The girls are _____ of the long journey.

- A. tirelessly B. tired C. tiring D. tiredness

Question 26: The weather this summer is really _____.

- A. disappointed B. disappointment C. disappointing D. disappointingly

Question 27: They had a _____ discussion on biology last night.

- A. bore B. boredom C. boring D. boring

Question 28: Melanie was the only person _____ a letter of thanks.

A. wrote B. written C. to write D. writing

Question 29: The pilot was the only man after the crash.

A. was rescued B. rescued C. rescuing D. to be rescued

Question 30: I'm afraid I am not _____ to talk about this matter.

A. qualifying B. qualified C. quality D. qualitative

Question 31: The movie on T.V last night made me _____.

A. boredom B. bored C. bore D. boring

Question 32: The man _____ over there is my boyfriend.

A. sit B. sitting C. sat D. is sitting

Question 33: I feel so _____ and sleepy today because I worked late last night.

A. tiredness B. tiring C. tired D. tire

Question 34: She said that the report was a bit _____.

A. confuse B. confuses C. confusing D. confused

Question 35: A careful analysis of the _____ products on the market indicated that our product lacked innovation and optional features.

A. completing B. completed C. completes D. completion

Question 36: The _____ retail price for the shoe polish is \$3.99, roughly 25% lower than other shoe polishes currently on the market.

A. suggest B. suggested C. suggesting D. suggestion

Question 37: Robert is getting ready to realize his dream: opening a business _____ plants on the Internet.

A. sell B. sellS C. selling D. sold

Question 38: _____ tired after a long hard day, the marketing expert decided to call it a day and went home.

A. feel B. feels C. felt D. feeling

Question 39: The book _____ last year has been lost.

A. bought B. be bought C. buying D. buy

Question 40: When _____ your application, be sure to check the reply address is correct.

A. send B. sends C. sending D. sent

Question 41: A notice _____ today's special events is posted on the bulletin board.

A. shown B. showed C. showing D. showing

Question 42: The secretary will get the forms _____ tomorrow.

A. signed B. to be signed C. sign D. signing

Question 43: The head of the department_____ the banquet room for a party should submit a required form to the Catering Department.

- A. use B. used C. using D. will use

Question 44: Please complete the return list_____ the reason for the return and it will be processed promptly.

- A. detail B. detailed C. detailing D. in detail

Question 45: This film is quite_____. All the children are _____ in it.

- A. interesting/ interesting B. interesting/ interested
C. interested/ interesting D. interested/ interested

Question 46: Welton Textiles Inc. made a net profit of £500 million, _____ it to fund its expansion across the continent.

- A. allowing B. allows C. allowance D. allowably

Question 47: According to the preliminary analysis by the labor department, the recovery of the economy this year lead to an increase in employment, _____ with the same period last year.

- A. compare B. comparing C. compared D. comparison

Question 48: _____ one hand on the steering wheel, Ann opened a can of soda pop with her free hand.

- A. To keep B. Keep C. In keeping D. Keeping

Question 49: When _____ to explain his mistake, the new employee cleared his throat nervously.

- A. asking B. asked C. to be asked D. being asked

Question 50: Some customers were very_____ about the return policy.

- A. confuse B. confuses C. confusing D. confused

Đáp án

1-D	2-D	3-D	4-A	5-A	6-C	7-D	8-D	9-A	10-C
11-A	12-C	13-A	14-B	15-A	16-D	17-B	18-D	19-C	20-C
21-C	22-B	23-B	24-C	25-B	26-C	27-C	28-C	29-D	30-B
31-B	32-B	33-C	34-C	35-B	36-B	37-C	38-D	39-AC	40-
41-C	42-A	43-C	44-C	45-B	46-A	47-C	48-D	49-B	50-D

LUYỆN TẬP 2

Question 1: _____ their work, they went home.

A. Finishing B. Having finished C. Had finished D. Had finished

Question 2: The girl _____ behind you is naughty.

A. stands B. stood C. is standing D. standing

Question 3: _____ their farm work, the farmers returned home.

A. Finishing B. Finish C. Having finished D. Being finished

Question 4: _____ by the visitor, the clavichord could not be used.

A. Broken B. Break C. Breaking D. Broke

Question 5: After _____ dinner, I watch television

A. eat B. eating C. eaten D. ate

Question 6: When _____ in international trade, letters of credit are convenient.

A. used B. are used C. using D. they used

Question 7: She swam to the shore _____ the night in the water.

A. having spent B. having spending C. when spending D. had spent

Question 8: I believe here is somebody _____ on the door.

A. to knock B. knock C. knocked D. knocking

Question 9: The lady _____ in blue is her aunt.

A. dressed B. dressing C. is dressing D. in dress

Question 10: _____ from what you say, you are innocent.

A. To judge B. Judging C. Judge D. To be judged

Question 11: _____ you to the job, he felt calm.

A. Appointed B. Appoint C. Having appointed D. To appoint

Question 12: _____ so much, the doll is still on the shelf.

A. Cost B. Costs C. To cost D. Costing

Question 13: _____ at by everyone, he was disappointed.

A. Laughed B. Laugh C. Laughing D. In laugh

Question 14: _____ anxious to please us, they told us all we wanted to know.

A. Be B. To be C. Being D. In being

Question 15: _____ the room, the man was no longer there.

A. Entering B. When we entered C. On entering D. Having entered

Question 16: Since _____ his new business, Bob has been working 16 hours a day.

A. open B. opening C. opened D.

Question 17: I really like horror films but my sister doesn't. She thinks they are very _____ and _____ .

A. frightened / bores B. frightening / bored C. frightened / boring D. frightening / boring

Question 18: I didn't think you were _____ in photography.

A. interested B. interesting C. interesting D. interests

Question 19: The recent oil spill along the Belgian coast resulted in _____ consequences for the industry.

A. worried B. worrying C. worries D. worrier

Question 20: Our Design Department has recently purchased the most _____ software available, with the aim of greatly increasing our design capabilities.

A. sophisticate B. sophisticating C. sophisticated D. sophistication

Question 21: The plane began to move in a rather _____ way.

A. alarming B. alarmed C. alarmingly D. alarm

Question 22: I'm sorry, I can't come tonight. I'm completely _____ .

A. exhausted B. exhaust C. exhaustedly D. exhausting

Question 23: You look _____. Do you have any problem?

A. worried B. worrying C. worries D. worrier

Question 24: I can't eat this. It's _____ .

A. disgusting B. disgusted C. disgustingly D. disgust

Question 25: We saw many _____ places during our holiday.

A. interested B. interesting C. interest D. interests

Question 26: She doesn't like flying. She's _____ .

A. frightening B. frightened C. frighten D. frightfully

Question 27: It was very _____ for Tom when he was caught travelling without ticket.

A. embarrassing B. embarrassed C. embarrassing D. embarrassment

Question 28: He was very _____ with the results of his exam.

A. disappointingly B. disappointed C. disappointing D. disappointment

Question 29: I think I could do with a _____ holiday.

A. relaxing B. relaxing C. relax D. relaxation

Question 30: It was such a _____ story everybody ended up crying.

A. moving B. moved C. movement D. move

Đáp án

1-B	2-D	3-C	4-A	5-B	6-A	7-A	8-D	9-B	10-B
11-C	12-D	13-A	14-C	15-B	16-B	17-D	18-A	19-B	20-C
21-A	22-A	23-A	24-A	25-B	26-B	27-A	28-B	29-A	30-A

BÀI 2: CÁCH DÙNG BE-HAVE-DO

A – LÝ THUYẾT

I. TO BE

1. Form

	Quá khứ	Hiện tại	Tương lai
Tobe	Was	Am	Will be
		Is	
	Were	Are	

2. Cách sử dụng động từ “ TO BE”

2.1. Be + Complement (n)

Ex: I am a teacher.

2.2. Be + Adjective

Ex: I am thin.

2.3. Be + adv of place

Ex: The cat is on the table

2.4. Được dùng hỏi tuổi tác

Ex: How old are you? - I'm 26 years old

2.5. Được dùng chỉ kích thước và trọng lượng.

Ex:

- How high is the building? = What is the height of the building?

→ It's 3 meters ig

- How tall are you? = What is your height?

→ I am 1.65 metres

- What is your weight?/What do you weigh?/How much do you weigh?

→ I am 65 kilos/I weigh 65 kilos

2.6. Được dùng chỉ giá cả.

Ex:

- How much are these oranges? = How much do these oranges cost?

→ They are \$6/They cost \$6

- How much is this melon?= What does this melon cost?

3. Cách sử dụng đặc biệt của động từ “ TO BE”

3.1. Be + TO V: nghĩa vụ phải làm gì

Ex:

- No one is to leave this building without the permission of the police.
- He is to stay here till I return.
- They are to wait for us at the station.

3.2. *Be about to do st*

- = *be ready to do st*
- = *be going to do st*
- = *be on the point of doing st*

Ex:

- They're just about to leave.
- He was about to dive when he saw a shark.

3.3. *There is/are/was/were/will be + (S): Có...*

Ex:

- There is a cat on the table.
- There are 5 cats on the table.
- There was only a tree in front of my house.

II. ĐỘNG TỪ “HAVE”

1. “Have” là trợ động từ trong thì hoàn thành

Have	Quá khứ	Hiện tại	Tương lai
	Had + P2	Have + P2	Will have P2
		Has + P2	

2. “Have” là động từ chính

2.1. *Have có nghĩa là (có):*

Ex:

- I have (got) a dog.
- Have you got a dog? – Yes, I have/ No haven't
- Do you have a dog? – Yes, I do/ No, I don't
- He has a black beard.

2.2. *Have + bữa ăn*

Ex: Have breakfast/lunch/dinner

- What time do you usually have dinner?

2.3. *Have a party/have a holiday*

Have a trip/vacation.

Ex: We're having a party tomorrow.

2.4. *Have a good time = enjoy*

Ex:

- Did you have a good time at the theatre?
- Have a good time!
- I am having a wonderful holiday.

2.5. *Have difficulty (in) doing smth*

Ex: Did you have any difficulty finding this place?

2.6. *Have a drink*

Have some coffee/tea

Ex: Would you like to have some coffee?

2.7. *Have a bath: đi tắm.*

Ex: I can't answer the phone, I'm having a bath.

2.8. *Have sb do smth: nhờ, sai ai làm gì*

Ex: I have my brother clean the floor.

2.9. *Have st P2/done: (bị động truyền khiến)*

Ex:

- I have a floor cleaned by my brother.
- I had my hair cut yesterday.

III. ĐỘNG TỪ “DO”

1. “Do” làm động từ chính

1.1. *Do homework: làm bài tập.*

Ex:- He does homework.

1.2. *Do the dishes/washing up: rửa bát.*

1.3. *Do me a favor = help sb: giúp ai.*

2. “Do” làm trợ động từ

2.1. *Hình thành nên thể phủ định và nghi vấn*

Ex:

- e doesn't work.
- Do they like apples?
- Did you come yesterday?
- What do you do at weekend?

Trợ ĐT ĐT chính

2.2. *Do/does/did + INF → nhấn mạnh*

Ex: - I do think that Hanoi is badly polluted.

- He does think that Hanoi is badly polluted.

- She didn't expect me to go, but I did go.

2.3. *Diễn tả sự đồng tình/phản đối.*

Ex: Tom talks too much.

→ No, he doesn't.

→ Yes, he does.

2.4. *Câu hỏi đuôi- tag questions.*

Ex: He lives here, doesn't he?

She hardly goes to the library, does she?

2.5. *Dùng với cấu trúc Neither/either/so/too.*

- Câu khẳng định: So/too

Ex: He is tall → I'm, too/So am I

He learns well → I do, too/So do I

- Câu phủ định: Not either/Neither

Ex: He isn't tall. → I am not, either/Neither am I.

He doesn't learn well. → I don't, either/Neither do I.

2.6. *Dùng trong câu mệnh lệnh.*

Ex: Don't talk in class!

Do come with us!

2.7. *Giản lược trong cấu trúc so sánh*

Ex: He drives better than I do.

B – LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1:

Question 1: If a child is picked up in the clinic , they _____ to wait in the hallway by the side exit until their name is called.

A. do

B. is

C. am

D. are

Question 2: _____ yet?

A. Have the letters been typed

B. Have been the letters typed

C. Have the letters typed

D. Have the letters typed

Question 3: Michael and Susan _____ both from England.

A. are

B. is

C. do

D. does

Question 4: I _____ very tired after 6 lessons at school.

- A. are B. is C. am D. does

Question 5: Would you please _____ me a favor and take this letter to the post office?

- A. done B. to do C. did D. do

Question 6: They had a boy _____ that yesterday.

- A. done B. to do C. did D. did

Question 7: My mother and I _____ going shopping today.

- A. do B. is C. am D. are

Question 8: We _____ not sure what to buy for lunch.

- A. are B. is C. do D. does

Question 9: She _____ not sure she wants to visit him.

- A. does B. is C. do D. are

Question 10: The cat _____ four kittens

- A. does B. is C. has D. have

Question 11: The two dogs _____ five puppies altogether.

- A. do B. are C. has D. have

Question 12: I _____ bought a new bike.

- A. do B. are C. has D. have

Question 13: How many bikes _____ you got?

- A. have B. are C. has D. do

Question 14: Mom _____ baked cupcakes.

- A. have B. are C. has D. do

Question 15: We _____ only ten cakes left.

- A. do B. are C. has D. have

Question 16: My neighbor _____ three houses in this city!

- A. have B. are C. has D. do

Question 17: I _____ gymnastics every day.

- A. do B. are C. has D. have

Question 18: My sister _____ like gymnastics.

- A. are B. is C. do D. does

Question 19: Stephen _____ n't like swimming.

- A. does B. is C. is D. have

Question 20: What about you? _____ you like swimming?

A. does B. are C. do D. have

Question 21: Food, air and clothes _____ necessary for life.

A. was B. were C. is D. are

Question 22: I _____ a vegetarian since 1998.

A. am B. was C. have been D. had been

Question 23: She'll be a millionaire by the time she _____ forty.

A. was B. is C. will be D. is going to be

Question 24: He said everything _____ all right.

A. is B. will be C. can be D. would be

Question 25: Where is your brother? He _____ a bath.

A. has B. had C. is having D. will have

Question 26: After she _____ some sandwiches, she had a drink.

A. had B. will have C. had had D. would have.

Question 27: If she _____ the minister, she would have reformed the management board.

A. is B. were C. had been D. would be

Question 28: Where _____ your sister born?

A. were B. was C. did D. is

Question 29: We _____ have white wine, but we _____ red wine

A. didn't/had B. don't/had C. did/didn't D. didn't/have

Question 30: She's finished the course, _____?

A. isn't she B. doesn't she C. didn't she D. hasn't she

Question 31: You've never had a girlfriend before, _____ you?

A. haven't B. have C. had D. hadn't

Question 32: You have tea for breakfast, _____ you?

A. didn't B. haven't C. don't D. won't

Question 33: You stopped at the traffic lights, _____ you?

A. don't B. do C. did D. didn't

Question 34: Many young people want to work for a humanitarian organization, _____?

A. doesn't it B. does it C. didn't they D. don't they

Question 35: John gave you the book yesterday, _____?

A. did he B. didn't he C. did John D. didn't it

Question 36: You don't know where she is, _____?

A. don't you B. do you C. isn't she D. is she

Đáp án

1-D	2-A	3-A	4-C	5-D	6-D	7-D	8-A	9-B	10-C
11-D	12-D	13-A	14-C	15-D	16-C	17-A	18-D	19-A	20-C
21-D	22-C	23-B	24-D	25-C	26-C	27-C	28-B	29-A	30-D
31-B	32-C	33-D	34-D	35-B	36-B	37-C	38-A	39-D	40-A
41-C	42-A	43-A	44-B	45-D	46-C	47-D	48-A	49-B	50-A

LUYỆN TẬP 2:

Question 1: A series of lectures.....being presented at the Central Hall this week.

- A. are B. will be C. has become D. is

Question 2: Bread and butter my usual breakfast

- A. is B. are C. will be D. have been

Question 3: There no schools in this area before liberation.

- A. is B. were C. was D. has been

Question 4: Heselling motorbike for 10 years

- A. have been B. will have C. was D. has been

Question 5: I had my assistantthe report.

- A. type B. typed C. to type D. to typing

Question 6: Don't go out now. We're about to..... lunch

- A. eat B. eating C. have D. having

Question 7: You and I are fun people,?

- A. are we B. aren't we C. are us? D. aren't us?

Question 8: Hejust.....the dishes.

- A. have...done B. have....made C. has....done D. has...made

Question 9:you got any money?

- A. Do B. Does C. Have D. Has

Question 10: All students must.....homework before going to class

- A. make B. have C. get D. do

Question 11: Would you please me a favor and take this letter to the post office?

- A. help B. do C. have D. make

Question 12: Mary didn't know the answer to the teacher's question,.....

- A. neither didn't Tom B. so did Tom C. neither did Tom D. so didn't Tom

Question 13: He plays badminton better than

A. she do B. do she C. she does D. she

Question 14: Idifficulty in finding a suitable job

A. have B. has C. do D. am

Question 15: I am a student and.....my younger brother

A. so does B. so is C. neither is D. neither does

Question 16: She has just bought a new bicycle, she?

A. doesn't B. does C. hasn't D. has

Question 17: The teacher says weto keep silence in class

A. be B. are C. is D. to be

Question 18: I was about and see you

A. to coming B. coming C. come D. to come

Question 19: You have got many friends there,you?

A. don't B. do C. haven't D. have

Question 20: The pen and paper on the desk

A. is B. am C. are D. be

Question 21: He's finished his work,?

A. hasn't he B. isn't he C. has he D. is he

Question 22: I'm going to my car fixed tomorrow

A. make B. have C. do D. be

Question 23: Would you like to.....some tea?

A. do B. eat C. be D. have

Question 24: The boy's brought up by his grandmother,he?

A. hasn't B. has C. isn't D. is

Question 25: I prefer taking a shower to a bath

A. get B. do C. have D. make

Question 26: I hope you willa good time in French

A. have B. make C. be D. do

Question 27: He's been sentenced to a year's imprisonment,he?

A. isn't B. is C. has D. hasn't

Question 28: I don't think you can do it, and.....my mother

A. so does B. so is C. neither does D. neither is

Question 29: Food prices are going up all the time, for example oranges now 20% more expensive than last year

A. are **B.** is **C.** have **D.** has

Question 30: This.....one of the best films Iever seen

A. is/ has **B.** are/ have **C.** are/has **D.** is/have

Đáp án

1-A	2-A	3-B	4-D	5-A	6-C	7-B	8-C	9-C	10-D
11-B	12-C	13-C	14-A	15-B	16-C	17-B	18-D	19-C	20-C
21-A	22-B	23-D	24-C	25-C	26-A	27-D	28-C	29-A	30-D

BÀI 3: CÁC LOẠI ĐỘNG TỪ

A – LÝ THUYẾT

1. Nội động từ (*intransitive verbs*)

- Nội động từ diễn tả hành động nội tại của người nói hay người thực hiện hành động.

Ví dụ: - He walks.

- Birds fly.

- Nội động từ không cần có tân ngữ trực tiếp đi kèm. Nếu có thì phải có giới từ đi trước và cụm từ này sẽ đóng vai trò ngữ trạng từ chứ không phải là tân ngữ trực tiếp.

Ví dụ: - She walks in the garden.

- Birds fly in the sky.

2. Ngoại động từ (*transitive verbs*)

- Ngoại động từ diễn tả hành động gây ra trực tiếp lên người hoặc vật.

Ví dụ: The cat killed the mouse.

- Ngoại động từ luôn cần thêm yếu tố bên ngoài là một danh từ hay đại từ theo sau để hoàn thành nghĩa của câu. Danh (đại) từ đi theo sau ngoại động từ là tân ngữ trực tiếp.

NOTE

Sự phân chia nội động từ và ngoại động từ chỉ là tương đối, vì trong câu này, động từ ấy là nội động từ nhưng trong câu khác nó lại là ngoại động từ.

- The glass broke. (Cốc vỡ) - nội động từ
- The boy broke the glass. (Cậu bé làm vỡ cốc) - ngoại động từ
- The bus stopped. (Chiếc xe buýt dừng lại) - nội động từ
- The driver stopped the bus. (Tài xế dừng xe buýt lại) - ngoại động từ
- The bell rings. (Chuông kêu) - nội động từ
- He rings the bells. (Ông ấy rung chuông) - ngoại động từ

Write whether each sentence contains a transitive or intransitive verb.

1. We **laughed**.
2. He **opened** the door.
3. She **crossed** the street.
4. We **drove** to San Francisco.
5. They **talked**.
6. He **rang** the doorbell.
7. I **called** my mother.
8. You **learned** Spanish.

9. She **made** spaghetti.

10. You **slept** for three hours.

II. ĐỘNG TỪ CÓ QUY TẮC – ĐỘNG TỪ BẤT QUY TẮC

1. Động từ có quy tắc

Động từ có quy tắc (Regular verbs) là động từ có hình thức quá khứ đơn (simple past) và quá khứ phân từ (past participle) được thành lập bằng cách thêm -ed vào động từ nguyên mẫu (infinitive).

Ex:

work	worked	worked
invite	invited	invited
study	studied	studied

2. Động từ bất quy tắc

Động từ bất quy tắc (Regular verbs) là động từ có hình thức quá khứ đơn (simple past) và quá khứ phân từ (past participle) được thành lập không theo quy tắc nhất định nào.

Ex:

Be	was/were	been
see	saw	seen
teach	taught	taught

III. TRỢ ĐỘNG TỪ

1. Giới thiệu chung về trợ động từ

- Dùng để bổ nghĩa thêm cho động từ chính về tính chất, mức độ, khả năng, hình thái, ... của hành động.
- Không thay thế được cho động từ chính (phải luôn có động từ chính đi kèm)
- Do

Ex: Does Sam write all his own reports?

- Have

Ex: The secretaries haven't written the letters yet.

- Be

Ex: Terry is writing an e-mail to a client at present.

Động Từ Khuyết Thiếu

Can	- Could
May	- Might
Must	- Shall

Ought to - Should

Will - Would

Trợ Động Từ Đặc Biệt

Need - Dare

Have to - Used to

- You needn't/don't need to go now.
- Have you to/Do you have to hand it in tomorrow?
- Dare you/Do you dare to hit me?
- I used not to/didn't use to wake up late.

2. Chức năng của trợ động từ

2.1. Hình thành thể phủ định bằng cách thêm NOT sau trợ động từ.

do – do not – don't

does – does not – doesn't

did – did not – didn't

is – is not – isn't

am – am not – amn't

are – are not – aren't

have – have not – haven't

has – has not – hasn't

had – had not – hadn't

can – cannot – can't

could – could not – couldn't

may – may not

might – might not

must - mustn't

shall – shall not – shan't

should – should not – shouldn't

ought to – ought not to – oughtn't to

will – will not – won't

would – would not – wouldn't

need – needn't

dare – dare not (to)

have to – don't have to – haven't got to

used to – didn't use to – used not to

Ví dụ:

I have finished my homework.

→ have not (haven't) finished my homework.

They will help us.

→ They will not (won't) help us.

2.2. Hình thành thể nghi vấn bằng đảo ngữ.

She is cleaning the floor.

→ Is she cleaning the floor?

He cooked my breakfast.

→ Did he cook my breakfast?

	Quá khứ đơn	Hiện tại đơn	Tương lai đơn
+	did	do does	will
-	didn't	don't doesn't	won't
?	Did S V?	Do/Does S V?	Will S V?
	QKTD	HTTD	TLTD
+	was were	Am/is are	Will be
-	was not were not	Am not/is not are not	won't be
?	Was/Were S V-ing?	Am/is/are S V-ing?	Will S be V-ing?
	QKHT	HTHT	TLHT
+	had	have/has	will have
-	hadn't	have/has not	won't have
?	Had S Vpp?	Have/has S Vpp?	Will S have Vpp?
	QKHTD	HTHTTD	TLHTTD
+	had been	have/has been	will have been
-	Hadn't been	have/has not been	won't have been
?	Had S been V-ing?	Have/has S been V-ing?	Will S have been V-ing?

2.3. Hình thành câu hỏi đuôi.

- Marry doesn't love Peter, does she?
- Jonny has eaten sugar, hasn't he?

2.4. Hình thành câu trả lời ngắn.

- Does it take long hours to travel from here to your house?

Yes, it does.

No, it doesn't.

- Mary doesn't like fish, neither does Fred.
- Ms. Phuong works as a teacher.

So do I.

2.5. Được dùng lại trong loại câu tính lược.

- You will spend your holidays in Spain. Will you? (= Will you spend your holiday in Spain?)
- You are dating with that guy. Are you? (= Are you dating with that guy?)

IV. ĐỘNG TỪ CHÍNH & TRỢ ĐỘNG TỪ

- Do → trợ động từ

What do you want?

- Do → động từ chính

I always do my homework in the evening.

- What do you usually do in the evening?
(trợ động từ) (động từ chính)

- Have/has Vpp or have/has been V-ing → trợ động từ

He has finished the report.

- Have/has → động từ chính

He has no job.

- To be → trợ động từ

I am reading a newspaper.

- To be → động từ chính

I am hungry.

B – LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1:

Question 1: Tell me, _____ you coming to the party?

- A.** am **B.** is **C.** are **D.** do

Question 2: They _____ finished the job.

- A.** have **B.** has **C.** are **D.** do

Question 3: What _____ you do every Sunday? do

- A. did B. is C. are D. do

Question 4: I _____ like to watch TV. There is a good film on.

- A. would B. should C. will D. do

Question 5: Mi _____ not want to stay at home. Mi wants to go out with her friends.

- A. doesn't B. is C. does D. do

Question 6: He _____ called me twice this morning.

- A. has B. is C. did D. do

Question 7: What _____ she do in her free time?

- A. does B. is C. has D. do

Question 8: Where _____ they go yesterday?

- A. does B. did C. are D. do

Question 9: She _____ always wanted to meet him.

- A. was B. is C. has D. have

Question 10: What _____ they doing when you came in?

- A. was B. were C. are D. have

Question 11: What _____ you been doing?

- A. have B. has C. did D. do

Question 12: I _____ like his jokes. They made me sick.

- A. did B. didn't C. don't D. do

Question 13: Mercedes cars _____ made in Germany.

- A. are B. is C. will been D. had

Question 14: I am mad about fish but I _____ like roast chicken.

- A. do B. don't C. didn't D. does

Question 15: America _____ discovered by Christopher Columbus in 1492.

- A. were B. are C. is D. was

Question 16: Is it true that you _____ making a trip to Africa next week?

- A. are B. is C. was D. were

Question 17: She _____ come yet; we're still waiting for her.

- A. don't B. doesn't C. hasn't D. didn't

Question 18: She doesn't work in a hotel, _____?

- A. does she B. does she C. is she D. would she

Question 19: They need some new clothes, _____?

- A. they don't B. they needn't C. don't they D. no answer is correct

Question 20: We live in a tiny flat, _____?

- A. don't we B. do we C. are we D. we don't

Question 21: She studies very hard every night, _____?

- A. does she B. doesn't she C. is she D. would she

Question 22: He doesn't need to study.

- A. I don't need neither. B. Neither do I.
C. I should either. D. Neither need I.

Question 23: The car _____ not stolen.

- A. was B. has C. does D. had

Question 24: You don't like spicy food, _____?

- A. are you B. aren't you C. do I D. do you

Question 25: She doesn't cook very often, _____?

- A. does she B. doesn't she C. is she D. would she

Question 26: The test _____ written.

- A. will not be B. are not C. has D. has

Question 27: Everyone can learn how to swim, _____?

- A. can't she B. can she C. A&B are correct D. can't they

Question 28: Nobody cheated in the exam, _____?

- A. does he B. doesn't she C. did they D. didn't they

Question 29: Phillip can't type well.

- A. I will either. B. Neither could I. C. I could either. D. I can't either.

Question 30: I enjoy listening to pop music.

- A. So do I. B. I am, too. C. I don't. D. Neither do I.

State whether the verbs in bold in the following sentences are auxiliary verbs or full verbs by choosing the correct answer (A or B).

Question 31: Dad **is** working in the garden.

- A. auxiliary verb B. full verb

Question 32: We **do** the shopping once a week.

- A. auxiliary verb B. full verb

Question 33: These students never **have** classes on Fridays.

- A. auxiliary verb B. full verb

Question 34: What **do** you do for a living?

A. auxiliary verb

B. full verb

Question 35: The kids **were** dancing to the music.

A. auxiliary verb

B. full verb

Question 36: **Did** you see him?

A. auxiliary verb

B. full verb

State whether the verbs in bold in the following sentences are transitive verbs or intransitive verbs by choosing the correct answer (A or B).

Question 37: Heat **expands** metals.

A. transitive verb

B. intransitive verb

Question 38: Metals **expand** on heating.

A. transitive verb

B. intransitive verb

Question 39: The driver **stopped** the car.

A. transitive verb

B. intransitive verb

Question 40: The car **stopped** abruptly.

A. transitive verb

B. intransitive verb

Question 41: You must **speak** the truth.

A. transitive verb

B. intransitive verb

Question 42: You must **speak** loudly.

A. transitive verb

B. intransitive verb

Question 43: The boy is **flying** the kite.

A. transitive verb

B. intransitive verb

Question 44: The birds are **flying** in the sky.

A. transitive verb

B. intransitive verb

Choose the correct past forms and past participle forms of the following verbs.

Question 45: go - _____ - _____

A. went, gone

B. goed, goed

C. went, went

D. gone, went

Question 46: read - _____ - _____

A. readed, readed

B. rode, riden

C. read, read

D. rode, roden

Question 47: live - _____ - _____

A. lave, liven

B. lived, liven

C. lit, lit

D. lived, lived

Question 48: break - _____ - _____

A. breaked, broked

B. broke, broken

C. broke, broke

D. broke, broken

Question 49: fall - _____ - _____

A. fell, fallen B. felt, fallen C. felt, felt D. fell, felt

Question 50: fly - _____ - _____

A. flyed, flyed B. flew, flown C. flied, flied D. flown, flew

Đáp án

1-C	2-A	3-D	4-A	5-C	6-A	7-A	8-B	9-C	10-B
11-A	12-B	13-A	14-B	15-D	16-A	17-C	18-A	19-C	20-A
21-B	22-B	23-A	24-D	25-A	26-A	27-D	28-C	29-D	30-A
31-A	32-B	33-B	34-A	35-A	36-A	37-A	38-B	39-A	40-B
41-A	42-B	43-A	44-B	45-A	46-C	47-D	48-B	49-A	50-B

LUYỆN TẬP 2:

Question 1: Something is wrong with Jane today, _____?

A. does she B. isn't it C. is she D. isn't she

Question 2: She's been studying English for two years, _____?

A. does she B. doesn't she C. has she D. hasn't she

Question 3: The train _____ just arrived.

A. do B. does C. have D. has

Question 4: They _____ been learning English for two years.

A. do B. does C. have D. has

Question 5: My uncle _____ not eat fish.

A. do B. does C. have D. has

Question 6: I _____ not live here.

A. do B. does C. have D. has

Question 7: _____ anybody rung up for me?

A. do B. does C. have D. has

Question 8: I _____ not working today.

A. am B. is C. were D. was

Question 9: When her father came home, she _____ talking on the phone.

A. was B. had been C. is D. have been

Question 10: When I arrived at the party, Jane _____ already gone home.

A. has B. did C. had D. no answer is correct

Question 11: Who _____ eaten my biscuits?

A. is B. has C. are D. have

Question 12: It _____ not matter.

- A. is B. does C. has D. do

Question 13: Stan isn't at work right now.

- A. Neither will I. B. Neither am I. C. Neither should I. D. Neither do I.

Question 14: What music _____ played?

- A. will be B. won't C. would D. had be

Question 15: Has the tree _____ cut?

- A. be B. is C. is D. are

State whether the verbs in bold in the following sentences are auxiliary verbs or full verbs by choosing the correct answer (A or B).

Question 16: The door **is** closed.

- A. auxiliary verb B. full verb

Question 17: Where **have** you been?

- A. auxiliary verb B. full verb

Question 18: My parents **are** on holiday.

- A. auxiliary verb B. full verb

Question 19: I **had** just finished my breakfast when the phone rang.

- A. auxiliary verb B. full verb

Question 20: What do you **do** for a living?

- A. auxiliary verb B. full verb

State whether the verbs in bold in the following sentences are transitive verbs or intransitive verbs by choosing the correct answer (A or B).

Question 21: We **are playing** the violin.

- A. transitive verb B. intransitive verb

Question 22: They **are starting** at 2:00 PM.

- A. transitive verb B. intransitive verb

Question 23: We **lived** in Mexico for two years.

- A. transitive verb B. intransitive verb

Question 24: They **laughed** at the joke.

- A. transitive verb B. intransitive verb

Question 25: He **gave** the book to the teacher.

- A. transitive verb B. intransitive verb

Choose the correct answer (A, B, C, or D)

Question 26: My brother _____ to Mexico three times.

- A. has been B. have been C. has be D. have be

Question 27: I've _____ my keys.

- A. lose B. losed C. loosen D. lost

Question 28: I _____ John last week.

- A. saw B. seem C. seed D. seen

Question 29: I have _____ Julie for ten years.

- A. known B. knew C. know D. knowed

Question 30: She _____ to refill the petrol tank.

- A. stop B. stoped C. stopped D. stoppen

Đáp án

1-B	2-D	3-D	4-C	5-B	6-A	7-D	8-A	9-A	10-C
11-B	12-B	13-B	14-A	15-C	16-A	17-A	18-B	19-A	20-B
21-A	22-B	23-B	24-B	25-A	26-A	27-D	28-A	29-A	30-C

BÀI 4: ĐỘNG TỪ KHUYẾT THIỂU**A – LÝ THUYẾT****I. ĐẶC ĐIỂM CHUNG CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ KHUYẾT THIỂU**

- Luôn cộng với động từ nguyên mẫu không to:
Ex: They can speak French and English.
- Chia giống nhau với tất cả các ngôi:
Ex: He should be home at 7.00 p.m.
You should go to bed before 10.00 p.m.
- Chỉ có nhiều nhất là 2 dạng: Dạng hiện tại (can, will...) và dạng quá khứ (could, would...).
- **Các động từ khuyết thiếu**

Thể khẳng định	Thể phủ định	Nghi vấn
Can/could	Can't/couldn't	Can't/couldn't
May/Might	May not/might not	May/Might + S + V.inf
Must	Mustn't	Must + S + V.inf
Should	Shouldn't	Should + S + V.inf
Ought to	Ought not to	
Will/Would	Won't/wouldn't	Will/Would + S + V.inf
Had better	Had better not	Had S better + V.inf
Would rather	Would rather not	
Dare	Dare not	Dare + S + V.inf
Need	Need not	Need + S + V.inf
Used to	Used not to	

II. CAN/COULD**1. CAN và COULD có nghĩa là “có thể”, diễn tả một khả năng**

- Ex: - We can stay with my brother when we are in Paris
- She could ride a bicycle when she was five years old.

2. Diễn tả sự xin phép; COULD lễ phép và trịnh trọng hơn CAN. Nhưng không dùng COULD để diễn tả sự cho phép

- Ex: - Can I go out?
- Could I use your computer? – Yes, of course you can.

3. Diễn tả lời đề nghị, gợi ý hay lời yêu cầu

Ex: - Can you give me a hand?

- Could you open the door, please?

❖ Phân biệt Can & Be able to

- “Can” thể hiện khả năng, bản năng:

Ex: can't swim

- “Be able to” mang nghĩa xoay xở, thành công trong việc gì đó:

Ex: I finished my work early so I was able to go out with her.

III. MAY/MIGHT

1. Phân biệt May & Can

- May/might cũng mang nghĩa là “có thể”.

- “Can” thể hiện khả năng nhưng “may” mang tính chất tình huống, thể hiện sẽ làm hay không làm.

Ex: I can swim but I may not swim today.

2. Cách dùng

- a. May/Might dùng để diễn đạt sự xin phép. “May” được dùng để chỉ sự cho phép

Ex:

- May/Might I put the TV on? – Yes, you may.

- She asked if she might go to the party.

- b. May/Might dùng diễn tả một khả năng có thể xảy ra (Might ít chắc chắn, ít khẳng định hơn May)

Ex:

- There may be other problems that we don't know about.

- It might be true.

- c. May được dùng để diễn đạt lời cầu chúc trang trọng (không dùng Might)

Ex: - May you have a good trip!

- May your dreams come true!

- d. May/Might dùng trong mệnh đề theo sau các động từ “hope” (hy vọng) và “trust” (tin tưởng).

Ex: I trust (hope) that you may find this plan to your satisfaction.

- e. May/Might dùng thay cho một mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ

Ex:

- Although he tried hard, he couldn't pass the exam.

= Try as he may/might, he could not pass the examination.

IV. WILL/WOULD

1. Will

- “Will” là một trợ động từ giúp hình thành thì tương lai
- “Will” được dùng như một Động từ khuyết thiếu diễn tả một sự mong muốn, một lời hứa hay một sự quả quyết.

Ex:

- All right; I will pay you at the rate you ask.
- I won't forget little Margaret's birthday. I will send her a present.

2. Would

- Dùng trong câu chuyển từ trực tiếp sang gián tiếp:

Ex: He said he would send it to me, but he didn't.

- Dùng trong câu điều kiện loại 2:

Ex: If she were here, she would help us.

- Dùng trong câu điều kiện loại 3:

Ex: He would have been very happy if he had known about it.

- “Would” là động từ khuyết thiếu dùng để diễn tả:

- Lời yêu cầu, đề nghị lịch sự:

Ex:

- Would you like to have a cup of coffee?
- Would you please show me the way to Ha Dong market?

- Thói quen trong quá khứ:

Ex: When we were children, we would go skiing every winter

V. MUST/HAVE TO

- “Must” và “have to” đều có thể dùng để diễn tả sự cưỡng bách, bắt buộc.
- Tuy nhiên “must” mang ý nghĩa sự bắt buộc đến từ người nói còn “have to” mang ý nghĩa sự bắt buộc đến từ hoàn cảnh bên ngoài

Ex: - All candidates must answer 10 questions.

- The soup has to be stirred continuously to prevent burning.

- Trong câu phủ định, sự khác biệt khá rõ ràng:

- Don't have to (= don't need to): không phải
- mustn't: không được phép

Ex:

- I musn't do my homework.
(Tôi không được phép làm bài về nhà.)
- I don't have to do my homework.
(Tôi không phải làm bài về nhà.)

VI. SHOULD/UGHT TO/HAD BETTER

- **Should/Ought to:** có nghĩa là “nên” dùng để diễn đạt lời khuyên hay sự mong đợi

Ex: You should/ought to have a vacation soon.

- **“Had better”** có nghĩa tương tự như “should”; nhưng chỉ được dùng cho tình huống cụ thể, và có nghĩa mạnh hơn “should” và “ought to”.

Ex:

- It's cold today. You had better wear a coat when you go out.
- I think that drivers should wear seat belts. (KHÔNG dùng: had better wear seat belts)

- Ngoài ra, “Should” có thể thay cho “if” trong câu điều kiện loại 1 (Dạng đảo ngữ):

Ex:

- If he comes, I will call the police.
= Should he come, I will call the police.
- Should you have any questions, don't hesitate to ask me.

Lưu ý: ought to/ought not to + do sth: có thể thay thế cho should/shouldn't trong hầu hết tất cả các trường hợp, ngoại trừ trường hợp thay thế cho if trong câu điều kiện loại 1.

- “Ought to” cũng dùng để diễn tả một sự gần đúng, rất có thể đúng (strong probability):

Ex: If Alice left home at 9:00, she ought to be here now.

- “Had better” còn được dùng để diễn tả lời cảnh báo

Ex: You had better work harder, or you will be sacked.

VII. WOULD RATHER

Cấu trúc:

S+ would rather + (not) V.inf (+than).....

S + would rather (that) +S+ V.ed/had P2

Ex:

- I would rather stay at home (than go to the movie)
- I would rather you went home now.

VIII. CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ BÁN KHUYẾT THIỂU: Dare – Need - Used to

• **Dare – Need - Used to:** vừa có thể dùng như một động từ khuyết thiếu, vừa có thể dùng như động từ thường:

Ex:

- I needn't/don't need to do my homework.
- Dare he/Does he dare to speak to her?
- I used not to/didn't use to go this way.

• Trường hợp đặc biệt với động từ “need”:

Ex: My car needs repairing. = My car needs to be repaired.

❖ Tránh nhầm lẫn “used to V.inf” & “be/get used to + noun/Ving”

• **used to + Vinf:** thói quen trong quá khứ

Ex: I used to go shopping in the morning.

• **be/get used to + noun/Ving:** bắt đầu quen với cái gì

Ex: I was used to the cold weather in Hanoi.

Ví dụ: Chọn đáp án đúng

1. Susan.....hear the speaker because the crowd was cheering so loudly.

- A. might not B. **couldn't** C. can't D. mustn't

2. Listen, please. You.....talk during the exam.

- A. won't B. **mustn't** c. wouldn't D. should

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. Câu này chỉ khả năng nên ta dùng “can't” hoặc “couldn't”.

Hơn nữa, tình huống này xảy ra trong quá khứ, nên ta không dùng “can't”

Dịch: Susan không thể nghe được người thuyết trình bởi vì đám đông cười quá lớn.

2. Ở đây, câu mang nghĩa chỉ một mệnh lệnh, nên ta dùng “mustn't” - không được phép

Dịch: Xin hãy nghe này. Bạn không được phép nói chuyện trong bài kiểm tra

IX. CẤU TRÚC CÂU DỰ ĐOÁN

➤ Dự đoán ở hiện tại:

Can/may/will/must/should/need/ought to ..+ Vinf

Ex: You have worked hard all day; you must be tired.

➤ Dự đoán ở quá khứ:

• **must have P2:** Dự đoán một việc chắc chắn (100%) đã xảy ra trong quá khứ

Ex: He got a high score. He must have worked hard.

- **can't/couldn't have PII:** Dự đoán chắc chắn 100 % không thể xảy ra trong quá khứ

Ex: She can't have been at the party yesterday. She was teaching then.

- **may/might have P2:** dự đoán có khả năng diễn ra trong quá khứ (70-80%), chưa chắc đã xảy ra

Ex: He lost his key. He might have come into the house through the window.

- **should have PII:** đã nên làm gì trong quá khứ

Ex: You should have informed me of your arrival.

Ví dụ: Chọn đáp án đúng

1. It.....Sam who called and did not leave a message on the answering machine. I am not sure.

A. must be B. might be C. must have been **D. might have been**

2. You haven't eaten anything since yesterday afternoon. You.....be really hungry!

A. must B. might C. will D. can

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. Mệnh đề sau nói "I am not sure" nên ở đây ta dùng "might" để nói về một dự đoán không chắc chắn.

Câu đang chia ở thì quá khứ nên ta dùng cấu trúc câu dự đoán trong quá khứ.

Dịch: Đó có thể là Sam người đã gọi và không để lại lời nhắn trên điện thoại. Tôi không chắc lắm.

2. Mệnh đề một đưa ra một bằng chứng, nên ở đây, chúng ta dùng "must + V.inf" để nói về một dự đoán chắc chắn

Dịch: Bạn đã không ăn bất cứ thứ gì từ chiều hôm qua rồi. Bạn chắc hẳn đang rất đói

B – LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1:

Question 1: Mr Kent is on time for everything. How _____ it be that he was late for the opening ceremony?

A. can **B. should** **C. would** **D. must**

Question 2: - "Are you coming to Jeff's party?"

- "I'm not sure. I _____ go to the concert instead."

A. must **B. must** **C. should** **D. may**

Question 3: Sorry I'm late. I _____ have turned off the alarm clock and gone back to sleep again.

A. might **B. should** **C. can** **D. will**

Question 4: “Will you stay for lunch?”

- “Sorry, I _____. My brother is coming to see me.”

- A. must B. can't C. needn't D. won't

Question 5: There was a lot of fun at yesterday's party. You _____ come, but why didn't you?

- A. must have B. should C. need have D. should have

Question 6: - “I stayed at a hotel while in New York.”

- “Oh, did you? You _____ with Barbara.”

- A. could have stayed B. could stay C. would stay D. should stay

Question 7: The fire spread through the hotel very quickly but everyone _____ get out.

- A. had to B. would C. could D. was able to

Question 8: There was plenty of time. She _____ .

- A. mustn't have hurried B. couldn't have hurried
C. must not hurry D. needn't have hurried

Question 9: Jack _____ yet, otherwise he would have telephoned me

- A. mustn't have arrived B. shouldn't have arrived
C. can't have arrived D. need not have arrived

Question 10: Johnny, you _____ play with the knife, you _____ hurt yourself.

- A. won't / can't B. mustn't/ may C. shouldn't/must D. can't/ shouldn't

Question 11: 14. When he was there, he _____ go to that coffee shop at the corner after work every day.

- A. would B. should C. had better D. might

Question 12: Yesterday, Jane walked away from the discussion. Otherwise, she _____ something she would regret later.

- A. had said B. said C. might say D. might have said

Question 13: Sir, you _____ be sitting in this waiting room. It is for women and children only.

- A. oughtn't to B. can't C. won't D. needn't

Question 14: 17. - “There were already five people in the car but they managed to take me as well.” - “It _____ a comfortable journey.”

- A. can't be B. shouldn't be C. mustn't have been D. couldn't have been

Question 15: “Mary looks sad. Did you tell her about the accident?” - “Yes, but I _____ her later.”

- A. shouldn't have told B. mustn't have told C. must have told D. should have told

Question 16: - “Shall I tell John about it?”

- "No, you _____. I've told him already."

- A. needn't B. wouldn't C. mustn't D. shouldn't

Question 17: - "Don't forget to come to my birthday party tomorrow." - "_____."

- A. I don't B. I won't C. I can't D. I haven't

Question 18: I told Sally how to get here, but perhaps I _____ for her.

- A. had to write it out B. must have written it out
C. must have written it out D. ought to write it out

Question 19: _____ it rain tomorrow, we will put off the visit to the Marble Mountains.

- A. Were B. Should C. Would D. Will

Question 20: Tom should not _____ me your secret, but he meant no harm.

- A. have told B. tell C. be telling D. having told

Question 21: Peter _____ come with us tonight, but he isn't very sure.

- A. must B. may C. can D. will

Question 22: "Could I borrow your dictionary?" - "Yes, of course you _____."

- A. might B. will C. can D. should

Question 23: We _____ last night, but we went to the concert instead.

- A. must have studied B. might study C. should have studied D. would study

Question 24: A computer _____ think for itself; it must be told what to do.

- A. can't B. can't C. must D. will

Question 25: Jane _____ have kept her word. I wonder why she changed her mind.

- A. must B. should C. need D. would

Question 26: He _____ you more help, even though he was very busy.

- A. might have given B. might give C. can't have given D. may give

Question 27: I didn't hear the phone. I _____ asleep.

- A. must be B. must have been C. should be D. should have been

Question 28: Mother _____ us stories when we were young.

- A. was used to tell B. is used to telling C. used to tell D. used to telling

Question 29: You _____ return the book now. You can keep it till next week.

- A. can't B. mustn't C. needn't D. may not

Question 30: The plant is dead. I _____ it more water.

- A. will give B. would have given C. must give D. should have given

Question 31: - "Must we do it now?" - "No, you _____."

- A. won't B. needn't C. can't D. don't

Question 32: -Hurry up! Tom _____ for us at the school gate.

- A. must wait B. must be waiting C. must be waited D. must be waited

Question 33: - "I think Jane is at home."

- "No, she _____ be at home, for she phoned me from the airport just ten minutes ago."

- A. mustn't B. needn't C. can't D. daren't

Question 34: There are so many types here, and I really don't know which one I _____ choose.

- A. should B. can C. may D. must

Question 35: I _____ play basketball than football.

- A. would rather B. had better C. like better D. prefer

Question 36: You'd better _____ late next time.

- A. don't B. not be C. not be D. won't be

Question 37: I _____ like to know where you were born.

- A. shall B. would C. could D. may

Question 38: You _____ the look on his face when he won the prize.

- A. would have seen B. can be seeing C. must see D. should have seen

Question 39: When my father was young, he _____ work in the garden for long hours.

- A. can B. could C. could D. should

Question 40: He _____ have committed the crime because he was with me that day.

- A. mustn't B. mustn't C. won't D. couldn't

Question 41: Since we have to be there by 8.30, we _____ take a taxi.

- A. had better B. may C. ought D. are able to

Question 42: She hasn't eaten anything since yesterday. She _____ be really hungry.

- A. might B. will C. must D. can

Question 43: I put my keys on the table, but now it's gone. Someone _____ have taken it.

- A. may B. had to C. should D. would rather

Question 44: Daisy is reading her English test because she has a test tomorrow. She _____ be studying.

- A. will B. will C. must D. can

Question 45: We _____ put the fish in the fridge before it spoils.

- A. would B. may C. can D. had better

Question 46: Tom has just got a new job. He _____ be very pleased.

- A. might B. might C. should D. will

Question 47: Tom painted his room black. It looks dark and dreary. He _____ have chosen another colour.

- A. should B. must C. could D. may

Question 48: You _____ throw litter on the streets.

- A. mustn't B. mustn't C. needn't D. won't

Question 49: My mother permitted me to go out at night. She said, "You _____ go out tonight".

- A. may B. have to C. must D. ought to

Question 50: It is possible that she will come to our party tonight. She _____ come here tonight.

- A. need B. may C. should D. will

Đáp án

1-A	2-D	3-A	4-B	5-D	6-A	7-D	8-D	9-C	10-B
11-A	12-D	13-A	14-D	15-D	16-A	17-B	18-C	19-B	20-A
21-B	22-C	23-C	24-A	25-B	26-A	27-B	28-C	29-C	30-D
31-B	32-B	33-C	34-A	35-A	36-B	37-B	38-D	39-B	40-D
41-A	42-C	43-A	44-C	45-D	46-B	47-A	48-A	49-A	50-B

LUYỆN TẬP 2:

Question 1: We are now wet. You _____ the raincoats with you.

- A. should bring B. should have brought C. must bring D. have to bring

Question 2: The yard is wet. It _____ last night.

- A. must rain B. must have rain C. must have rained D. had to rain

Question 3: She told me that she'd rather _____ on the committee.

- A. not to serve B. not serving C. not serve D. serving not

Question 4: I'd rather _____ in the field than _____ home.

- A. to work/ to stay B. work /stay C. working/ staying D. worked/stayed

Question 5: He _____ all that money, so he could save some.

- A. didn't need to spend B. needn't have been spent
C. shouldn't spend D. oughtn't to spend

Question 6: He spent all that money last week. He _____ so much.

- A. didn't need spend B. didn't need spend
C. needn't have spent D. didn't have to spend

Question 7: You're having a sore throat. You'd better_____ to the doctor.

- A. to go B. went C. go D. going

Question 8: I would rather_____ poor but happy than become rich without happiness.

- A. being B. be C. to be D. was

Question 9: She _____ , but luckily , a lifeguard spotted her and rescued her.

- A. has drowned B. ought to drown C. could have drowned D. might drown

Question 10: In 1900 the world had no deaths from rabies. Scientists_____ wonderful vaccine.

- A. has discovered B. discovered
C. must have discovered D. should have discovered

Question 11: It isn't obligatory to submit my assignment today

- A. I mustn't submit my assignment today
B. My assignment must have been submitted today
C. I needn't submit my assignment today
D. My assignment is required to submit by today

Question 12: It was a mistake of you to lose your passport.

- A. You shouldn't have lost your passport. B. There must be a mistake in your passport.
C. You needn't have brought your passport. D. Your passport must be lost.

Question 13: My car keys are possibly in the kitchen.

- A. My car keys should be put in the kitchen
B. My car keys cannot be in the kitchen
C. I don't know whether my car keys are in the kitchen.
D. My car keys might be in the kitchen

Question 14: A: John passed his exam with a distinction. B: _____.

- A. He was too lazy to succeed B. He can't have studied very hard
C. He must have studied very hard D. He needs studying harder

Question 15: The computer does not work. It.....during transportation.

- A. must have damaged B. should have been damaged
C. must have been damaged D. can be damaging

Question 16: You.....the air pressure in your tires if you do not want to get a flat tire on your trip

- A. should be checked B. do not have to check C. mustn't D. ought to check

Question 17: She.....a lot after her husband's accident. That was why her eyes were so red and swollen

- A. must be crying B. can have been cried C. will have cried D. must have cried

Question 18: Hiking the trail to the peakbe dangerous if you are not well prepared for dramatic weather changes

- A. might B. should C. had better D. mustn't

Question 19: Look! She is laughing. She.....something funny or happy.

- A. must have B. must have had C. could have had D. should have had

Question 20: Are you joking? David.....a new car last week. I am sure that he did not have money.

- A. mustn't be buying B. would be buying C. may have bought D. can't have bought

Question 21: Our teacher is so strict. We.....forget to do our homework

- A. must B. do not have to C. mustn't D. needn't

Question 22: You....tell Sandra anything about our story. She.....keep a secret.

- A. had better not/ cannot B. needn't/ would rather not
C. ought to / cannot D. do not have to/ should not

Question 23: They.....be away for the weekend but I am not sure

- A. needn't B. must C. should not D. might

Question 24: Dane.....the book we borrowed from the library. It was on the table, but now it has gone.

- A. must have returned B. should have returned
C. cannot have returned D. needn't have returned

Question 25: John was sacked last year. Heharder.

- A. may have worked B. should have worked C. must have worked D. should be working

Question 26: I had been reading the book last night before I went to bed. I never took it out of this room.It....around here somewhere. Where....it be?

- A. should have been/ shall B. could lie/ must
C. must be lying/ can D. had to be lying/ will

Question 27: I am not really sure where Beverly is. She.....in the living room or perhaps she is in the backyard.

- A. could not sit B. cannot sit C. must be sitting D. might be sitting

Question 28: Ihave you stayed with me during this summer.

- A. could B. may C. must D. would rather

Question 29: This is the key. You.....forget to take it with you when going out

- A. don't have to B. mustn't C. should D. needn't

Question 30: You have been reading for four hours. This book ____ be very interesting.

A. can

B. might

C. must

D. should

Đáp án

1-B	2-C	3-C	4-B	5-A	6-C	7-C	8-B	9-C	10-C
11-C	12-A	13-D	14-C	15-C	16-D	17-D	18-A	19-A	20-D
21-C	22-A	23-D	24-A	25-B	26-C	27-D	28-D	29-B	30-C

BÀI 5: ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU

A – LÝ THUYẾT

I. GIỚI THIỆU CHUNG

Động từ nguyên mẫu có hai dạng:

- Động từ nguyên mẫu có TO (To Infinitive Verb)

To V: to make

To be V-ing: to be making

To have Vpp: to have made

To have been V-ing: to have been making

To be Vpp: to be made

To have been Vpp: to have been made

- Động từ nguyên mẫu không có TO (Base/Bare Verb)

Chỉ có động từ, không có TO.

Có thể gọi là Base verb – Bare verb

V: watch

have Vpp: have watched

be Vpp: be watched

II. CHỨC NĂNG CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU CÓ “TO”

1. *Làm chủ ngữ*

- To become a teacher is my dream.

S

- To cook my dinner is what I have to do now.

S

- To me, to have made the same mistake twice is unforgivable.

S

2. *Làm vị ngữ*

- My dream is to become a teacher.

V

- What I have to do now is to cook my dinner.

V

3. *Theo sau tân ngữ*

- He told me to give this to you.
- The doctor advised John to take a rest every two hours.

- The teacher encouraged her students to try their best in the final exam.

Một số động từ tương tự: V somebody to V

Assume (cho rằng)	Instruct (hướng dẫn)
Beg (cầu xin)	Invite (mời)
Believe (tin)	Order (yêu cầu)
Cause (gây, khiến cho)	Permit (cho phép)
Challenge (thách thức)	Persuade (thuyết phục)
Command (yêu cầu)	Remind (nhắc nhở)
Compel (bắt buộc)	Request (yêu cầu)
Consider (xem xét)	Teach (dạy)
Enable (cho phép)	Tell (báo, yêu cầu)
Expect (hi vọng)	Urge (giục)
Forbid (cấm)	Want (muốn)
Force (bắt)	Warn (cảnh báo)
Help (giúp đỡ)	Wish (ước muốn)

4. Theo sau một số động từ nhất định

- We decided to have a baby.
- They plan to go abroad next year.
- I would like to travel alone to Japan.

Một số động từ tương tự: V to V

A fford (có đủ khả năng)	Offer (đề nghị)
Agree (đồng ý)	Plan (dự định)
Aim (hướng đến)	Prepare (chuẩn bị)
Arrange (sắp xếp)	Pretend (giả vờ)
Appear (có vẻ)	Promise (hứa)
Ask (yêu cầu)	Propose (đề nghị)
Attempt (cố gắng)	Refuse (từ chối)
Care (quan tâm)	Seem (hình như)
Choose (lựa ch n)	Swear (thề)
Claim (thừa nhận)	Tend (có xu hướng)
Decide (quyết định)	Threaten (đe dọa)
Deserve (xứng đáng)	Volunteer (tình nguyện)
Fail (thất bại)	Vow (thề)

Happen (tình cờ)	Want (muốn)
Hesitate (lưỡng lự)	Wish (ước muốn)
Hope (hi vọng)	Would hate (ghét)
Intend (dự định)	Would like (muốn)
Learn (học)	Would love (muốn)
Manage (xoay sở)	Would prefer (muốn hơn)
Need (cần)	Yearn (khát khao)
Neglect (thờ ơ)	Urge (thúc giục)

III. CHỨC NĂNG CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MÃUX KHÔNG “TO”

1. Theo sau trợ động từ

➤ Trợ động từ thường

- He did love her, but not anymore.
- She doesn't live here.
- They don't want to work late, but they are forced to.

➤ Trợ động từ khuyết thiếu

Can - Could

May - Might

Must - Shall

Ought to - Should

Will - Would

Need - Dare

Have to - Used to

- We have to go now.
- You shouldn't make that mistake again.
- They can deal with this problem without you.

2. Theo sau tân ngữ

- Let (cho phép)

My mother lets me come home late at night.

- Have (nhờ ai, thuê ai)

I had the mechanic repair my car yesterday.

- Make (khiến)

He has been making me go crazy all these days.

- Help (giúp đỡ)

Nobody helps the girl collect her books.

Theo sau tân ngữ - Nhóm động từ tri giác

- See (nhìn thấy)

When I arrived at the restaurant, I saw her get off John's car with a bunch of flowers in hands.

- Hear (nghe)

Jenny heard me talk with my boyfriend on phone.

- Feel (cảm thấy)

We felt the ground give way under our feet.

- Watch (xem)

They watched the bus disappear into the distance.

- Notice (để ý)

I noticed them come in.

NOTE

- Tuy nhiên khi ở thể bị động, ta chuyển sang dùng TO VERB.

She was seen to get off the bus.

We were made to work so hard by the boss.

- Sau HELP có thể dùng động từ nguyên mẫu có TO hoặc không có TO đều được.

He helped me do my assignment.

He helped me to do my assignment.

Ví dụ: Chọn đáp án đúng

1. I am planning _____ Da Lat next week.

A. visit B. to be visited C. have visited **D. to visit**

2. I must go now. I promised _____ late.

A. not be **B. not to be** C. not have been D. won't be

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. plan + to V: dự định làm gì

Chúng ta không chọn B. to be visited vì dự định làm gì sẽ chia ở thể khẳng định

Dịch: Tôi đang dự định đến Đà Lạt vào tuần tới

2. promise + to V: hứa làm gì

Lưu ý: Trong câu phủ định, từ "not" luôn đứng trước "to V", không dùng "to not V" **Dịch:**

Tôi phải đi bây giờ. Tôi đã hứa không đến muộn

B – LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1:

Question 1: I can _____ English.

- A. speak B. to speak C. to have spoken D. to have spoken

Question 2: My little sister learns _____.

- A. to speak B. speak C. to speaking D. to be speaking

Question 3: We have to _____ our homework.

- A. to do B. to have done C. to have been doing D. do

Question 4: I'd like _____ a dog.

- A. have B. to have had C. to have D. to be had

Question 5: May we _____ in?

- A. be coming B. to have come C. come D. have been come

Question 6: They want _____ to the cinema.

- A. come B. to come C. to have been coming D. be come

Question 7: You must _____ at home.

- A. stay B. to stay C. to have stayed D. to be staying

Question 8: I will not _____ you.

- A. to help B. help C. be helping D. be helping

Question 9: He cannot _____ us.

- A. see B. to see C. to have seen D. be seen

Question 10: You should _____ your parents.

- A. ask B. to ask C. to have asked D. be asking

Question 11: He demanded _____ to the manager.

- A. speak B. to speak C. to have speaking D. be speaking

Question 12: I offered _____.

- A. help B. to have helped C. to help D. be helping

Question 13: I'd hate _____ too late.

- A. to arriving B. to arrive C. arrive D. be arrived

Question 14: I choose _____ here rather than anywhere else.

- A. to work B. work C. to be worked D. be worked

Question 15: It seems _____ raining.

- A. be B. to be C. to have D. to have

Question 16: He made me _____ your proposal.

A. turn down B. to turn down C. to have turned down D. be turning down

Question 17: Finally I managed _____ the work.

A. finish B. to finish C. to have finishing D. be finished

Question 18: Unfortunately, we can't afford _____ a new car this year.

A. to buy B. to have bought C. be buying D. buy

Question 19: I'd love _____ with you.

A. to come B. come C. to coming D. be coming

Question 20: I prepared _____ on holiday.

A. to be gone B. to go C. going D. to have gone

Question 21: They refused _____ to Tim's proposal. They decided _____ their work.

A. to listen/ continue B. to listen/ to continue C. listen/ to continue D. listen/ continue

Question 22: The questions are easy _____. We hope _____ high scores.

A. to answer/ to get B. answer/ to get
C. to answer/ to have got D. answer/ get

Question 23: The man asked me how _____ to the airport. He said he had to _____ the 9.00 plane to Paris.

A. get/ to take B. to have got/ take C. to get/ take D. get/ take

Question 24: She wanted _____ home, but her boss made her _____ until the work has finished.

A. to go/ to stay B. to go/ stay C. go/ to stay D. go/ stay

Question 25: When I lived with my parents, they did not let me _____ TV at night. I was made _____ a lot.

A. watch/ study B. watch/ to study C. to watch/ study D. to watch/ to study

Question 26: He warned me _____ all my money in that company.

A. not to invest B. do not invest C. did not invest D. not invest

Question 27: The teacher expected Sarah _____ harder/ he gave her a lot of homework _____.

A. studied/ do B. study/ to do C. study/ doing D. to study/ to do

Question 28: The robbers forced the bank manager _____ the safe.

A. to open B. open C. to have opened D. to be opening

Question 29: You'd better _____ your father's advice.

A. take B. to take C. to have taking D. be taken

Question 30: When the rainy season comes , you need _____ the roof of the house .

A. to repair B. repair

C. be repaired

D. to have been repairing

Question 31: I need _____ what's in the letter. Why don't you let me _____ it?

A. to know/ to read

B. know/ read

C. to know/ read

D. knowing/ read

Question 32: Who do you consider _____ responsible for the accident?

A. to be

B. be

C. to have being

D. being

Question 33: She has the hairdresser _____ my hair every month.

A. cut

B. be cut

C. to cut

D. to have cut

Question 34: I can't read when I am traveling. It makes me _____ sick.

A. feel

B. to feel

C. felt

D. been feeling

Question 35: My teacher doesn't allow us _____ while he is explaining the lesson.

A. talk

B. to talk

C. be talking

D. to have talked

Question 36: I promised _____ on time. I mustn't _____ late.

A. be/be

B. to be/to be

C. to be/ be

D. be/to be

Question 37: Psychiatrists and doctors have failed _____ people not to drink.

A. to tell

B. be telling

C. tell

D. be told

Question 38: The police _____ them get out of the car.

A. caused

B. made

C. asked

D. ordered

Question 39: I heard someone _____ outside.

A. have fell

B. fall

C. to fall

D. to fall

Question 40: Larry finally _____ to quit the job.

A. admitted

B. decided

C. must

D. thought

Question 41: Before we leave, let's have Shelley _____ a map for us so we won't get lost.

A. draw

B. to draw

C. to draw

D. to draw

Question 42: Do you know what made so many people _____ their home?

A. evacuate

B. to evacuate

C. evacuated

D. evacuated

Question 43: _____ bread, you usually need flour, salt, and yeast.

A. Make

B. To make

C. To be making

D. Made

Question 44: Can you manage _____ the work by yourself?

A. finish

B. to finish

C. be finishing

D. have finished

Question 45: We just didn't allow them _____ the military zone.

A. have been entering

B. to enter

C. enter

D. enter

Question 46: They are planning _____ a flyover at this crossroads.

A. be building

B. to build

C. build

D. have built

Question 47: I am sorry. I've arranged _____ to Susie's birthday this Saturday

- A. go B. to go C. have been going D. be gone

Question 48: We saw our favourite ballet _____ at the theater last night.

- A. perform B. been performing C. to perform D. have performing

Question 49: He was made _____ by the custom officer

- A. to open the suitcase B. opening the suitcase C. open the suitcase D. opened suitcase

Question 50: Why don't you _____ your son go camping with his classmate?

- A. permit B. allow C. let D. advise

Đáp án

1-A	2-A	3-D	4-C	5-C	6-B	7-A	8-B	9-A	10-A
11-B	12-C	13-B	14-A	15-B	16-A	17-B	18-A	19-A	20-B
21-B	22-A	23-C	24-B	25-B	26-A	27-D	28-A	29-A	30-A
31-C	32-A	33-A	34-A	35-B	36-C	37-A	38-B	39-B	40-B
41-A	42-A	43-B	44-B	45-B	46-B	47-B	48-A	49-A	50-C

LUYỆN TẬP 2:

Question 1: You don't expect me.....that you actually met John, do you?

- A. believe B. believed C. to believe D. to believe

Question 2: Mary agreed to the circus with Ann.

- A. went B. to go C. going D. goes

Question 3: My doctor doesn't permit me.....red meat.

- A. to eat B. eating C. ate D. eat

Question 4: If you decide.....your car, let me.....

- A. sell/ know B. selling/ to know C. to sell/ to know D. to sell/ know

Question 5: Tom refuses his address.

- A. give B. giving C. to give D. gave

Question 6: Do you planout or at home at this weekend?

- A. go/ stay B. to go/ stay C. going/ stay D. to go/ staying

Question 7: I intend her what I think.

- A. tell B. to tell C. telling D. told

Question 8: The biologist doesn't allow us in the laboratory.

- A. smoke B. to smoke C. smoking D. smoked

Question 9: My teacher promised mefor my next examination.

A. help/ prepare B. to help/ prepare C. helping/ to prepare D. helped/ preparing

Question 10: Can someoneme how into film from the camera's pictures?

A. show/ change B. to show/ to change C. showing/ change D. show/ to change

Question 11: We won't let you..... what we are going to do with him.

A. know B. to know C. knowing D. known

Question 12: If you want to get a better feeling for how the city is laid out, you should..... downtown and the waterfront.

A. walk/ explore B. walk/ to explore C. to walk/ explore D. to walk/ to explore

Question 13: The thing is that weddings make me

A. to sleep B. sleep C. to have sleeping D. be sleeping

Question 14: Any nobody can force hersomething she doesn't agree with.

A. to have done B. to do C. do D. be doing

Question 15: You had better at home until you feel better.

A. be staying B. to have stayed C. to stay D. stay

Question 16: I have the mechanic my bike.

A. repaired B. repair C. to repair D. have been repaired

Question 17: I think you mother should let you your own mind.

A. make up B. to make up C. be making up D. have made up

Question 18: The lifeguard warned all of us too far from the shore.

A. to not swim B. not to swim C. don't swim D. not swim

Question 19: I saw you the key in your pocket.

A. put B. to put C. have putting D. be put

Question 20: I can hear a cat at the window.

A. scratches B. to scratch C. be scratching D. scratch

Question 21: She didthe money. I saw it.

A. stole B. stolen C. steal D. to steal

Question 22: The software enables you your own DVDs.

A. to create B. create C. to have created D. be creating

Question 23: high scores in exam, you have to much harder.

A. To get/ study B. Get/ study C. Get/ be studying D. To get/ to study

Question 24: What she always promises to do but never does ison time.

A. arrive B. to arrive C. be arrived D. have arrived

Question 25: They appeared what was happening.

- A. to know B. know C. not to know D. not know

Question 26: They didn't deserve

- A. win B. to win C. won D. to be won

Question 27: Police are urging anyone who saw the accident them immediately.

- A. to contacting B. contact C. contacting D. contacting

Question 28: We were made so hard by our teacher.

- A. to work B. work C. to have worked D. be working

Question 29: The hijackers threatened one passenger every hour if their demands were not met.

- A. kill B. to skill C. be killed D. to have been killing

Question 30: They left at nine, so they ought to by now.

- A. arrive B. be arriving C. to have arrived D. have arrived

Đáp án

1-C	2-B	3-A	4-D	5-C	6-B	7-B	8-B	9-B	10-D
11-A	12-A	13-B	14-B	15-D	16-B	17-A	18-B	19-A	20-D
21-C	22-A	23-A	24-B	25-C	26-B	27-D	28-A	29-B	30-D

BÀI 6: DANH ĐỘNG TỪ

A – LÝ THUYẾT

I. BẢN CHẤT CỦA DANH ĐỘNG TỪ

Danh động từ là động từ thêm đuôi -ing, có chức năng như một danh từ.

II. CÁC DẠNG DANH ĐỘNG TỪ

- V-ing (danh động từ đơn)

making: I like making cake.

- Having Vpp (danh động từ hoàn thành):

having stolen: He denied having stolen the money.

- Being Vpp (danh động từ bị động):

being looked: She avoided being looked at.

III. CHỨC NĂNG CỦA DANH ĐỘNG TỪ

1. Làm chủ ngữ

- Becoming a teacher is my hobby.

S

- Speaking English is easy.

S

- Dancing bores him.

S

2. Làm vị ngữ

- My father's work is repairing electric device.

V

- What I have to do now is cooking my dinner.

V

3. Thành lập danh từ ghép

A reading lamp = A lamp for reading

A diving board = A board for diving

4. Theo sau giới từ

- He was accused of smuggling.
- There is no interest in writing letters.
- I gave up doing exercises everyday last week as I have no time.

5. Theo sau một số động từ nhất định

- We discussed selling the old car.

- He admitted cheating on the test.

Một số động từ tương tự: V + Gerund

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| • Admit (thú nhận) | • Miss (bỏ lỡ) |
| • Appreciate (cảm kích) | • Postpone (trì hoãn) |
| • Avoid (tránh) | • Practice (thực hành) |
| • Delay (trì hoãn) | • Recall (nhớ lại) |
| • Deny (phủ nhận) | • Recollect (nhớ lại) |
| • Discuss (thảo luận) | • Report (báo cáo) |
| • Enjoy (thích thú) | • Resent (không hài lòng) |
| • Imagine (tưởng tượng) | • Resist (phản kháng) |
| • Involve (có liên quan) | • Risk (liều lĩnh) |
| • Keep (tiếp tục) | • Suggest (đề nghị) |
| • Mention (đề cập) | • Tolerate (chịu đựng) |
| • Mind (phiền) | |

6. Theo sau tân ngữ - Nhóm động từ tri giác

- See (nhìn thấy)

I saw him crossing the street.

- Hear (nghe)

When I arrived, I heard my sister talking about her boyfriend.

- Feel (cảm thấy)

He felt the sweat running down his face.

- Watch (xem)

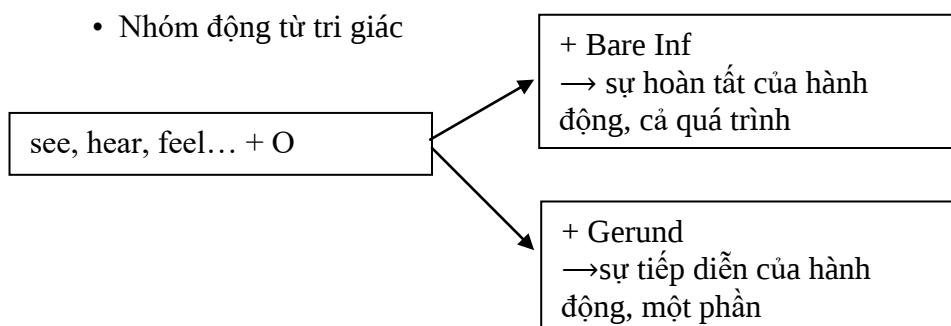
She watched the kids playing in the yard.

- Notice (để ý)

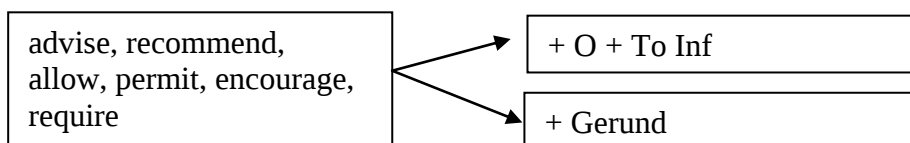
I didn't notice him leaving.

IV. DANH ĐỘNG TỪ HAY ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU

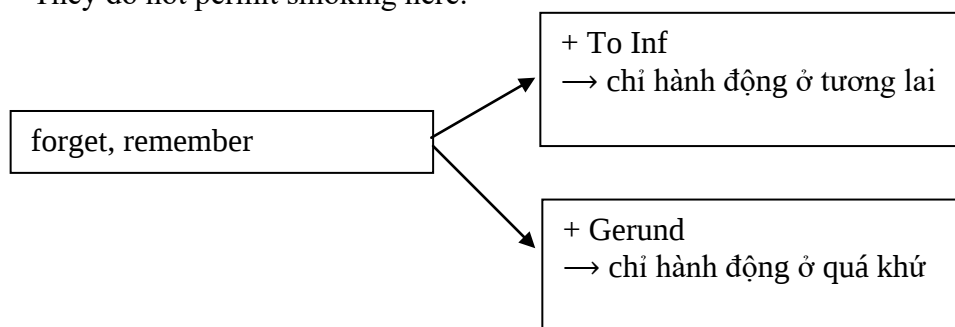
- Nhóm động từ tri giác



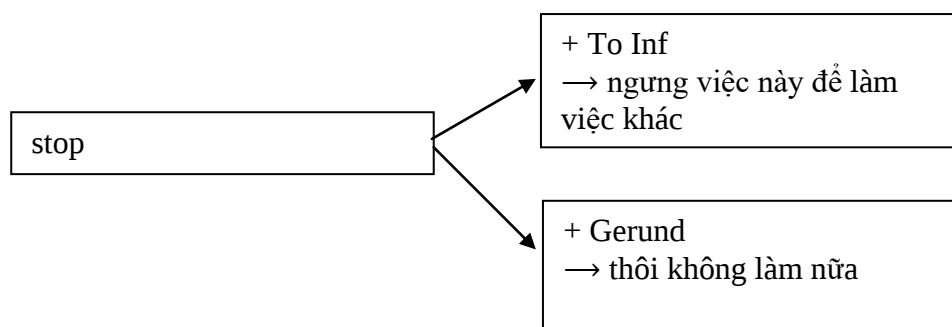
- Mary heard the boy cough.
- They saw the thief breaking into the house.



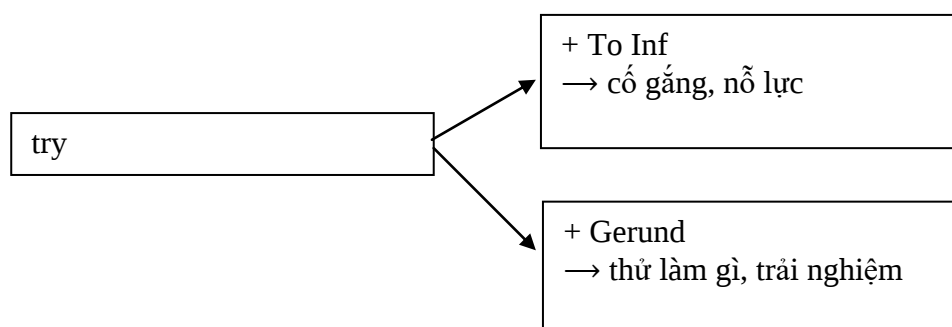
- They do not permit us to smoke here.
- They do not permit smoking here.



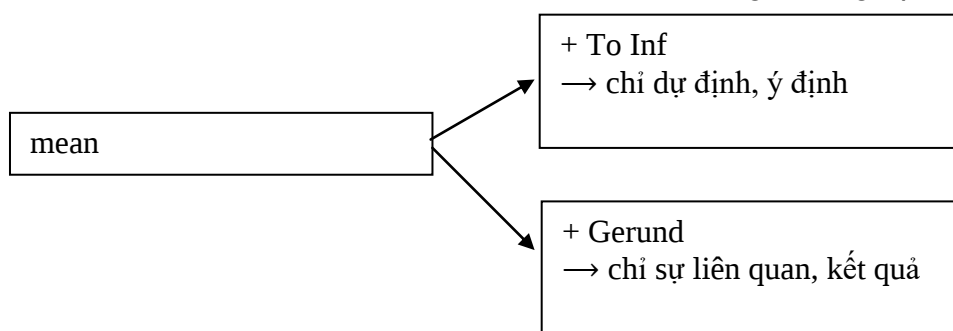
- Remember to call eter.
- I remember calling eter yesterday.



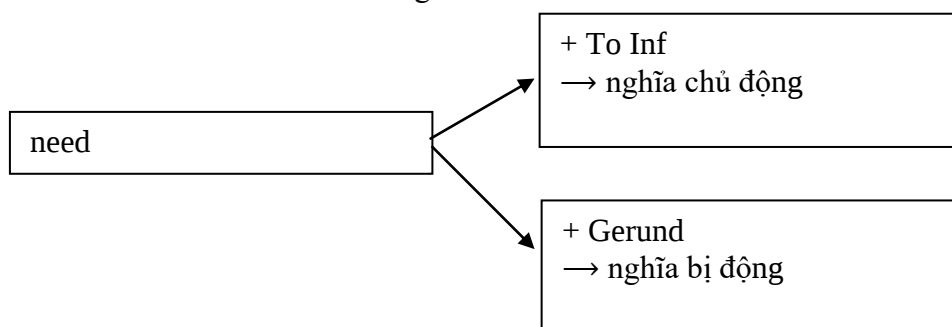
- He stopped to refilled the fuel tank because there was very little fuel left.
- He stopped refilling the fuel tank because it was full.



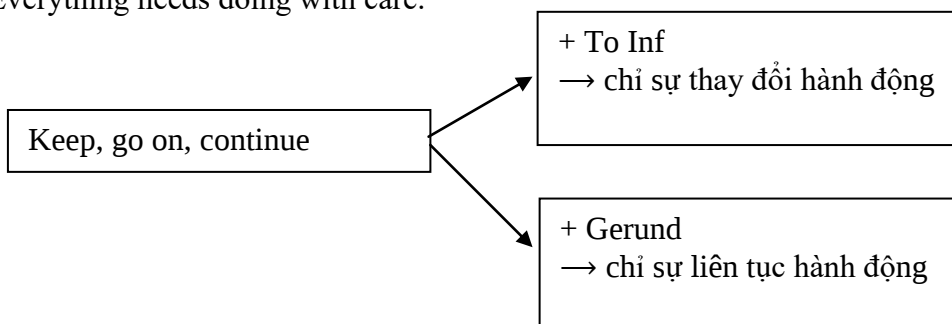
- He always tried to learn better.
- John isn't here. Try phoning his home number.



- I meant to go earlier but the alarm clock didn't go off.
- This new order will mean working overtime.



- You need to do everything with care.
- Everything needs doing with care.



- She stopped talking about that and went on to describe her other problems.
- She went on talking about her illness until we all went to sleep.

Begin, start, like, love, hate

có thể theo sau bởi động từ nguyên mẫu hoặc danh động từ mà không có sự khác biệt nhiều về nghĩa

- I began to learn/learning English three years ago.
- They like dancing/to dance

Ví dụ: Chọn đáp án đúng nhất

1. The board of director discussed the project, then went on _____ another topic.

- A. to discuss B. discuss C. discussing D. discussed

2. I am accustomed to _____ on my own.

A. living

B. to live

C. live

D. lives

Đáp án và giải thích chi tiết:

1. Về thứ nhất đang nói về hành động “introduced the project”, về sau là một hành động khác “discuss nên ở đây ta dùng “go on + to V” để chỉ sự thay đổi của hành động

Dịch: Ban giám đốc giới thiệu dự án, sau đó tiếp tục thảo luận về một chủ đề khác

2. to be accustomed to V.ing: quen với điều gì

Dịch: Tôi quen với việc sống một mình

B – LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1

Question 1: I arranged _____ them here.

A. to meet

B. meeting

C. met

D. meet

Question 2: My mother told me _____ to anyone about it.

A. not speaking

B. not speak

C. to not speak

D. not to speak

Question 3: My father has given up _____.

A. smoke

B. smoked

C. smoking

D. to smoked

Question 4: The librarian asked us _____ so much noise.

A. don't make

B. not make

C. not making

D. not to make

Question 5: Her advice made him his mind.

A. change

B. to change

C. changing

D. changed

Question 6: Have you finished the table ?

A. set

B. setting

C. to set

D. to be set

Question 7: She hates housework at weekends.

A. doing

B. do

C. to be doing

D. being done

Question 8: My friends has given up and prefers pork.

A. drink/ eat

B. to drink/ eating

C. drinking/ eating

D. drank/ eat

Question 9: I don't regrether what I thought even if it upset her.

A. to tell

B. told

C. tell

D. telling

Question 10: _____ in a foreign country can be very difficult

A. Live

B. Living

C. Lived

D. To living

Question 11: I am very tired of _____ to her complaints day after day.

A. listen

B. listening

C. to listen

D. listened

Question 12: I think your house really needs _____

A. for repainting B. to repaint C. being repainted D. to be repainted

Question 13: I consider _____ the job but in the end I decided against doing it.

A. to take B. taking C. to be take D. took

Question 14: Put that cigarette out! You are not allowed _____ here

A. smoking B. smoke cigarettes C. to smoke D. to cigarette smoke

Question 15: Do stop _____. I am doing my homework.

A. talk B. talking C. to talk D. talked

Question 16: Judy suggested _____ for a walk but no one else wanted to.

A. to go B. go C. going D. went

Question 17: I wish _____ the manager.

A. see B. seeing C. saw D. to see

Question 18: Your windows need _____. Would you like me to do them for you?

A. to be cleaned B. to clean C. cleaning D. A & C

Question 19: He urged us _____ faster.

A. working B. work C. to work D. worked

Question 20: Please go on _____. I can wait.

A. write B. to write C. wrote D. writing

Question 21: He warned her _____ the wire.

A. not touching B. not touch C. not to touch D. to not touch

Question 22: I asked them to be quiet but they kept _____

A. to talk B. talk C. talking D. to be talked

Question 23: Her mother prevented her from _____ mobile phone.

A. use B. to use C. using D. not to use

Question 24:stamps is my hobby.

A. collecting B. collect C. collected D. collection.

Question 25: The girl denied the news.

A. tell B. told C. to tell D. telling

Question 26: I remembera toy car on my fifth birthday.

A. to be given B. being given C. to give D. giving

Question 27: My teacher promised mefor my next examination.

A. help/ prepare B. to help/ prepare C. helping/ to prepare D. helped/ preparing

Question 28: Don't forget _____ the door before _____ to bed.

A. to lock/ going B. locking/ going C. to lock/ to go D. lock/ going

Question 29: He tried _____ but she refused _____

- A. to explain/ listen B. to explain/ to listen C. explain / listen D. explaining/ listening

Question 30: Anne would rather _____ than anything else.

- A. study B. studying C. to study D. studied

Question 31: His doctor advised him _____ jogging.

- A. to give up B. give up C. giving up D. gave up

Question 32: After walking for three hours, we stopped to let the others _____ up with us.

- A. to catch B. catching C. catch D. A & B

Question 33: In general, my father doesn't mind _____ the housework, but he hates to do the cooking

- A. do B. doing C. done D. to do

Question 34: I had to ask the boys billiards all the day.

- A. to stop/ playing B. to stop/ to play C. stopping/ playing D. stops/ to play

Question 35: Don't in class, students!

- A. talking B. to talk C. talk D. talked

Question 36: He suggested a double railway tunnel.

- A. to build B. built C. building D. that building

Question 37: He reminded me _____ to give the book back to John

- A. not forget B. not to forget C. forgot D. forgetting.

Question 38: I don't allow my family _____ at all.

- A. smoking B. to smoke C. smoked D. smoke

Question 39: I don't enjoy _____ letters.

- A. writing B. to write C. have be written D. wrote

Question 40: The boy insisted on _____ a break after lunch.

- A. having B. to have C. not to have D. have

Question 41: She is keen on with a doll.

- A. plays B. plays C. player D. playing

Question 42: Let's for a walk.

- A. go B. to go C. going D. went

Question 43: I would hate aloud without the new words.

- A. practise/ reading/ learn B. to practise/ to read/ to learn
C. to practise/ reading/ learning D. practises/ reading/ to learn

Question 44: I'll try such a foolish thing again.

- A. not to cause B. to not cause C. not causing D. to cause not

Question 45: The boy accused his friend of _____ stolen his bicycle.

- A. have B. to have C. not to have D. having

Question 46: He thanked her for _____ him some money.

- A. lend B. to lend C. lending D. not lend.

Question 47: Would you looking after my children for a while?

- A. mind B. agree C. stand D. care

Question 48: It's better to avoid during the rush hour.

- A. travelling B. to travel C. travel D. travelled

Question 49: I had to ask the boys billiards all the day.

- A. to stop/ playing B. to stop/ to play C. stopping/ playing D. stops/ to play

Question 50: It was Mrs Kent who suggested Mary.....abroad.

- A. study B. studying C. to study D. studied

Đáp án

1-A	2-D	3-C	4-D	5-A	6-B	7-A	8-C	9-D	10-B
11-B	12-D	13-B	14-C	15-B	16-C	17-D	18-D	19-C	20-D
21-C	22-C	23-C	24-A	25-D	26-B	27-B	28-A	29-B	30-A
31-A	32-C	33-B	34-A	35-C	36-C	37-B	38-B	39-A	40-A
41-D	42-A	43-C	44-A	45-D	46-C	47-A	48-A	49-A	50-A

LUYỆN TẬP 2

Question 1: I enjoy _____ to a number of programs on the radio. I am also fond of _____ novels.

- A. to listen/ to read B. listening/ reading C. to listen/ reading D. listening/ to read

Question 2: No one will leave classroom until the guilty student admits _____ the money

- A. steal B. stealing C. to steal D. stolen

Question 3: Jack Anderson was caught _____ a match at the time of the fire. He was accused of _____ the fire.

- A. to hold/ set B. held/ setting C. holding/ to set D. holding/ setting

Question 4: I cannot imagine you _____ married to Peter. He might make you unhappy.

- A. to get/ B. get C. got D. getting

Question 5: Her boss promised _____ her a raise because she never minds _____ the night shift.

- A. offering/ work B. offered/ to work C. to offer/ working D. offer/ worked

Question 6: He disagrees _____ a new car. He prefers _____ by bus to by car.

- A. to buy/ travel B. buying/ to travel C. to buy/ travelling D. bought/ traveled

Question 7: I am not sure if I have met Mr. Martino, but I remember _____ his name.

- A. hear B. to hear C. hearing D. heard

Question 8: He will never forget _____ so much money and time on his first computer. He bought it two years ago and managed _____ on it himself.

- A. spending/ to work B. to spend/ working C. spent/ work D. spend/ worked

Question 9: If the printer does not work, try _____ everything off and then _____ again.

- A. to turn/ to start B. to turn/ starting C. turning/ to start D. turning/ starting

Question 10: It is twelve o'clock. We should stop _____ lunch. We will go on our work by 5p.m.

- A. having B. have C. to have D. had

Question 11: This advertisement needs _____. We will have Peter _____ it.

- A. to redesign/ doing B. redesigning/ do C. redesigned/ did D. redesign/ to do

Question 12: My father continued _____ although the doctor advised him _____ the habit several times.

- A. smoking/ to quit B. to smoke/ quit
C. smoke/ quitting D. for smoking/ of quitting

Question 13: She was hesitant _____ the coach of her problem and she thanked her coach _____ her _____ with the pressure.

- A. telling/ to help/ deal B. tell/ helping/ dealing
C. told/ help/ dealing D. to tell/ for helping/ to deal

Question 14: I don't blame you for not _____ to go to that boring meeting.

- A. want B. wanting C. to want D. have wanted

Question 15: She'd failed _____ seats.

- A. booking B. book C. to book D. have booked

Question 16: I'm sorry. I didn't mean _____ you by saying that.

- A. hurt B. hurting C. to hurt D. have hurt

Question 17: I told you _____ the computer, didn't I?

- A. to switch off B. don't switch off C. not switch off D. switch off

- Question 18:** Ann offered _____ after our children while we were out
 A. look B. to look C. looking D. look to
- Question 19:** The teacher encouraged me _____ the football team
 A. to join B. joining C. joined D. join to
- Question 20:** Her mother prevented her from _____ out alone at night.
 A. go B. going C. to go D. not to go
- Question 21:** Peter now rides his bike to work in stead of _____ by bus
 A. travel B. travels C. travelling D. to travel
- Question 22:** Let him _____ it himself
 A. do B. to do C. does D. does
- Question 23:** My parents weren't strict with me at all. They _____ me do what I wanted
 A. let B. allowed C. made D. agreed
- Question 24:** He climbed over the wall without by anybody.
 A. seeing B. to see C. being seen D. to be seen
- Question 25:** They always try the bridge as they promised before.
 A. to postpone/ to build B. postpone/ build
 C. to postpone/ building D. postponing/ built
- Question 26:** I don't mind you the washing up.
 A. help – to do B. helping – to do C. help – do D. to help- to do
- Question 27:** At school, students usually take part in money for charity.
 A. raised B. to raise C. raising D. raise
- Question 28:** Students are interested in a party.
 A. to have B. have C. having D. had
- Question 29:** My sister is good at tennis.
 A. play B. playing C. to play D. staying
- Question 30:** He let the letter on to the floor.
 A. fall B. falls C. falling D. fell

ĐÁP ÁN

1. B	2. B	3. D	4. D	5. C	6. C	7. C	8. A	9. D	10. C
11. B	12. A	13. D	14. B	15. C	16. C	17. A	18. B	19. A	20. B
21. C	22. A	23. A	24. C	25. C	26. B	27. C	28. C	29. B	30. A

BÀI 7: CÁC CẤU TRÚC VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU VÀ DANH ĐỘNG TỪ

A – LÝ THUYẾT

I. CÁC CẤU TRÚC ĐI VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU CÓ “TO”

- **To V: để làm gì**

I work overtime to/in order to/so as to earn more money.

To get high scores in exam, you have to study harder.

- **It takes sb ... to V**

It took him a day to finish the report.

- **Be about to do sth = be going to do sth: chuẩn bị làm gì**

The man is about to step on the boat.

- **Be adj (of sb) to V**

I'm delighted to help you.

It's great to meet you two.

It's very nice of you to help me.

- **Be (a/an) noun to V**

It was a great honour to be invited here today.

- **How/where/when/who... to V**

He accidentally discovered how to open the safe.

I don't know what to say.

I don't know where to go.

- **Whether to V**

I wonder whether to leave or to stay.

- **Đại từ bất định + to V**

There wasn't anything to buy.

The main thing to remember is to lock the door.

- **Find it adj to V: thấy cái gì như thế nào**

I find it difficult to learn new words.

- **The first/the second/the last/.../the only to V**

She is the only person in her village to study abroad.

Neil Armstrong was the first man to set foot on the moon.

- **Used to V**

I used to go swimming with my father after school when I was small.

- **Too adj to V: quá...**

He is too short to become a pilot.

• **Adj enough to V: đủ...**

He isn't tall enough to become a pilot.

• **Noun enough to V: đủ...**

I don't have enough money to afford a car.

• Sau các danh từ:

ability/ambition/anxiety/attempt/decision/desire/determination/eagerness/effort/failure/offer/plan/promise/refusal/wish/willingness... to V

This competition nurses their ambition to become successful businessmen.

• **Lược bỏ bớt động từ**

Why are you learning so hard?

I have to because I am having an exam tomorrow.

Would you like to join us? – I'd love to.

II. CẤU TRÚC ĐI VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ NGUYÊN MẪU KHÔNG "TO"

• **Would rather do sth than do sth else**

I'd rather play tennis than go to the cinema.

• **Had better V**

She had better leave him.

III. CÁC CẤU TRÚC ĐI VỚI DANH ĐỘNG TỪ

• **To be busy V-ing**

She's busy doing her exercise so that she can hand it in before deadline.

• **No V-ing**

No parking./No smoking.

• **Look forward to V-ing**

I look forward to hearing from you.

• **Feel like**

Do you feel like going out?

• **There is no point in V-ing**

There is no point in waiting as he won't come.

• **It's not worth V-ing**

It's not worth spending too much time on this issue.

• **It's no use/good V-ing**

It's no use asking his opinion.

It's no good persuading him to buy that suite.

• **To be/get used to/to be accustomed to V-ing**

I am used to getting early in the morning.

• **Spend time/money V-ing**

They spent two hours making the cake.

• **Cannot bear/stand**

She couldn't bear having cats in the house.

• **Cannot help**

I couldn't help laughing when I read that book.

Vì dụ: Chọn đáp án đúng

1. My sister was about _____ to go _____ (go) to sleep when her boyfriend phoned.

2. It's no good _____ asking _____ (ask) her for help as she is so selfish.

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. Cấu trúc "to be about + to V": chuẩn bị làm gì

Dịch: Chị gái tôi chuẩn bị đi ngủ thì bạn trai gọi điện

2. It's no good + V-ing: Vô ích khi làm gì

Dịch: Nhờ cô ấy giúp đỡ cũng vô ích mà thôi vì cô ấy quá ích kỉ

B – LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1

Question 1: He is used to ----- up early in the morning.

- A. get B. getting C. have gotten D. have gotten

Question 2: I shall never forget with you to Paris last year.

- A. staying B. to staying C. to stay D. stayed

Question 3: I am looking forward to you.

- A. having seen B. seeing C. to see D. all are wrong

Question 4: I always remember off the lights before I leave my house.

- A. turning B. to turn C. turned D. being turned

Question 5: I can remember very proud and happy when I graduated.

- A. to be B. being C. be D. Been

Question 6: That book isn't worth -----.

- A. read B. reading C. being reading D. to read

Question 7: It's no good ----- him the truth now.

A. to tell B. tell C. telling D. not to tell

Question 8: It's no use ----- you didn't know.

A. pretending B. pretend C. to pretend D. pretended

Question 9: When I'm on holiday, I enjoy -----to get up early.

A. not have B. not having C. having not D. not to have

Question 10: That's all right. I don't mindwaiting.

A. have kept B. having kept C. be kept D. being kept

Question 11: She admitted the money.

A. stolen B. be stealing C. have stolen D. having stolen

Question 12: Would you mindthe door?

A. close B. have closed C. closing D. to close

Question 13: William suggested to the cinema.

A. to go B. gone C. go D. going

Question 14: Your shoes need

A. to be cleaned B. cleaning C. to clean D. A&B are correct

Question 15: The plants want _____daily.

A. to be watered B. watering C. to water D. A&B are correct

Question 16: How about ----- a drink?

A. to have B. having C. have D. have had

Question 17: Do you consider our friends on Sunday?

A. to invite B. invite C. inviting D. have invited

Question 18: Why did she avoid you?

A. to have met B. meeting C. to meet D. being met

Question 19: I preferto

A. walking-cycle B. walk-cycle C. walking-cycling D. to walk-cycling

Question 20: I ran ten kilometers without-----

A. stop B. stopping C. stopped D. be stopping

Question 21: He is quite used to ----

A. work hard B. hardly working C. work hard D. working hard

Question 22: I strongly objected to..... a fee for using my credit card.

A. be charged B. charge C. be charging D. being charged

Question 23: ----- natural resources is of great importance.

A. Be preserve B. Preserving C. Preserved D. Presevered

Question 24: The exam is coming, so the teachers make their students ---- a lot.

- A. working B. worked C. to work D. work

Question 25: Her parents want her----- a doctor.

- A. to become B. become C. to becoming D. becoming

Question 26: It is kind of you ----- me the direction.

- A. giving B. give C. to give D. Gives

Question 27: The teacher never lets us ----- out when ----- .

- A. to go- explains B. go-explaining C. go-to explain D. gone-explained

Question 28: Whenever I see an action film, I feel my heart ----- strongly.

- A. thump B. to thump C. be thumped D. being thumped

Question 29: These employees are made ----- overtime.

- A. work B. to work C. working D. Worked

Question 30: I think he is not reliable enough --- ----- -- our business.

- A. to inform B. informing C. to be informed D. being informed

Question 31: He advised me the facts before I made a decision the job.

- A. considering- accept B. to consider – accepting
C. to consider – accept D. to consider - to accept

Question 32: Look! Do you see an insect----- on your foot?

- A. crawling B. crawl C. to crawl D. crawled

Question 33: They spent two months their house.

- A. renew B. renewed C. renewing D. to renew

Question 34: Their company was made 100,000 USD in taxes.

- A. paying B. to pay C. pay D. paid

Question 35: We don't have enough time the essay so we asked the teacher for a delay.

- A. wrote B. writing C. to write D. written

Question 36: I caught her my diary.

- A. reading B. read C. to read D. have read

Question 37:, Mrs Pike took the baby in her arms.

- A. To smile happily B. Smiled happily
C. Smiling happily D. As soon as smiling happily

Question 38: These workers stopped some coffee because they felt sleepy.

- A. to have B. have C. having D. Had

Question 39: Due to having a lot of things last night, we missed the film.

A. for doing/to see B. done/saw C. doing/see D. to do/seeing

Question 40: Did you notice someone ----- the room last night?

A. enter B. to enter C. entering D. A & C are correct

Question 41: Those tourists were too tired-----

A. continue B. to continue C. continuing D. Continued

Question 42: He didn't permit them----- through the military zone. He forced them another way.

A. going/to go B. to go/to go C. to go/going D. go / go

Question 43: His doctor advised him-----, but he found it impossible..... his habit.

A. stopped smoking/quit B. to stop to smoke/quitting
C. stopping smoking/for quitting D. to stop smoking/ to quit

Question 44: She wanted ----- home but the boss made her ----- until she finished ---- those contracts.

A. to go/stay/typing B. going/to stay/to type C. to go/staying/type D. go/stay/taped

Question 45: I hate

A. to keep waiting B. to be kept waiting C. being kept waiting D. B&C are correct

Question 46: Everyone likes when they have got some success.

A. to congratulate B. to be congratulate C. to be congratulating D. being congratulated

Question 47: She expected soon, but things seem wrong.

A. promoting/going B. being promoted/to go
C. to be promoted/to go D. to promote/going

Question 48: They will have some workers their house.

A. redecorate B. to redecorate C. redecorating D. redecorated

Question 49: He doesn't allow ----- in his house.

A. smoke B. to smoke C. to be smoking D. smoking

Question 50: Tell him to see me at once.

A. to come B. comes C. coming D. Come

Đáp án

1-B	2-A	3-B	4-B	5-B	6-B	7-C	8-A	9-B	10-D
11-D	12-C	13-D	14-D	15-D	16-B	17-C	18-B	19-C	20-B
21-D	22-D	23-B	24-D	25-A	26-C	27-B	28-A	29-B	30-C
31-D	32-A	33-C	34-B	35-C	36-A	37-C	38-A	39-D	40-D
41-B	42-B	43-D	44-A	45-D	46-D	47-C	48-A	49-D	50-A

LUYỆN TẬP 2

Question 1: He is too busy care of her.

- A. take B. to take C. taking D. B and C

Question 2: I regret you that your application has been refused.

- A. to inform B. informing C. inform D. informed

Question 3: Don't forget the door before going out.

- A. close B. closing C. to close D. closed

Question 4: I advise you before deciding to accept that position.

- A. to wait B. wait C. waiting D. to be waited

Question 5: I promise to give you an opportunity questions.

- A. to ask B. ask C. asking D. asked

Question 6: I caught a cold yesterday from in the rain.

- A. walking B. walk C. walked D. to walk

Question 7: You are not allowed ...on the airplane.

- A. to smoke B. smoking C. to smoking D. to smokings

Question 8: I couldn't help ... when he tripped!

- A. to laugh B. to laughing C. laughing D. laugh

Question 9: She expects peopleher, but she never helps anyone!

- A. help B. to help C. helping D. to helping

Question 10: Please stop I can hear you fine!

- A. to shout B. to shouting C. shouting D. shout

Question 11: Would you mind ... the window ? It's very hot in here.

- A. to open B. to opening C. open D. opening

Question 12: In Los Angeles, ... is not allowed in any building.

- A. to smoke B. smoking C. to smoking D. smoke

Question 13: She forgave her sister for her.

- A. to deceive B. deceive C. deceiving D. to deceiving

Question 14: Since coming here, I've got used to..... to bed early.

- A. to going B. going C. go D. to go

Question 15: I don't mindup early, if I have to.

- A. get B. to get C. to getting D. getting

Question 16: He recommended me it.

- A. do B. to do C. doing D. did

Question 17: Are his ideas worth to?

- A. listen B. listening C. to listen D. to listening

Question 18: My watch keeps.....

- A. stop B. to stop C. stopping D. stopped

Question 19: Do you often practise English?

- A. speaking B. to speak C. speak D. spoke

Question 20: I must remind my students that this grammar point needs

- A. revise B. revising C. to revise D. revised

Question 21: We found it very difficult a decision.

- A. reach B. reaching C. to reach D. to reaching

Question 22: It takes me hours a letter.

- A. to write B. writing C. to be written D. written

Question 23: We soon got the machine _____ again.

- A. to repair B. repair C. repairing D. repaired

Question 24: I caught him _____ over my wall.

- A. to climb B. climb C. having climbed D. climbing

Question 25: I hate _____ a child _____ .

- A. see/ crying B. see/ cry C. seeing / to cry D. seeing / cry

Question 26: I won't have him _____ his bike in the kitchen.

- A. clean B. cleaning C. having cleaned D. cleaned

Question 27: By the time their baby arrives, the Johnson hope _____ painting and decorating the new nursery.

- A. having finished B. to have finished
C. having been finished D. to have been finished

Question 28: I don't recall _____ him at the conference.

- A. having seen B. to have seen C. having been seen D. to have been seen

Question 29: Last year I studied abroad. I appreciate _____ the opportunity to live and study in a foreign country.

- A. having been had B. having had C. to have had D. to have been had

Question 30: Stacey seems like a bright student. She's always the first _____ her work.

- A. to finish B. finishing C. being finished D. to be finished

Đáp án

1-D	2-A	3-C	4-A	5-A	6-A	7-A	8-C	9-B	10-C
11-D	12-B	13-C	14-B	15-D	16-B	17-B	18-C	19-A	20-B
21-C	22-A	23-D	24-D	25-D	26-A	27-B	28-A	29-B	30-A

BÀI 8: SỰ HÒA HỢP GIỮA CHỦ NGỮ VÀ ĐỘNG TỪ

A – LÝ THUYẾT

I. CÁC TRƯỜNG HỢP LUÔN CHIA ĐỘNG TỪ SỐ ÍT

1. Chủ ngữ số ít thì đi với động từ số ít

Ex: Her child is very intelligent.

2. Khi chủ ngữ là các đại lượng chỉ thời gian, khoảng cách, tiền bạc, hay sự đo lường

Ex: Three hours is a long time to wait.

5 miles is quite far.

5 dollars is all I have.

3. Khi chủ ngữ là một đại từ bất định: someone, anything, nothing, everyone, another.....

Ex: - Everything is ok!

- Someone knocked the door.

- Nothing is impossible!

4. Khi chủ ngữ là một mệnh đề danh từ

Ex: - All I want to do now is to sleep.

- That you get high mark in school is very good.

5. Khi chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng "To infinitive" hoặc "V.ing"

Ex: - Reading is my hobby.

- To be successful in life is not easy.

6. Khi chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng cụm "Many a"

Ex: Many a student has a bike.

= Many students have a bike.

7. Khi chủ ngữ là một tựa đề

Ex: "Chi Pheo" is a famous work of Nam Cao.

8. Một số danh từ có hình thức số nhiều nhưng lại chia động từ số ít

- News
- Danh từ chỉ môn học, môn thể thao: physics, mathematics, economics, athletics, billiards,....
- Danh từ chỉ bệnh: measles, mumps, diabetes, rabies,
- Danh từ chỉ tên một số quốc gia: The Phillippines, the United States....

9. Khi chủ ngữ bắt đầu bằng Each/Every thì động từ chia ở số ít

- Every/Each + N số ít + V số ít

Ex:- Every applicant sends his photograph in.

- Each car has its registration number listed.

- Each of + N số nhiều + V số ít

Ex: Each of us has to be responsible for work.

- Each/Every + N1 số ít and each + N2 số ít + V số ít

Ex: Every teacher and every student has his own work.

10. A large amount
A great deal } + N không đếm được/N số ít + V số ít

Ex: - A great deal of learners' attention should be paid to the uses of English tenses.

- A large amount of sugar has been used.

11. Neither (of)
Either of } + N số nhiều + V số ít

Ex: Neither restaurants is expensive.

Neither of the children was hurt.

Either of them works in this company

II. CÁC TRƯỜNG HỢP LUÔN CHIA ĐỘNG TỪ SỐ NHIỀU

1. Chủ ngữ số nhiều thì chia động từ số nhiều

Ex: Oranges are rich in vitamin C

2. Một số danh từ không kết thúc bằng "s" nhưng dùng số nhiều: people, police, cattle, children, geese, mice.....

Ex: - The police are searching to find the thieves.

- Children like to play toys.

- People are searching for something to eat.

3. Nếu hai chủ ngữ nối nhau bằng "and" - và có quan hệ đẳng lập -> Thì động từ dùng số nhiều.

Ex: - Jane and Mary are my best friends.

- The actress and her manager are going to a party tonight.

Tuy nhiên, nếu 2 danh từ cùng chỉ một người, một bộ, hoặc 1 món ăn...thì động từ chia ở số ít (lưu ý: không có "the" ở trước danh từ sau "and")

Ex: - The professor and secretary is talented.

- Bread and butter is their daily food.

* Phép cộng thì dùng số ít:

Ex: -Two and three is five.

4. Cấu trúc both N1 and N2 + V số nhiều

Ex: Both Betty and Joan are cooking for their dinner party.

5. Khi chủ ngữ là 1 đại từ: several, both, many, few, all, some. +N số nhiều + V số nhiều

Ex: - Several students are absent.

- Many students like playing games nowadays.

6. The + adj → chỉ một tập hợp người + V số nhiều

Ex: The poor living here need help.

7. Các danh từ luôn dùng dạng số nhiều

Trousers: quần tây

Eyeglasses: kính mắt

Jeans: quần jeans

Tweezers: cái nhíp

Shorts: quần sooc

Pliers: cái kìm

Pants: quần dài

Tongs: cái kẹp

Scissors: kéo

Ex: The pants are in the drawer.

- Nếu muốn đề cập số ít thì phải dùng a pair of.

Ex: A pair of pants is in the drawer.

III. ĐỘNG TỪ CÓ THỂ DÙNG SỐ ÍT HOẶC SỐ NHIỀU TÙY TRƯỜNG HỢP

1. Khi chủ ngữ được nối với nhau bởi các liên từ: "as long as, as well as, with, together with, along with, in addition to, accompanied by"... thì động từ chia theo chủ ngữ thứ nhất.

Ex: - She along with I is going to university this year.

- Mrs. Smith together with her sons is going abroad.

- My father as well as the other people in my family is very friendly.

2.

Either or

Neither nor

Not only...but also....

...or....

...nor....

Not....but....

Động từ chia theo chủ ngữ thứ hai

Ex: - Either you or I am right.

- Neither her mother nor her father wants her to be a teacher.

- Not only the house but also the surroundings have been destroyed.
- My parents or my brother is staying at home now.

3. A number of/The number of

A number of + N số nhiều + V số nhiều

The number of + N số nhiều + V số ít

Ex:

- A number of students are going to the class picnic
- The number of days in a week is seven.

4.

All of	A lot of	} Động từ chia theo N đứng sau of
Some of	Lots of	
Plenty of	Percentage of	
None of	Part of	
Most of	The rest of	
Majority of	Half of	
Minority of	A third of	

Ex1: - One third of the oranges are mine.

- One third of the milk is enough.

Ex2: - All of the students have been rewarded.

- All of the money has been spent.

5. N1 of N2: động từ chia theo N1

Ex:

- The study of how living things work is called philosophy.
- The aims of education are formulated in terms of child growth
- Các cụm danh từ chỉ nhóm động vật mang nghĩa là “bầy, đàn” vẫn chia theo N1:

Flock of birds/sheep School of fish

Pride of lions Pack of dogs

Herd of cattle

Ex: - The flock of birds is flying to its destination.

6. Một số danh từ chỉ tập hợp

Congress family group crowd

Organization team army committee

Government jury class club

- Nếu xem như một đơn vị thì chia V số ít
- Nếu chỉ từng cá nhân tạo nên tập thể thì chia V số nhiều

Ex: - The committee is having its annual dinner.

- The committee are going back to their homes.

7. **There, Here+ be + Noun**

Động từ to be chia số ít hay số nhiều phụ thuộc vào N số ít hay số nhiều

Ex: - There are two sides to every problem.

- There is a picture on the wall.

8. **Đối với mệnh đề quan hệ**

Chia động từ theo danh từ trong mệnh đề chính

Ex: - The man in blue shirt is my boss.

- The books on the table are mine.

Ví dụ: Chọn đáp án đúng:

1. Five years the maximum sentence of that offence

A. are B. is C. have D. has

2. number of books on the table.

A. are B. is C. to be D. being

Giải thích chi tiết:

1. “Five years” là một đại lượng chỉ thời gian nên dù nó ở dạng số nhiều, chúng ta vẫn luôn chia động từ số ít

Dịch: Năm năm tù là hình phạt nặng nhất cho tội danh đó.

2. A number of = Many + danh từ số nhiều + động từ số nhiều

Dịch: Rất nhiều cuốn sách ở trên bàn.

B – LUYỆN TẬP

LUYỆN TẬP 1

Question 1: Each of you.....a share in the work.

A. to have B. have C. having D. has

Question 2: There are small.....between British and American English.

A. differences B. difference C. differently D. different

Question 3: The quality of these recordings _____ not very good.

A. be B. are C. am D. is

Question 4: The number of students in this class limited to thirty.

- A. be B. are C. is D. am

Question 5: Not only the air but also the oceans been polluted seriously.

- A. have B. has C. is having D. are having

Question 6: Working in the factory not what children should do

- A. be B. is C. are D. have been

Question 7: A large number of students in this school..... English quite fluently

- A. speaks B. is speaking C. has spoken D. speak

Question 8: Bread and butter what she asks for

- A. is B. are C. will be D. have been

Question 9: Either John or his wifebreakfast each morning.

- A. make B. is making C. makes D. made

Question 10: Some of the milk I bought last night not fresh anymore.

- A. is B. is being C. are D. are

Question 11: The use of credit cards in place of cash _____ increased rapidly in recent years.

- A. to have B. have C. has D. having

Question 12: Neither of the answers correct.

- A. are B. is C. be D. have been

Question 13: The weather in the southern states very hot during the summer.

- A. get B. have got C. is got D. gets

Question 14: Each of the residents in this community responsible for keeping this park clean.

- A. is B. am C. are D. were

Question 15: Anything _____ better than going to the movies tonight.

- A. is B. are C. am D. were

Question 16: What time _____ the news on TV?

- A. is B. am C. are D. were

Question 17: The effects of cigarette smoking _____ been proven to extremely harmful.

- A. have B. has C. to have D. having

Question 18: Advertisements on TV _____ becoming more competitive than ever before.

- A. is B. are C. was D. was

Question 19: One of the countries I would like to visitItaly

- A. be B. are C. am D. is

Question 20: A pair of jeans _____ in the washing machine this morning.

- A. is B. are C. have been D. were

Question 21: Three weeksnot enough for the holiday.

- A. are B. were C. was D. be

Question 22: Linguistics.....out the ways in which languages work

- A. find B. founded C. finds D. finding

Question 23: The Philippines.....of more than 7000 islands.

- A. consist B. consisting C. consisted D. consists

Question 24: The police to interview Fred about a robbery.

- A. want B. wants C. wanting D. has wanted

Question 25: Can I borrow your scissors? Minenot sharp enough.

- A. is B. are C. isn't D. aren't

Question 26: A number of workers ... asked for a rise since last month.

- A. have B. has C. having D. to have

Question 27: Some foods ... him ill.

- A. to make B. making C. makes D. make

Question 28: There ... only a few people at the meeting last night.

- A. been B. were C. are D. was

Question 29: Collecting old coins and paper notes ... one of my hobbies.

- A. being B. were C. are D. is

Question 30: Mr. Thomson with his wife and his three children ... abroad

- A. to be B. have been C. are D. is

Question 31: Neither Daisy nor I ... glad to do that.

- A. am B. has been C. are D. is

Question 32: The picture of the soldiers back a lot of memories.

- A. bring B. bringed C. brings D. are bringing

Question 33: Anybody who a fever must go home immediately

- A. has B. have C. is D. are

Question 34: The English ... to drink tea.

- A. likes B. to like C. like D. has liked

Question 35: That you take a computer course ... very necessary.

- A. am B. have been C. are D. is

Question 36: A pack of wild dogs frightened all the ducks away

A. have B. has C. have been D. has been

Question 37: Every elementary school teacher to take this examination.

A. have B. has C. have had D. has had

Question 38: The jury at this trial members of the local communities

A. is B. are C. be D. has been

Question 39: Most of the students in this class _____ from South Africa

A. is B. am C. are D. comes

Question 40: Half of the money ... to Mr. Lam.

A. belongs B. belong C. to belong D. belonging

Question 41: The officeon the weekend.

A. close B. closes C. is closed D. are closed

Question 42: The keys of the houselost.

A. have B. has C. have been D. has been

Question 43: Ten miles a very long distance for us to walk.

A. is B. are C. be D. am

Question 44: The books borrowed from the library on my desk.

A. is B. are C. is being D. are being

Question 45: The boy who won the two medals a friend of mine.

A. is B. are C. be D. being

Question 46: Three fifths of the land in this area used for community purposes.

A. is B. are C. have D. has

Question 47: The pilot along with his passengers ... rescued last night.

A. am B. have been C. was D. is

Question 48: Where your family live?

A. is B. are C. do D. does

Question 49: The trousers you bought for me me.

A. doesn't fit B. don't fit C. isn't fit D. aren't fit

Question 50: Either you or I able to do that job.

A. am B. is C. are D. be

Đáp án

1-D	2-A	3-D	4-C	5-A	6-B	7-D	8-A	9-C	10-A
11-C	12-B	13-D	14-A	15-A	16-A	17-A	18-B	19-D	20-A

21-C	22-C	23-D	24-A	25-B	26-A	27-D	28-B	29-D	30-D
31-A	32-C	33-A	34-C	35-D	36-B	37-B	38-B	39-C	40-A
41-C	42-C	43-A	44-B	45-A	46-A	47-C	48-C	49-B	50-A

LUYỆN TẬP 2

Question 1: Billiards considered to be an artistic sport.

- A. is B. are C. have D. has

Question 2: Cattle raised mostly in the south of the United States.

- A. is B. are C. have D. has

Question 3: Measles proven to be caused by a kind of virus.

- A. is B. are C. have D. has

Question 4: The United Nations ... its head quarters in New York city

- A. have B. having C. has D. to have

Question 5: The number of the months in a yeartwelve

- A. was B. were C. are D. is

Question 6: What he told you..... to be of no importance

- A. seems B. seem C. must seem D. have seemed

Question 7: Mr. John, accompanied by several members of the committee,.....
proposed some changes of the rules.

- A. is B. are C. have D. has

Question 8: There ... lots of snow in the garden

- A. are B. is C. am D. have been

Question 9: Tom doesn't agree but the rest of us

- A. does B. done C. do D. doing

Question 10: A lunch of soup and sandwichesnot appeal to all of the students.

- A. is B. are C. do D. does

Question 11: Above the fireplaces a portrait of Lenin.

- A. is B. are C. be D. to be

Question 12: The Japanese believed to be very self-respected.

- A. is B. are C. have D. has

Question 13: A hundred pounds too expensive for that shirt!

- A. is B. are C. be D. have been

Question 14: The City Committee trying to make the final decision about the matter.

A. is B. are C. be D. am

Question 15: Pliers for holding things firmly or cutting wire.

A. be B. am C. is D. are

Question 16: His silence ... that he agrees with us.

A. mean B. means C. meaning D. to mean

Question 17: One of the girls who ... working in this department ... my niece.

A. is/being B. is/are C. is/is D. was/were

Question 18: Everybody ... trying to do their best at present

A. have been B. to be C. are D. is

Question 19: Both of the girls ... pretty, but neither of them.....intelligent.

A. are/are B. are/is C. is/is D. is/are

Question 20: Jim as well as I ... always busy doing English homework.

A. be B. am C. is D. are

Question 21: The study of languages ... very interesting.

A. is B. are C. am D. to be

Question 22: The police ... come to the site of the accident.

A. have B. has C. has been D. have been

Question 23: Every boy and girl in this room ... the answer.

A. known B. know C. knows D. have known

Question 24: Here.....the clown that you..... best.

A. come/like B. comes/likes C. come/likes D. comes/like

Question 25: Korean very hard to learn.

A. is B. are C. be D. were

Question 26: My sister, together with her two children, to Hawaii at the moment.

A. flies B. fly C. is flying D. are flying

Question 27: No one.....the right to tell me what to do or not to do.

A. has B. have C. is having D. are having

Question 28: John or you to be responsible for the unfinished work.

A. is B. are C. have D. has

Question 29: Both Peter and his girlfriend..... working for a bank.

A. are B. is C. be D. is being

Question 30: Three kilos of potatoes ... the basket heavier.

A. do B. does C. make D. makes

Đáp án

1-A	2-B	3-A	4-C	5-D	6-A	7-D	8-B	9-C	10-D
11-A	12-B	13-A	14-A	15-D	16-B	17-C	18-D	19-B	20-C
21-A	22-A	23-C	24-D	25-A	26-C	27-A	28-C	29-A	30-D

PHỤ LỤC
BẢNG TỔNG HỢP CẤU TẠO TỪ

A			
1	Able	(a)	Có năng lực, có khả năng
	Enable	(V)	Làm cho có thể
	Ably	(adv)	Một cách có tài
	Ability	(n)	Năng lực, khả năng
2.	Abrupt	(a)	Thình lình, đột ngột
	Abruptly	(adv)	Thình lình, rời ra
	Abruptness	(n)	Sự bất ngờ
3.	Absent	(a)	Vắng mặt
	Absently	(adv)	Lơ đãng
	Absentee	(n)	Người vắng mặt
	Absence	(n)	Sự vắng mặt
4	Academy	(n)	Viện hàn lâm, viện triết học
	Academe	(n)	Học viện, trường đại học
	Academie	(a)	Thuộc về trường đại học
	Academicals	(n)	Mũ và áo dài mặc ở đại học
	Academician	(n)	Viện sĩ
5	Access	(V)	Truy cập
	Access	(n)	Lối vào, đường vào, đến gần
	Accession	(n)	Gia nhập
	Accessible	(a)	Có thể đi vào, tới gần
	Accessibility	(n)	Sự có thể đến gần
6	Accommodate	(V)	Cung cấp tiện nghi, chỗ ở
	Accommodation	(n)	Chỗ trọ, chỗ ở, tiện nghi
	Accommodating	(a)	Hay giúp đỡ, thuận lợi
	Accommodative	(a)	= accommodating
7	Accord	(n)(v)	Đồng tình, đồng lòng
	Accordance	(n)	Giống nhau, hợp nhau
	Accordant	(a)	Phù hợp
	According(to)	(pre)	Tùy theo

	Accordingly	(adv)	Tùy theo
8	Accustom	(V)	Làm quen
	Accustomed	(a)	Quen
9	Achieve	(V)	Có được, đạt được
	Achievable	(a)	Có thể hoàn thành, đạt được
	Achivement	(n)	Thành tựu, thành tích
	Achiever	(n)	Người thành đạt
10	Acquaintance	(n)	Sự làm quen, hiểu biết, quen
	Acquaint	(v)	Làm quen, hiểu biết
11	Act	(v)	Thực hiện
	Activity	(n)	Sự hoạt động
	Action	(n)	Hành động
	Active	(a)(n)	Tích cực
	Actor	(n)	Nam diễn viên
	Actress	(n)	Nữ diễn viên
	Activist	(n)	Người hoạt động tích cực
12	Actual	(a)	Thật sự, quả thật
	Actually	(adv)	Quả thật, thật ra
13.	Addict=addictive	(n)	Người nghiện, người say mê
	Addiction	(n)	Thói nghiện, sự ham mê
	Addicted	(a)	Say mê, nghiện
14.	Admire	(v)	Ngưỡng mộ, hâm mộ
	Amirable	(a)	Đáng hâm mộ
	Amiration	(n)	Sự hâm mộ
	Admirer	(n)	Người ái mộ
15.	Advantage	(n)	Sự thuận lợi
	Advantageous	(a)	Có lợi, thuận lợi
	Advantageously ≠ disadvantage	(adv)	Thật có lợi
		(n)	Bất lợi
16.	Adventure	(n)	Cuộc phiêu lưu
	Adventurous	(a)	Thích mạo hiểm
	Adventurer	(n)	Người thích mạo hiểm

17.	Advertise	(v)	Quảng cáo
	Advertisement	(n)	Mục quảng cáo
	Advertiser	(n)	Người nhà quảng cáo
	Advertising	(n)	Sự quảng cáo
18.	Advise	(v)	Khuyến bảo
	Advice	(n)	Lời khuyên
	Adviser	(n)	Người khuyên, cố vấn
	Advisable	(a)	Nên khôn ngoan
	Advisability	(n)	Sự khen ngợi
	Advisedly	(adv)	Thận trọng, suy nghĩ kỹ
	Adviser	(n)	Người chỉ bảo, cố vấn
	Advisory	(a)	Cho ý kiến
19.	Affect	(v)	Ảnh hưởng đến, bổ nhiệm
	Affect	(n)	Cảm giác, ham muốn
	Affection	(n)	Ảnh hưởng, cảm động
	Affective= affecting	(a)	Dễ cảm động, đa cảm
	Affectively	(adv)	Thật đa cảm
	Affectation	(n)	Không thành thật, bổ nhiệm
	Affected	(a)	Được bổ nhiệm, cảm động
20.	Aggression	(n)	Sự tấn công, xâm lược
	Aggress	(v)	Gây hấn, gây cự
	Aggressive	(a)	Hiếu chiến, xâm lăng
	Aggressively	(adv)	Một cách hiếu chiến
	Aggressor	(n)	Kẻ xâm lược
21.	Agree	(v)	Đồng ý
	Agreeable	(a)	Sẵn sàng đồng ý
	Agreeably	(adv)	Một cách tán thành
	Agreement	(n)	Sự đồng ý
22	Agriculture	(n)	Nông nghiệp

	Agricultural	(a)	Thuộc về nông nghiệp
	Agriculturist	(n)	Người làm ruộng
23	Alarm	(v)	Báo động
	Alarm	(n)	Sự báo động, sự sợ hãi
	Alarmed	(a)	Lo lắng, sợ hãi
	Alarming	(a)	Làm cho lo lắng
	Alarmism	(n)	Sự gieo hoang mang
	Alarmist	(n)	Người dễ sợ hãi
24.	Alert	(v)(n)	Báo động sự báo động
	Alert	(a)	Mau, nhanh lẹ
	Alertness	(n)	Sự mau mắn
25	Alter	(v)	Thay đổi
	Alterable	(a)	Có thể thay đổi
	Alteration	(n)	Sự thay đổi
	Alterability	(n)	Sự thay đổi
26	Alternative	(a)	Luân phiên
	Alternatively	(adv)	Cách luân phiên, chọn lựa
	Alternate	(v)(a)	Thay thế, luân phiên
	Alternation	(n)	Sự luân phiên, tuần hoàn
	Alternately	(adv)	Lần lượt, thay phiên
	Alternating	(a)	Thay phiên, xoay chiều
27	Amaze	(v)	Làm ngạc nhiên
	Amazing	(a)	Ngạc nhiên
	Amazingly	(adv)	Thật ngạc nhiên
	Amazed	(a)	Bị làm ngạc nhiên
	Amazedly	(adv)	Thật đáng ngạc nhiên
	Amazement	(n)	Sự ngạc nhiên
28	Ambitious	(a)	Có hoài bão

	Ambition	(n)	Hoài bão
	Ambitiously	(adv)	Thật nhiều hoài bão
29	America	(n)	Châu Mỹ, nước Mỹ
	American	(a)	Thuộc về Châu Mỹ
	American	(n)	Người Mỹ
30	Amuse	(v)	Làm cho vui
	Amusing	(a)	Vui
	Amusingly	(adv)	Thật vui
	Amused	(a)	Bị làm cho vui
	Amusedly	(adv)	Thật vui
	Amusement	(n)	Sự vui nhộn
31	Ancient	(a)	Xưa, cổ xưa
	Anciently	(adv)	Thật, xa xưa
	Ancientness	(n)	Tính trạng cổ xưa
32	Angry	(n)	Giận dữ
	Angrily	(adv)	Một cách giận dữ
	Anger	(v)(n)	Chọc giận, sự giận dữ
33	Announcement	(n)	Sự tuyên bố, thông báo
	Announce	(v)	Tuyên bố, thông báo tin
	Announcer	(n)	Người tuyên bố, phát ngôn
34.	Annoy	(v)	Làm phiền, quấy rầy
	Annoyance	(n)	Sự làm phiền
	Annoyed	(a)	Bị làm phiền
	Annoying	(n)	Buồn bực
35	Apology	(n)	Sự xin lỗi
	Apologize	(v)	Xin lỗi
	Apologist	(n)	Người xin lỗi
36	Applaud	(v)	Vỗ tay, khen ngợi

	Applauder	(n)	Người hay khen, tán thành
	Applause	(n)	Sự tán thành, biểu dương
37	Appliance	(n)	Thiết bị, dụng cụ, ứng dụng
	Apply	(v)	Ứng dụng, áp dụng
	Application	(n)	Sự áp dụng
	Applicant	(n)	Người xin việc
	Applicable	(a)	Có thể dùng được
	Applicably	(adv)	Áp dụng được
38	Appoint	(v)	Hẹn
	Appointed	(a)	Định hẹn
	Appointment	(n)	Cuộc hẹn
39	Approximate	(a)(v)	Gây ước chừng, xấp xỉ
	Approximately	(adv)	Vào khoảng, gần
	Approximation	(n)	Sự gần giống nhau
40	Argument	(n)	Lý lẽ, sự tranh luận
	Argue	(v)	Biện luận, tranh luận
	Argumentation	(a)	Sự cãi, biện luận, luận chứng
	Argumentative	(a)	Hợp với lí luận, hay lý luận
41	Arrange	(v)	Sắp xếp
	Arrangement	(n)	Sự xếp đặt
42	Arrive	(v)	Đến
	Arrival	(n)	Sự đến, tới
	Arrivist	(n)	Người mới phát
43	Art	(n)	Nghệ thuật, mỹ thuật
	Artist	(n)	Họa sĩ
	Artistic	(a)	Có mỹ thuật
	Artistically	(adv)	Thật có tính mỹ thuật
	≠Artless	(a)	Không có mỹ thuật

	Artlessly	(adv)	Thật không có mỹ thuật
	Artlessness	(n)	Sự không có mỹ thuật
44	Assign	(v)	Phân công, giao nhiệm vụ
	Assignment	(n)	Sự phân công, việc được giao
	Assigner	(n)	Người phân công
45	Assistance	(n)	Sự giúp đỡ, trợ lực
	Assistant	(n)	Người phụ tá bán hàng
	Assistant	(a)	Giúp việc, phụ tá
	Assist	(v)	Giúp đỡ, trợ lực
	Assistantship	(n)	Chức phó, phụ, trợ
46.	Association	(n)	Sự phối hợp, liên kết
	Associate	(v)	Phối hợp, liên kết
	Associable	(a)	Có thể liên kết được
	Associability	(n)	Có khả năng liên kết được
	Associational	(a)	Liên quan đến hội đoàn
	Associative	(a)	Thuộc về sự liên hợp
47	Attend	(v)	Tham dự, có mặt, hầu hạ
	Attendance	(n)	Sự tham dự, có mặt, hầu hạ
	Attendant	(n)	Người hầu cho người có quyền
48	Attention	(n)	Sự chú ý, lưu ý
	Attentive	(a)	Chú ý, lưu ý
	Attentively	(adv)	Một cách lưu ý
	Attentiveness	(n)	Sự chú ý
	Attend	(v)	Chú ý, chăm sóc
49	Attract	(v)	Thu hút
	Attraction	(n)	Sự thu hút
	Attractive	(a)	Thu hút, hấp dẫn

	Attractively	(adv)	Thật hấp dẫn
50	Australia	(n)	Châu Úc, nước Úc
	Australian	(a)	Thuộc về nước Úc
	Australian	(n)	Người úc
51	Austria	(n)	Nước áo
	Austrian	(a)	Thuộc về nước Áo
	Austrian	(n)	Người áo
52	Authority	(n)	Nhà cầm quyền
	Authorize	(v)	Cho phép, ban quyền
	Author	(n)	Nam tác giả
	Authoress	(n)	Nữ tác giả
	Authorship	(n)	Nghề viết văn
	Authorial	(a)	Thuộc về quyền tác giả
	Authoritative	(a)	Có quyền lực, thẩm quyền
	Authoritatively	(adv)	Có vẻ quyền hành
	Authorization	(n)	Sự cho phép, giấy ủy quyền
53	Automatic	(v)	Tự động hóa
	Automatic	(a)	Tự động, máy móc
	Automatically	(adv)	Một cách tự động
	Automatics	(n)	Tự động học
	Automation	(n)	Sự tự động hóa
54	Available	(a)	Có hiệu lực, có giá trị
	Availably	(adv)	Thật có giá trị
	Availability	(in)	Sự có hiệu lực
55	Avoid	(v)	Tránh né
	Avoidable	(a)	Tránh xa
	Avoidance	(n)	Sự tránh né
56	Aware	(a)	Nhận thức, nhận thấy

	Awareness	(n)	Sự nhận thức
57	Awful	(a)	Hình sự, khủng khiếp
	Awfully	(adv)	Thật khủng khiếp
	Awfulness	(n)	Sự kinh sợ
B			
1.	Bad	(a)	Xấu tệ, dở
	Badly	(adv)	Thật là tệ
	Badness	(n)	Sự xấu
2.	Baggy	(a)	Rộng thùng thình
	Bagginess	(n)	Sự rộng thùng thình
3.	Paid	(a)	Khô khan
	Baldly	(adv)	Nghèo nàn, khô khan
	Baldness	(n)	Chứng rụng tóc, hói
	Balding	(a)	Bắt đầu hói
4.	Beautiful	(a)	Đẹp, xinh đẹp
	Beautifully	(adv)	Thật xinh đẹp
	Beautify	(v)	Làm đẹp
	Beauty	(n)	Vẻ đẹp
	Beautician	(n)	Chuyên viên thẩm mỹ
5.	Behave	(v)	Ăn ở, cư xử
	Behavior= behaviour	(n)	Cách cư xử, thái độ
	Behaved	(a)	Có lễ phép, đứng đắn
	Behavioral	(a)	Thuộc về cư xử
6.	Beneficial	(a)	Có lợi ích
	Benefit	(n)	Lợi ích, ân huệ, phụ cấp
	Benefit	(v)	Được lợi, lợi dụng
7.	Begin	(v)	Bắt đầu
	Beginner	(n)	Người bắt đầu

	Beginning	(n)	Lúc đầu
8.	Big	(a)	To
	Bigly	(adv)	Thật to
	Bigness	(n)	Sự to lớn
9.	Biology	(n)	Sinh vật học
	Biological	(a)	Thuộc về sinh vật học
	Biologically	(adv)	Về mặt sinh học
	Biologist	(n)	Nhà sinh vật học
10.	Birth	(n)	Sự sinh đẻ
	Birthday	(n)	Ngày sinh
11.	Blind	(a)	Đui, mù
	Blindly	(adv)	Một cách mù quáng
	Blindness	(n)	Sự mù lòa
	Blinding	(a)(n)	Chói mắt, tạt mù
12.	Board	(v)	Lên tàu, lót ván
	Boarder	(n)	Kẻ chiếm tàu, sinh viên nội trú
	Boarding	(n)	Sự lót ván
	Boardwages	(n)	Tiền cơm, phụ cấp
13.	Bore	(v)	Buồn chán
	Boring	(a)	Buồn, chán
	Boringly	(adv)	Thật buồn
	Bored	(a)	Bị làm cho buồn
	Boredly	(adv)	Bị làm cho buồn
	Boredom	(a)	Sự buồn chán
14.	Botanical	(a)	Thuộc về thảo mộc
	Botanist	(n)	Nhà thực vật học
	Botanize	(v)	Nghiên cứu thực vật

	Botany	(n)	Thực vật học
15.	Brave	(v)	Can đảm
	Brave	(adv)	Bất chấp, không sợ
	Bravely	(adv)	Dũng cảm
	Braveness = bravery	(n)	Sự dũng cảm, tính gan dạ
16.	Bright	(a)	Sáng chói
	Brightly	(adv)	Thật sáng chói
	Brightness	(n)	Sự rực rỡ
17.	Brilliance	(n)	Sự xuất chúng, tài giỏi
	Brilliant	(a)	Tài năng, xuất sắc
	Brilliantly	(adv)	Một cách tài giỏi
18.	Brother	(n)	Anh em trai
	Brotherhood	(n)	Tình huynh đệ
	Brotherly	(n)	Thuộc về anh em
19.	Buddhist	(n)	Người theo đạo Phật
	Buddhist	(n)	Thuộc về đạo Phật
	Buddhism	(n)	Đạo Phật
	Buddha	(n)	Phật Thích Ca
20.	Build	(v)	Xây dựng
	Building	(n)	Sự xây dựng, tòa nhà
	Builder	(n)	Người xây dựng, thầu
21.	Bum	(n)	Vết bỏng, cháy
	Bum	(v)	Đốt cháy, thiêu hủy
	Burner	(n)	Người đốt
	Burning	(a)	Đang cháy, nóng bỏng
22.	Bush	(n)	Bụi cây
	Bushy	(a)	Có bụi cây
23.	Business	(n)	Việc mua bán, kinh doanh

	Businessman	(a)	Doanh nhân
	Businesslike	(a)	Có hiệu quả, hệ thống
24.	Busy	(a)	Bận rộn, đông đúc
	Busily	(adv)	Thật bận rộn
25.	Button	(n)(v)	Cài nút
	≠ Unbutton	(n)	Không cài nút
C			
1	Calculate	(v)	Tính toán
	Calculative	(n)	Có tính toán
	Calculation	(n)	Sự tính toán
	Calculator	(n)	Máy tính, người tính
	Calculating	(a)	Thận trọng, có tính toán
2	Can	(n)(v)	Bình can, hộp, đóng hộp
	Canned	(a)	Được vô hộp
	Canful	(n)	Đầy bình
3.	Canada	(n)	Nước Canada
	Canadian	(a)	Thuộc Canada, tiếng Canada
	Canada	(n)	Người Canada
4.	Care	(n)	Sự chăm sóc, chăm nom
	Careful	(a)	Cẩn thận
	Carefully	adv)	Thật cẩn thận
	Carefulness	(n)	Sự thận trọng
	Careless	(a)	Bất cẩn
	Carelessly	adv)	Thật bất cẩn
	Carelessness	(n)	Sự bất cẩn
5.	Carry	(v)	Mang, vác, chuyên chở, cư xử
	Carriage	(n)	Cách cư xử, thái độ, thực hiện
6.	Casual	(a)	Tình cờ, thất thường

	Casually	(adv)	Tình cờ
	Casualty	(n)	Bất thường
7.	Celebrate	(v)	Tổ chức lễ
	Celebration	(n)	Lễ kỉ niệm
	Celebrant	(n)	Người coi việc cúng tế
8.	Center = centre	(n)	Trung tâm
	Central	(a)	Tại trung tâm, quan trọng
	Centrally	(a)	Thật trọng tâm
	Centralize	(v)	Tập trung
9.	Certain	(a)	Chắc chắn
	Certainly	(adv)	Thật chắc chắn
	Certainty	(n)	Sự chắc chắn
10.	Challenge	(v)	Thách thức, thách đố
	Challenger	(n)	Người thách đấu
	Challenging	(a)	Thử thách, kích thích
11	Champion	(n)	Nhà vô địch
	Championship	(n)	Chức vô địch
12.	Change	(n)	Sự thay đổi
	Change	(v)	Thay đổi
	Changeable	(a)	Có thể thay đổi
	Changeful	(a)	Hay thay đổi
	≠ Changeless	(a)	Không thể thay đổi
13.	Charity	(n)	Từ thiện, lòng bác ái
	Charitable	(a)	Từ thiện bác ái khoan dung
	Charitableness	(n)	Lòng từ thiện, nhân đức
13.	Cheap	(a)	Rẻ tiền
	Cheaply	(adv)	Thật rẻ
	Cheapness	(n)	Giá rẻ

	Cheapen	(v)	Hạ giá
14.	Cheer	(v)(n)	Hoan hô, reo vui
	Cheerful	(a)	Vui vẻ, hân hoan
	Cheerfully	(adv)	Thật vui vẻ
	Cheerfulness	(n)	Sự vui vẻ, hân hoan
15	Chemistry	(n)	Ngành hóa học
	Chemist	(n)	Nhà hóa học
	Chemical	(a)	Thuộc về hóa học
	Chemically	(adv)	Về phương diện hóa học
	Chemicals	(n)	Hóa chất
16.	Chief	(a)(n)	Chủ yếu, chính yếu
	Chiefly	(adv)	Trên hết, cốt yếu
17.	Child	(n)	Trẻ con, 1 đứa trẻ
	Children	(n)	Trẻ con, nhiều đứa trẻ
	Childhood	(n)	Thời niên thiếu
	Childish	(n)	Như con nít
18.	China	(n)	Nước Trung Quốc
	Chinese	(n)(n)	Người Trung Quốc, tiếng Trung Quốc
19.	Choose	(v)	Chọn lựa
	Choice	(n)	Sự chọn lựa
	Chossy	(a)	Hay kén chọn
20.	Citizen	(n)	Công dân thành phố
	Citizenship	(n)	Quyền công dân
21.	Claim	(v)(n)	Tuyên bố, yêu cầu
	Claimant	(a)	Có thể yêu cầu
	Claimer	(n)	Người thỉnh cầu, nguyên cáo
22.	Class	(n)	Lớp học

	Classmate		Bạn cùng lớp
	Class=classify	(v)	Xếp hạng, xếp loại
	Classy	(a)	Hạng tốt
23.	Classic	(a)	Cổ điển
	Classical	(n)	Nhạc cổ điển
24.	Clean	(v)	Lau chùi, làm sạch
	Clean	(a)	Sạch sẽ
	Cleanly	(adv)	Thật sạch sẽ
	Cleaner	(n)	Người làm sạch
	Cleanliness	(n)	Tính sạch sẽ, sự trong sạch
	Cleanable	(n)	Có thể lau chùi
	Clear	(n)	Rõ ràng, sáng sủa
	Clear	(v)	Làm cho sáng
	Clearly	(adv)	Thật rõ ràng
	Clearness	(n)	Sự minh bạch, rõ ràng
25.	Clever	(a)	Khéo léo
	Cleverly	(adv)	Thật khéo léo
	Cleverness	(n)	Sự khéo léo
26.	Climb	(v)(n)	Leo trèo, sự leo trèo
	Climber	(n)	Người leo núi
	Climbable	(a)	Có thể leo được
27.	Close	(a)	Gần gũi, thân cận
	Closely	(adv)	Thật gần gũi
	Closeness	(n)	Sự gần gũi
	Close	(v)	Đóng, ngăn chặn
28.	Cloth	(n)	Vải, khăn bàn
	Clothe	(v)	Mặc đồ, may cho
	Clothes	(n)	Quần áo, y phục

	Clothier	(n)	Người dệt vải, bán quần áo
	Clothing	(n)	Sự mặc đồ, y phục
29.	Cloud	(n)	Mây
	Cloudy≠cloudless	(a)	Có mây, không có mây
30.	Coast	(n)	Bờ biển duyên hải
	Coast	(v)	Đi dọc theo bờ biển
	Coastal	(a)	Thuộc miền duyên hải
	Coaster	(n)	Tàu buồm chạy ven biển
	Coastline	(n)	Miền duyên hải
	Coastward	(adv)	Hướng về bờ biển
31.	Coat	(v)(n)	Áo choàng bọc ngoài
	Coated	(a)	Có bọc ngoài, che
	Coating	(n)	Lớp phủ ngoài
32.	Co-educate	(v)	Giáo dục tổng hợp nam nữ
	Co-education	(n)	Nền giáo dục tổng hợp
	Co-educational	(a)	Thuộc về giáo dục nam nữ
33.	Cold	(a)	Lạnh lẽo
	Coldly	(adv)	Thật lạnh lẽo
	Coldness	(n)	Sự lạnh lẽo
	Coldish	(a)	Hơi lạnh
34.	Collapse	(v)	Đổ sập, ngã quỵ, xếp gọn
	Collapsible	(a)	Có thể xếp lại, thu lại
35.	Collect	(v)	Thu gom sưu tầm
	Collector	(n)	Người thu gom, sưu tầm
	Collection	(n)	Sự thu gom, bộ sưu tầm
	Collective	(a)	Tập thể
36.	Color	(n)	Màu sắc
	Colorful	(a)	Có nhiều màu

	Colored	(a)	Đã có sẵn màu
	Colorist	(n)	Người tô màu
	Colorant ≠ coloress	(n)(a)	Thuốc màu, thuốc nhuộm; Không có màu
37.	Comfortable	(a)	Thoải mái, dễ chịu
	Comfortably	(adv)	Thật dễ chịu
	Comfort	(v)	An ủi, làm khuây
	Comfort ≠ uncomfortable	(n)(a)	Sự an ủi, không thoải mái
38.	Comedy	(n)	Kịch vui, hài kịch
	Comedian	(n)	Diễn viên hài
	Comedienne	(n)	Nữ diễn viên hài
39.	Comic	(a)	Hài hước, khôi hài
	Comic	(n)	Diễn viên hài
	Comical	(a)	Khôi hài, tức cười
	Comically	(adv)	Thật tức cười
40.	Commerce	(n)	Thương mại
	Commercial	(a)	Thuộc về thương mại
	Commercially	(adv)	Về phương diện thương mại
41.	Common	(a)	Chung, công
	Commonly	(adv)	Thông thường, bình thường
	Commonness	(n)	Tính chất chung chung
42.	Communal	(a)	Thuộc công cộng, của chung
	Communalize	(v)	Biến thành của chung
	Commune	(v)	Hòa mình, sống thân mật
43.	Communication	(n)	Sự thông tin liên lạc
	Communicative	(a)	Sẵn sàng thông tin
	Communicatively	(adv)	Thông tin được truyền đi
	Communicator	(n)	Người truyền tin, máy truyền

			tin
44.	Community	(n)	Nhân dân, cộng đồng
	Communize	(v)	Cộng sản hóa
	Communist	(n)	Người cộng sản
45.	Compare	(v)	So sánh
	Comparison	(n)	Sự so sánh
	Comparable	(a)	Có thể so sánh
	Comparably	(adv)	So sánh được
	Comparative	(a)	So sánh, tương đối
	Comparatively	(adv)	Tương đối
46.	Compete	(v)	Tranh tài, thi đấu
	Competitor	(n)	Người tranh tài
	Competition	(n)	Cuộc tranh tài
	Competitive	(a)	Có tính tranh tài
	Competitively	(adv)	Thật cạnh tranh
47.	Compile	(v)	Biên tập, biên soạn
	Compilation	(n)	Sự biên tập, thu lượm
	Compiler	(n)	Người biên soạn
48.	Complain	(v)	Than phiền
	Complaint	(n)	Lời than phiền
	Complainer	(n)	Người than phiền
	Complainingly	(adv)	Oán trách, ca thán
	Complainant	(n)	Người thực hiện
49.	Complete	(v)	Hoàn thành
	Complete	(a)	Đầy đủ trọn vẹn
	Completely	(adv)	Một cách hoàn thành
	Completeness	(n)	Tính chất trọn vẹn
	Completion	(n)	Sự hoàn thành

50	Complex	(a)(n)	Phức tạp, phiền phức, rắc rối
	Complexity	(n)	Sự rắc rối
51.	Complicate	(v)	Làm phức tạp, rắc rối
	Complicated	(a)	Phức tạp, rắc rối
	Complication	(n)	Sự phức tạp, rắc rối
52.	Compliment	(v)(n)	Khen ngợi
	Complimentary	(a)	Tán dương, khen ngợi
52.	Compose	(v)	Soạn, sáng tác
	Composer	(n)	Người soạn nhạc
	Composing	(n)	Sự sáng tác
	Composition	(n)	Bài sáng tác, bài luận
53.	Compulsory=compulsive	(a)	Bắt buộc, cưỡng chế
	Compulsion	(n)	Sự bắt buộc
	Compel	(v)	Ép buộc
54.	Compute	(v)	Tính toán
	Computer	(n)	Máy tính
	Computerize	(v)	Điện toán hóa
	Computation	(n)	Sự tính toán ước lượng
	Computational	(a)	Sử dụng máy điện toán
	Computable	(a)	Có thể tính toán được
55.	Condition	(n)	Điều kiện, hoàn cảnh
	Conditional	(a)	Có điều kiện
	Conditionally	(adv)	Tùy theo điều kiện
	Conditioned	(a)	Điều hòa, có điều kiện
	Conditioner	(n)	Máy điều hòa
56.	Conduct	(v)	Dẫn dắt, dẫn nhiệt
	Conduction	(n)	Sự dẫn, truyền nhiệt
	Conductive	(a)	Có tính truyền dẫn nhiệt

	Conductivity	(n)	Tính truyền dẫn nhiệt, điện
	Conductor	(n)	Người bán vé, vật đánh điện
	Conductress	(n)	Nữ bán vé xe
57.	Confident	(a)	Tin chắc, tin cậy
	Confidence	(n)	Sự tin cậy
	Confidently	(adv)	Tự tin
	Confidential	(a)	Kín, bí mật, được tin nhiệm
58.	Congratulate	(v)	Chúc mừng
	Congratulation	(n)	Sự chúc mừng
	Congratulator	(n)	Người chúc mừng
	Congratulatory	(a)	Khen ngợi, khen tặng
59.	Connect	(v)	Kết nối
	Connective	(a)	Dùng để liên lạc
	Connection	(n)	Sự liên kết
	Connector = connecter	(n)	Chỗ liên kết
	Connected	(a)	Có quan hệ, liên thông
60.	Conscious	(a)	Hiểu biết, tỉnh táo
	Consciously	(adv)	Có ý thức, cố ý
	Consciousness	(n)	Sự hồi tỉnh, có ý thức
61.	Conserve	(v)	Gìn giữ, bảo tồn
	Conservation	(n)	Sự bảo tồn, bảo quản
	Conservationist	(n)	Người bảo quản
	Conservative	(a)	Bảo thủ, bảo tồn
	Conservator	(n)	Người bảo vệ, trông trọt
62.	Consider	(v)	Xem xét, suy nghĩ đắn đo
	Considerate	(n)	Ý tứ, thận trọng
	Considerately	(adv)	Thật thận trọng
	Consideration	(n)	Sự suy xét kỹ, thận trọng

63.	Construct	(v)	Làm xây dựng
	Construction	(n)	Sự xây dựng
	Constructive	(a)	Thuộc về xây dựng
	Constructively	(adv)	Có tính cách xây dựng
	Constructor	(n)	Kiến trúc sư
64.	Consumer	(n)	Người tiêu dùng
	Consume	(v)	Tiêu thụ
	Consuming	(a)	Tiêu hủy
	Consumption	(n)	Sự tiêu thụ, tiêu dùng
	Consumable	(a)	Có thể ăn được
	Consumptive	(a)	Thuộc về sự tiêu thụ
65.	Contact	(v)	Tiếp xúc, đụng chạm
	Contact	(n)	Sự giao dịch, liên lạc
	Contact	(n)	Cái ngắt điện tự động
66.	Contaminate	(v)	Chứa đựng, bao gồm
	Contamination	(n)	Có thể nén lại
	Contaminant	(n)	Đồ đựng, công tai nơ
67.	Contest	(v)	Nhiễm bẩn
	Contest	(n)	Sự nhiễm bẩn
	Contestant	(n)	Chất gây nhiễm bẩn
	Contestable	(a)	Tranh tài, thi đấu
	Contestation	(n)	Cuộc tranh tài
68.	Continue	(v)	Làm tiếp, tiếp tục
	Continuator	(n)	Người làm tiếp
	Continuous	(a)	Tiếp tục, liên tiếp
	Continuousness	(n)	Sự tiếp tục
	Continuation	(n)	Sự tiếp tục, liên tục
69.	Control	(v)	Điều khiển, kiểm soát

	Control	(n)	Sự điều khiển, kiểm soát
	Controller	(n)	Nhân viên, máy kiểm soát
	Controllable	(a)	Có thể kiểm soát được
70.	Convenient	(a)	Thuận lợi
	Convenience	(n)	Sự tiện lợi
	Conveniently # inconvenient	(adv)(a)	Thật thuận lợi # bất lợi
71.	Cook	(v)	Nấu ăn
	Cook	(n)	Đầu bếp
	Cooker	(n)	Bếp lò
	Cookery	(n)	Nghề nấu ăn
	Cooking	(n)	Cách nấu ăn
	Cookie	(n)	Bánh ngọt
72.	Cool	(a)	Mát lạnh
	Cool	(v)	Làm mát
	Cooler	(n)	Máy ướp lạnh
	Coolant	(n)	Chất lỏng làm nguội
	Coolly	(adv)	Mát mẻ, điềm tĩnh
	Coolness	(n)	Sự lạnh lùng
73.	Co-operate	(v)	Hợp tác, chung sức
	Co-operation	(n)	Sự cộng tác
	Co- operative	(a)	Có tính cộng tác
	Co- operator	(n)	Người cộng tác
74.	Correct	(a)(v)	Đúng, sửa cho đúng
	Correctly	(adv)	Thật chính xác
	Correctness	(n)	Sự chính xác
	Correction	(n)	Sự sửa chữa
	Corrective	(a)	Dễ sửa chữa
	Correctively	(adv)	Dễ hiệu chỉnh

	Corrector	(n)	Người sửa chữa
75.	Correspond	(v)	Tương xứng
	Correspondence	(n)	Sự giao dịch, tương hợp
	Correspondent	(a)	Tương đối với
	Correspondent (to)	(n)	Phóng viên, thông tin viên
	Corresponding	(a)	Bằng nhau, thông tin
	Correspondingly	(adv)	Một cách tương xứng
76.	Cost	(n)	Giá mua
	Cost	(v)	Đáng giá, tốn tiền
	Costly	(a)	Tốn tiền, đắt giá
	Costless	(a)	Không tốn tiền
77.	Council	(n)	Hội đồng, ủy ban, hội nghị
	Councillor	(n)	Nghị viên
	Councillorship	(n)	Chức nghị sự
	Councilman	(n)	Hội viên, hội đồng
78.	Count	(v)	Đếm
	Count	(n)	Tổng số
	Countable	(a)	Có thể đếm được
	Countably	(adv)	Đếm được
	Counter	(n)	Máy đếm, quầy thu tiền
	Countless= uncomfortable	(a)	Không đếm được, vô số kể
79.	Courage	(n)	Sự can đảm dũng cảm
	Courageous	(a)	Can đảm, dũng cảm
	Encourage	(v)	Khích lệ, làm cho can đảm
	Encouragement	(n)	Sự khuyến khích
80.	Create	(v)	Tạo, sáng tác
	Creation	(n)	Sự sáng tạo
	Creative	(a)	Sáng tạo

	Creatively	(adv)	Thật sáng tạo
	Creativeness	(n)	Óc sáng tạo
	Creator	(n)	Người sáng tạo
	Creature	(n)	Tạo vật, loài người, loài vật
81.	Crowd	(n)	Đám đông
	Crowd	(v)	Tụ tập, làm cho đông
	Crowded	(a)	Đông đúc
82.	Cruel	(a)	Hung dữ, độc ác
	Cruelly	(adv)	Thật tàn nhẫn
	Cruelty	(n)	Sự tàn nhẫn, hung dữ
83.	Cry	(v)	Khóc, la
	Crier	(n)	Người rao bán
	Crying	(a)	Khóc lóc, kêu la
84.	Culture	(n)	Văn hóa
	Cultural	(a)	Thuộc về văn hóa
	Culturally	(adv)	Về phương diện văn hóa
	Cultured	(n)	Có văn hóa, học thức
85.	Curl	(v)(n)	Uốn, quăn, làm gọn sóng,
	Curly = curling	(a)	Quăn, xoắn, uốn
	Curler	(n)	ống uốn tóc
	Curliness	(n)	Tính quăn, tính xoắn
86.	Custom	(n)	Phong tục, thói quen
	Customary	(a)	Thành thói quen
	Customer	(n)	Người mua, khách mua
	Customize	(V)	Làm thay đổi đồ theo ý khách
87.	Cyclone	(n)	Cơn gió lốc, bão
	Cyclonal	(n)	Thuộc về gió cuốn
D			

1.	Daily	(a)(adv)	Mỗi ngày, hàng ngày
	Day	(n)	Ngày
2.	Damage	(v)	Làm thiệt hại
	Damage	(n)	Sự tổn hại
	Damageable	(a)	Có hại
	Damaging	(a)	Sự nguy hiểm
3.	Danger	(n)	Sự nguy hiểm
	Dangerous	(a)	Nguy hiểm
	Dangerously	(adv)	Thật nguy hiểm
4.	Dark	(a)(n)	Bóng tối, sẫm màu
	Darken	(v)	Làm cho tối lại
	Darkness	(n)	Sự tối tăm, bóng tối
5.	Deaf	(a)	Điếc
	Deafen	(v)	Làm cho điếc tai
	Deafness	(n)	Sự điếc
	Deafener	(n)	Máy tiêu âm
6.	Death	(n)	Cái chết
	Deathly	(a)	Như chết
	Die	(v)	Chết
	Dying # deathless	(a)(a)	Hấp hối # Bất tử
7.	Decide	(v)	Quyết định
	Decision	(n)	Sự quyết định
	Decisive	(a)	Có tính quyết định
	Decisively	(adv)	Thật kiên quyết
8.	Decorate	(v)	Trang trí, trang hoàng
	Decoration	(n)	Sự trang trí, trang hoàng
	Decorative	(a)	Có tính cách trang trí
	Decorator	(n)	Người trang trí nội thất

9.	Deep	(a)	Sâu
	Deeply	(adv)	Thật sâu
	Depth	(n)	Độ sâu, chiều sâu
10.	Defeat	(v)(n)	Đánh bại, sự đánh bại
	Defeated	(a)	Bị đánh bại
	Defeatist	(n)	Người có tinh thần chủ bại
11.	Definite	(a)	Xác định rõ ràng
	Definitely	(adv)	Thật dứt khoát, rõ ràng
	Definition	(n)	Sự xác định, định nghĩa
12.	Deforest	(v)	Chặt đốn, phá rừng
	Deforestation	(n)	Nạn phá rừng
13.	Delicious	(a)	Ngon
	Deliciously	(adv)	Thật ngon
	Deliciousness	(n)	Sự ngon
14.	Delight	(n)(v)	Vui thích, làm vui thích
	Delighted	(a)	Vui mừng, hài lòng
	Delightedly	(adv)	Vui thích
	Delightful	(a)	Thú vị, ham mê
	Delightfully	(adv)	Thật thú vị
15.	Deliver	(v)	Giao hàng, chuyên chở tới
	Deliverable	(a)	Có thể giao hàng
	Delivery	(n)	Sự chở, giao hàng
	Deliverer	(n)	Người giao hàng
16.	Demonstrate	(v)	Biểu tình, biểu dương
	Demonstration	(n)	Cuộc biểu tình, biểu dương
	Demonstrator	(n)	Người biểu dương
17.	Deny	(v)	Từ chối, phủ nhận
	Deniable	(a)	Có thể từ chối

	Denial	(n)	Sự từ chối, khước từ
	Denier	(n)	Người khước từ
18.	Depart	(v)	Khởi hành
	Departure	(n)	Sự khởi hành
	Departer	(n)	Người khởi hành
19.	Depend	(v)	Phụ thuộc
	Dependent	(a)	Phụ thuộc, lệ thuộc
	Dependently	(adv)	Phụ thuộc
	Dependence	(n)	Sự phụ thuộc
	Dependency ≠ independent	(n)(a)	Phần phụ thuộc ≠ Độc lập, không phụ thuộc
20	Deposit	(v)(n)	Đặt cọc, tiền thế thân
	Depositor	(n)	Người gửi tiền
	Depository	(n)	Kho bạc
21.	Describe	(v)	Diễn tả
	Describer	(n)	Người mô tả
	Description	(n)	Sự mô tả
	Descriptive	(a)	Miêu tả
	Descriptively	(adv)	Sinh động, sống động
22.	Design	(v)	Thiết kế
	Designer	(n)	Nhà thiết kế
23.	Destine	(v)	Đến nơi
	Destination	(n)	Điểm đến
24.	Destroy	(v)	Phá hoại, hủy diệt
	Destruction	(n)	Sự hủy diệt
	Destructive	(a)	Phá hoại
	Destructively	(adv)	Tàn phá
	Destroyer	(n)	Kẻ phá hoại

25.	Develop	(v)	Phát triển
	Developing	(a)	Đang phát triển
	Developed	(a)	Đã phát triển
	Development	(n)	Sự phát triển
26.	Different	(a)	Khác biệt
	Differently	(adv)	Thật khác biệt
	Difference	(n)	Sự khác biệt
	Difficult	(a)	Khó khăn
	Difficultly	(adv)	Thật khó khăn
	Difficulty	(a)	Sự khó khăn
27.	Dip	(v)	Nhúng, ngâm
	Dipper	(n)	Người nhúng, ngâm
28.	Direct	(v)	Hướng dẫn, chỉ đường hướng
	Direct	(a)	Trực tiếp
	Directly	(adv)	Trực tiếp
	Direction	(n)	Phương hướng